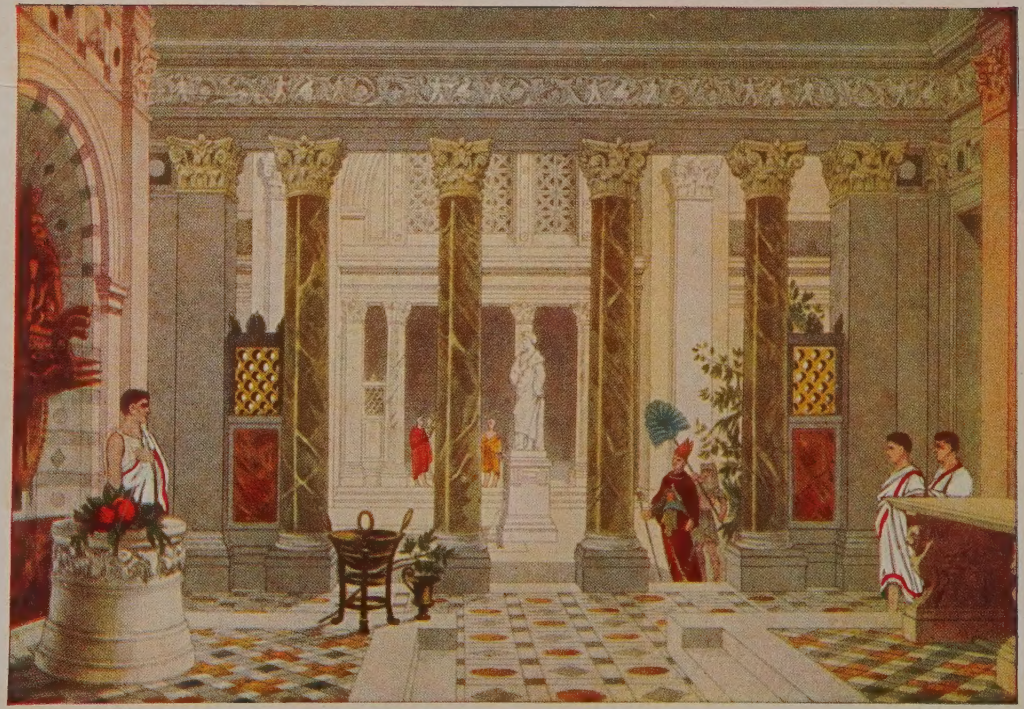
FIRST LATIN LESSONS

Revised

SCOTT-HORN

No 21

9-18-1930



A ROMAN PALACE

The Lake Classical Series

FIRST LATIN LESSONS

REVISED

BY

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT
Ohio University, Athens, Ohio

AND

ANNABEL HORN
Girls' High School, Atlanta, Georgia

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO ATLANTA NEW YORK

Copyright, 1922, 1928,
by Scott, Foresman and Company

The pictures on pages 39, 75, 113, 118, 132, and 149 are reproduced from photographs copyrighted by the Keystone View Company, and are used with their permission.

293.6

△

PREFACE

This book is a revision of Scott's *First Latin Lessons*, published in 1922. Much of the material of the earlier book has been retained, but numerous changes have been made both in the exercises and in other parts of the lessons. Certain features have been added in conformity with recent changes in method and emphasis in teaching, and the authors have availed themselves of the experience of many teachers who have used the earlier edition and who have offered helpful suggestions.

The following paragraphs from the preface of the earlier edition will serve to make clear the general point of view of this book and of the series to which it belongs.

The fact that the work of the first and second years of the high-school Latin course should give value in itself, apart from being merely a preparation for later study, has come to be generally recognized. The number of Latin pupils whose study of the subject does not go beyond these first two years is very large in proportion to the total number studying Latin, and probably this has always been the case. But in the effort to provide for those whose capacities and opportunities make it possible for them to continue the study of Latin through the high school and into the college, the needs of the larger group whose opportunities were certain to be more narrowly limited have not always been taken into account. Further, the fact that the values which were recognized were so far in the distance has probably tended to diminish the number of those who chose to continue beyond the two-year stage.

Evidently one of the chief values to be gained from two years' study of Latin is a better knowledge of the English language. This should involve on the one hand a clearer comprehension of grammatical structure and on the other an increased accuracy in the use of words. If these are to be among the

major objectives they should be recognized in the organization of the material which is first presented.

But young pupils will not study patiently mere lists of words for any length of time. Words must be employed in the expression of thought if they are to make on the mind of the boy or girl an impression which is sufficiently vivid to add to the store of memory. The exercises through which the vocabulary of the Latin language is to be made familiar should have something of the same kind of appeal as that made by the reading material employed in the first steps of learning to read the pupil's own language.

It may be said that the earlier edition of *First Latin Lessons* anticipated the main features of the reorganization of the elementary Latin course recommended in the Report of the Classical Investigation. The subjunctive mood and numerous other inflections and syntactical usages which had commonly been included in the work of the first year were omitted. Stress was laid on English derivation throughout, and the extensive use of connected paragraphs tended to develop a reading habit in connection with the acquisition of vocabulary. In the revised edition the same plan of organization has been retained, with such modifications as experience has suggested.

The following outline will indicate the outstanding features of the revised book:

1. *Provision for Classes of Different Ability.* Throughout the book paragraphs are given under the head of Optional Drill which may be used in accordance with the character of the class. With pupils of superior ability these paragraphs can be used for unprepared or "sight" work after the other exercises have been completed, or occasionally they may be used for tests in accuracy. With classes of medium ability portions of these paragraphs may be assigned for preparation as additional drill in connection with the learning of the forms or grammatical principles presented in the lesson, or when time

permits, the Optional Drill may be used for volunteer work at the end of the recitation period. With classes whose progress is slow these sections may be assigned for preparation in order to fix more firmly the principles and vocabulary of the lesson. When thus assigned the Optional Drill from two lessons may sometimes be combined where the length of the paragraphs permits.

2. *Short Vocabularies.* The average length of the vocabularies is less than in the previous edition of *First Latin Lessons.* No lesson has more than nine words, and usually the number is less than nine. No new vocabularies are given in lessons which include difficult paradigms. Thus the lessons which present *hic, ille, is, īdem,* and the relative pronoun have no new words except the single word which is inflected. In connection with the first lessons taking up the third declension of nouns and the third conjugation of verbs only words of these new groups needed to provide material for drill are presented. In all such cases the lesson following that in which the new paradigm appears provides drill on these forms with new vocabulary but with no new grammatical material.

3. *Short Lessons.* The exercises and grammatical material have been planned with a view to making it possible for a class of medium ability to complete a lesson in a single recitation. The use of the Optional Drill in connection with the recitation has previously been described. It will be observed that in all cases the forms and principles to be learned are embodied in the lesson, and the pupil is not referred to the Appendix for parts of the assignment.

4. *Review Lessons.* A series of review lessons is given, each presenting the vocabulary of the preceding group of lessons and also the grammatical topics which have appeared in these lessons. In general the review lessons are so placed as to sum up a particular topic or set of topics. The review vocabularies are small enough to make possible thorough drill.

5. *Review of English Grammar.* The most essential principles of English grammar are given, together with exercises, preceding the first Latin lesson. Thereafter each new grammatical principle which is taken up is explained both in relation to English and to Latin. This coördination makes possible a review of English grammar in connection with Latin. For classes which have been given little training in English grammar the essential facts of the subject can be made clear as the work in Latin progresses.

6. *English Derivatives.* Attention is given throughout to the relation between English and Latin. Obsolete and rare words are avoided in the selection of illustrative derivatives, words being chosen which may reasonably be expected to come within the range of the pupil's reading.

7. *Latin Word Study.* A group of short lessons dealing with the formation of Latin words is distributed through the book. These have been limited to the simpler principles of word formation, since the authors believe that young pupils find only confusion in the attempt to deal extensively with this subject in the first year.

8. *Reading Exercises.* In addition to narrative paragraphs the reading exercises include a number of dialogues. This type of exercise appeals to the dramatic instinct of young pupils and also affords special drill on forms and vocabulary through the repetition involved in question and answer. Three plays from *Decem Fabulae* and the "Perseus" from Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles* follow the lessons.

9. *Background Material.* A number of topics dealing with Roman life and history are treated in a series of English readings inserted at appropriate points. These have been written for this book, and the endeavor has been to give them a form within the comprehension of young pupils.

10. *Supplementary Lessons.* For the convenience of teachers who wish to vary somewhat from the outline given in the

Report of the Classical Investigation a series of ten supplementary lessons has been provided, presenting such topics as the ablative absolute, the dative with special verbs, deponent verbs, participles, and some others. These lessons are not an essential part of the course as developed in the book, and teachers may disregard them as a whole or may select from them such topics as seem desirable in preparation for the work of the second year. Provision is made for these topics in the second book of this series for teachers who wish to postpone them to that point. The play "Polyphemus," from *Decem Fabulae*, and the "Hercules," from *Fabulae Faciles*, are added as supplementary reading.

A special review vocabulary comprising those words in this book which are included in the list prepared by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years is given preceding the final vocabularies.

As explained in the preface to the first edition, the character *j* has been used to represent the consonant *i* in the spelling of Latin words in order to enable the young pupil to recognize more easily the relation between Latin words and their English derivatives. The origin of such words as *injury, juvenile, conjunction,* and the like is more easily seen when the Latin words from which they are derived are spelled *injūria, juvenis, conjūnctus,* than when the classical spelling is used. Other variations from the classical spelling have been made for the same reason. Among them are *afficiō, appropinquō, expectō*. The uncontracted form of the genitive of *fīlius* and nouns in *-ium* is given to avoid confusion. The standard of spelling (including the use of *j*) represents in general the prevalent usage in Latin textbooks in this country and in England until a comparatively recent period. If the pupil should at a later time in his course use textbooks which employ a slightly different spelling he will have little difficulty in becoming accustomed to the forms which are used. Our Latin textbooks have never been

uniform in spelling at any time, and it seems preferable in a book for beginners to adopt the standard which will give the greatest value to the large number of those who are unable to continue the study for more than a few years.

The plays "Horatius," "Circe," "Medicus," and "Polyphemus" are used with the kind permission of Miss Ryle, the only survivor of the co-authors of *Decem Fabulae* at the time the first edition of this book was published. A few changes in the text of these plays have been made, chiefly for the purpose of decreasing the vocabulary or avoiding idioms which seemed likely to prove difficult for young pupils.

For helpful suggestions in regard to certain features of the revision the authors wish to acknowledge their obligation to Miss Marie Denneen of the North Carolina College for Women, to Miss Grace Bridge and Miss Grace Jackson of the Hyde Park High School of Chicago, and to Miss Katherine I. Smart of the Shaw Junior High School, Philadelphia, and also to the first three teachers above named for valuable assistance in reading the proofs. In the preparation of the lessons on Word Study Miss Denneen has kindly permitted the use of lists of derivatives prepared in connection with her work.

The colored picture of the Roman Forum is from *Le Forum Romain et la Voie Sacrée*, by M. l'Abbé H. Thédenat, *membre de l'Institut*, and is here used with the consent of the publishers, Plon-Nourrit et Cie, of Paris, France. The other illustrations in three colors which are presented in this book are reproduced with the permission of G. Bell and Sons, London, England, from their admirable series of Latin Picture Cards, by Grainger.

January, 15, 1928

H. F. S.
A. H.

CONTENTS

PAGE

PREFACE iii
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS 11

INTRODUCTION

I. IMPORTANCE OF LATIN 15
II. THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN 22
III. ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR 26

LESSONS

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE 29
II. THE DIRECT OBJECT: ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES 31
III. PLURAL NUMBER OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES 34
IV. OMISSION OF SUBJECT: NAMES OF CASES 37
V. GENITIVE CASE 40
VI. INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE CASE 43
THE CITY OF THE SEVEN HILLS 47
VII. INDIRECT OBJECT (continued) 49
VIII. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES 52
WORD STUDY I 55
IX. PREPOSITIONS: ABLATIVE CASE 57
X. FIRST DECLENSION 61
FIRST REVIEW LESSON 65
SECOND REVIEW LESSON 67
XI. READING EXERCISE: SICILY 68
XII. CONJUGATION OF *sum* 70
XIII. FIRST CONJUGATION 73
ROMULUS AND REMUS 77
XIV. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES WITH *-ne* 79
THIRD REVIEW LESSON 82
XV. SECOND DECLENSION 83
XVI. GENDER OF NOUNS 85
XVII. SECOND DECLENSION (continued) 89
XVIII. SECOND DECLENSION (continued) 92

PAGE

XIX. Second Declension (continued) ... 94

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON ... 98

CITY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES ... 99

XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions ... 101

XXI. Agreement of Adjectives: Substantive Use of Adjectives 104

XXII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions ... 107

WORD STUDY II ... 110

XXIII. Passive Voice, Present Indicative ... 112

XXIV. Reading Exercise ... 114

XXV. The Demonstrative Pronoun and Adjective *hic* ... 116

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON ... 118

COUNTRY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES ... 120

XXVI. Reading Exercise ... 121

XXVII. Prepositions with the Accusative ... 123

XXVIII. Second Conjugation ... 126

XXIX. Reading Exercise: *Colloquium* ... 129

XXX. The Demonstrative Pronoun and Adjective *ille* ... 132

TRAVEL AMONG THE ROMANS ... 134

XXXI. Reading Exercise ... 136

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON ... 138

XXXII. Imperfect Indicative Active of the First and Second Conjugations ... 139

WORD STUDY III ... 143

XXXIII. Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective ... 145

XXXIV. Reading Exercise ... 148

XXXV. Imperfect Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations ... 150

XXXVI. The Demonstrative Pronoun and Adjective *is* ... 153

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 156

ROMAN SCHOOLS ... 157

XXXVII. Reading Exercise ... 158

XXXVIII. Future Tense of the First and Second Conjugations 161

XXXIX. Reading Exercise ... 163

XL. Imperfect and Future Indicative of *sum* ... 165

WORD STUDY IV ... 168

XLI. Possessives of the Third Person ... 169

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON ... 173

XLII. Third Declension of Nouns ... 174

PAGE
XLIII. Reading Exercise ... 177
XLIV. Third Declension (continued) ... 180
THE GODS OF THE ROMANS ... 183
XLV. Third Declension (continued) ... 185
XLVI. Third Declension (continued) ... 188
NINTH REVIEW LESSON ... 192
XLVII. Perfect Tense ... 192
XLVIII. Reading Exercise: *Colloquium* ... 196
XLIX. Perfect Passive Participle ... 198
WORD STUDY V ... 201
L. Reading Exercise: *Hostēs Urbem Oppugnāre Parant* ... 202
LI. Principal Parts: Stems of Verbs ... 205
LII. Principal Parts (continued) ... 208
THE ROMAN HOUSE ... 210
LIII. Perfect Indicative Passive ... 213
TENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 216
LIV. Third Conjugation -ō Verbs, Present Indicative ... 217
LV. Reading Exercise: *Bonus Dux* ... 220
LVI. Third Conjugation -iō Verbs, Present Indicative ... 222
LVII. Ablative of Means ... 226
ROMAN BOOKS ... 229
LVIII. Fourth Conjugation ... 230
LIX. The Perfect Tense (completed) ... 233
ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 236
LX. Imperfect of the Third and Fourth Conjugations ... 237
LXI. Reading Exercise: *Colloquium* ... 240
LXII. The Reflexive Pronoun ... 242
LXIII. Third and Fourth Conjugations (continued) ... 245
WORD STUDY VI ... 248
LXIV. Review of Present Infinitives ... 250
TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON ... 253
LXV. The Relative Pronoun ... 254
LXVI. Reading Exercise: *Urbs Rōma* ... 257
LXVII. Reading Exercise: *Colloquium* ... 260
LXVIII. Third Declension Adjectives ... 262
LXIX. Reading Exercise ... 265
LXX. Third Declension Adjectives of One Ending ... 267
PATRIOTISM AND HONOR AMONG THE ROMANS ... 270

PAGE

LXXI. Fourth Declension of Nouns ... 272

THIRTEENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 275

LXXII. Conjugation of *eō* and Its Compounds ... 276
LXXIII. Reading Exercise ... 278
LXXIV. Expressions of Time ... 281
LXXV. The Imperative ... 284
LXXVI. Conjugation of *possum* ... 287
LXXVII. Reading Exercise: *Castra Rōmāna Oppugnantur* ... 289

FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 291

LXXVIII. Personal Pronouns ... 291
LXXIX. Reading Exercise: *Rōmānus et Gallus* ... 295

ROME'S GREAT NAMES ... 297

LXXX. Past Perfect ... 299
LXXXI. Declension of *īdem* ... 302
LXXXII. Reading Exercise: *Rōmulus et Remus* ... 304
LXXXIII. Future Perfect: The Perfect System ... 306

FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 309

LXXXIV. Synopsis of Verbs ... 310
LXXXV. Comparison of Adjectives ... 312
LXXXVI. Declension of Comparatives: Translation of Comparatives and Superlatives ... 315

ROMAN DRESS ... 318

LXXXVII. Comparison of Adjectives (continued) ... 320

WORD STUDY VII ... 323

LXXXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives (continued) ... 324

SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 326

LXXXIX. Formation of Adverbs ... 327
XC. Comparison of Adverbs ... 329
XCI. Quotations: Indirect Discourse ... 332
XCII. Nouns of the Fifth Declension ... 335
XCIII. Cardinal Numbers: Declension of *duo* and *trēs* ... 338

SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON ... 341

ROME AND CARTHAGE ... 342

HORATIUS ... 344
THE STORY OF PERSEUS ... 351
CIRCE ... 359
LATIN SONGS ... 367
MEDICUS ... 374

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

PAGE

I. The Ablative Absolute 378
II. Deponent Verbs 381
III. Deponent Verbs (continued) 384
IV. Dative with Compounds and with Special Verbs 387
V. Participles in the Active Voice 389
VI. The Tenses of the Infinitive 392
VII. Tense of Infinitives in Indirect Discourse 395
VIII. Genitive of Description: Ablative of Description 397
IX. Conjugation of *volō* and *ferō* 399
X. The Gerund 401

POLYPHEMUS 403
HERCULES 410

Vocabulary for Oral Exercises 444
Familiar Latin Phrases 445
Grammatical Appendix 447
Selected Word List 480

Latin-English Vocabulary 1
English-Latin Vocabulary 31
Index 41

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

	PAGE
A Roman Palace	*Frontispiece*
The Influence of Latin in Modern Times (Map)	17
The Roman Empire (Map)	18
Ancient Books and Writing Materials	21
Roman Children at Play	28
A Roman Farm Scene (*Colored*)	*Facing* 30
At Play and in School	31
A Roman Plow	32
Roman Coin	36
A Roman Girl	38
Unhappy over His Load	39
A Roman Boat	40
Mosaic Picture of Doves	45
Cat with a Partridge	46
The Tarpeian Rock	48
Scattering Flowers	50
Europe in Ancient Times (Map)	53
An Ancient Street Scene	58
Decoration from Altar in Pompeii	60
Roman Writing Materials	63
A Young Roman	64
A Roman Bakery	67
Sicily (Map)	69
An Ancient House with a Balcony	72
Roman Lanterns	75
Roman Cooking Utensils	76
The Capitoline Wolf	77
Hut on the Palatine	78
Agricola et Puellae	80
Oppidum Italiae	84
Temple of Paestum	86
Roman Farm Tools	90
Reading a Roman Book	92
A Roman Road (*Colored*)	*Facing* 94
Traveler Leaving an Inn	97
A Roman Aqueduct	100
Roman Table and Lamp	102

PAGE
Roman Swords ... 106
A Roman Family ... 109
Lantern of Earthenware ... 113
A Chariot Driver ... 114
Roman Helmets ... 115
Chariot Horse and Driver ... 117
An Ancient Meat Market ... 118
Trēs Puerī Rōmānī ... 121
Roman Javelins ... 122
Interior of a Roman House (Restoration) ... 124
Roman Infantry and Cavalry ... 128
Scene near Tivoli ... 131
Tunic ... 132
A Temple of Jupiter ... 133
A Roman Carriage ... 134
Roman Boat ... 135
The Ransom of Rome ... 137
A Roman Trumpet ... 138
Gallic Cavalryman ... 141
A Street in Ostia ... 144
Writing Tablets ... 146
A Stubborn Animal ... 149
Round Temple in Rome ... 151
Ancient Tomb ... 155
A Roman School ... 157
Shopping in Roman Days ... 159
A Roman Theater in France ... 160
Loaf of Bread from Pompeii ... 163
Model of the Theater of Herculaneum ... 165
Killing Wild Animals ... 167
Barbarian Prisoners ... 171
Roman Arch in France ... 175
Gallic Soldiers ... 176
Vercingetorix ... 178
Ruins of an Ancient Apartment House ... 179
Rōmānī in Flūmine Natābant ... 181
Coin with Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus ... 182
Jupiter ... 183
Mars ... 184
A Weary Traveler ... 186
Roman Standards ... 189
A Roman Victory ... 191
The Tomb of Cecilia Metella ... 195
A Battle between Romans and Barbarians ... 197
A Pack Mule ... 200

PAGE
The Servian Wall ... 203
Milestone ... 204
A Street Scene (*Colored*) ... *Facing* 206
Ruins of the Amphitheater at Capua ... 207
Mosaic Picture of a Tiger ... 208
Model of a Roman House ... 211
Court of a Roman House ... 212
View of the Palatine (Restoration) ... 215
A Centurion ... 218
Entrance to a Roman Fortified Camp ... 221
A Page of Prepositions ... 224
Girls Playing "Jacks" ... 232
A Roman Amphitheater in France ... 235
Puer in Rīpā Flūminis Jacēbat ... 238
The Colosseum ... 240
Roman Scales ... 244
Fortifying a Roman Camp ... 247
A Street of Pompeii ... 251
A Roman Mausoleum ... 252
Roman Spoons of Silver ... 256
View of Ancient Rome (Restoration) ... 258
View of Modern Rome from the Capitoline Hill ... 260
Arch over a Roman Road ... 266
The Young Augustus ... 269
The Roman Forum—Restoration (*Colored*) ... *Facing* 270
A Roman Temple in France ... 273
Ancient Roman Money ... 274
Roman Mills ... 278
Roman Lamps ... 280
A Fierce Combat ... 283
Roman Road near Veii ... 286
Roman Rings ... 288
A Standard Bearer ... 290
Gate in the Wall of Modern Rome ... 293
Drawing on the Outer Wall of a House in Pompeii ... 296
Caesar ... 297
Cicero ... 297
A Roman Harbor (*Colored*) ... *Facing* 302
Roman Bucket ... 301
Wall of Aurelian ... 305
A Barbarian ... 308
Gaul (Map) ... 311
The Pyramid of Cestius ... 315
Puer in Flūmen Cadit ... 316
Augustus Wearing the Toga ... 318

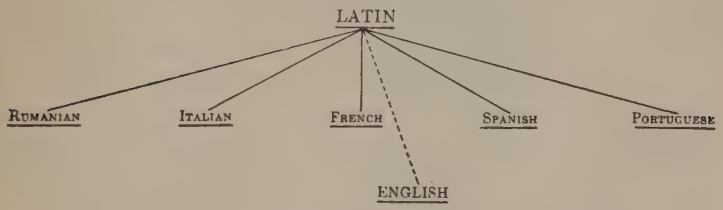
PAGE
A Roman Woman Wearing the Stola and the Palla 319
Altar of Jupiter 322
Fasces 325
An Archer 328
The Circus of Maxentius (Restoration) 331
A Roman Sacrifice 334
Sea-Food 337
Hoisting Apparatus 340
Hannibal 342
Site of Carthage 343
Horatius 350
Head of Medusa 353
Neptune 354
A Roman Litter 373
Ulīxēs Vīnum Polyphēmō Offert 407
Juno 412
An Amazon 427

INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER I

IMPORTANCE OF LATIN

ANCIENT AND MODERN LATIN



Latin is the language which was spoken and written by the Romans. For a long time it was spoken more widely than any other language of Europe, and its importance has continued down to the present time. It is really an older form of five modern languages, French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Rumanian. While these differ from each other so greatly that learning one does not make it possible for us to understand the others, they were once the same language.

Because of the fact that for a long while there were almost no schools and because there was little travel between the different regions where Latin was spoken, differences in ways of pronouncing words and in other matters connected with speaking and writing developed. These differences became so great that finally the people from one Latin-speaking country could not understand those from another, and their languages

came to have different names, though they are all merely changed forms of Latin.

LATIN WORDS IN THE ROMANCE LANGUAGES

Many words in common use in these *Romance* languages, as they are called, differ but little from their original Latin forms. Thus the French word *arbre*, meaning *tree*, is from Latin **arbor**, and *vendre*, meaning *to sell*, is from Latin **vēndere**.

The Spanish word *agua*, meaning *water*, is from Latin **aqua**; *mar*, meaning *sea*, is from Latin **mare**; *amar*, meaning *to love*, is from Latin **amāre**.

The Latin word **vīta**, *life*, is in Italian *vita*, in Spanish *vida*, in French *vie*, in Portuguese *vida*, in Rumanian *viata*. The Latin word **venīre**, *to come*, is in Italian *venire*, in Spanish *venir*, in French *venir*, in Portuguese *vir*, in Rumanian *veni*.

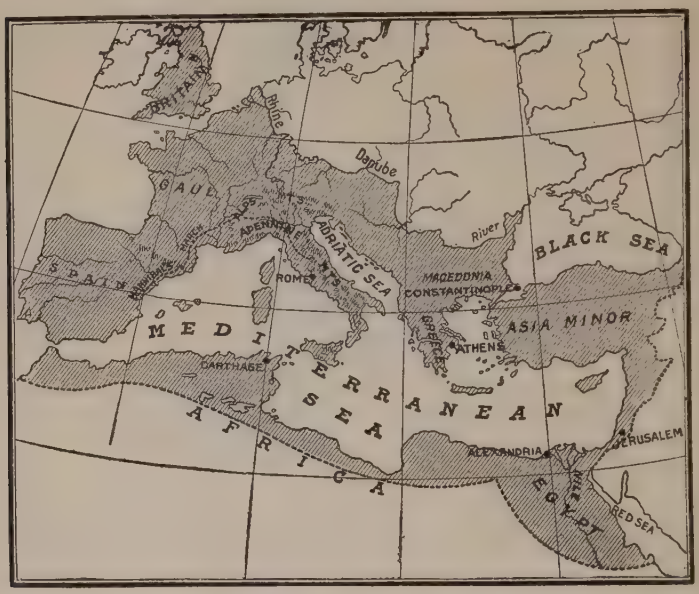
In these last two words Italian has kept the form of the original Latin, but of course this is not always the case. Many Italian words have been changed from their original forms. All the Romance languages have borrowed some words from other sources, but in the main they are merely modern Latin.

A glance at the following table giving the numbers from one to ten in Latin and in the derived languages will show how close the relation is between these languages and Latin.

Latin	*Italian*	*French*	*Spanish*	*Portuguese*	*Rumanian*	*English*
ūnus	uno	un	uno	um	un	*one*
duo	due	deux	dos	dois	doi	*two*
trēs	tre	trois	tres	trez	trei	*three*
quattuor	quattro	quatre	cuatro	quatro	patru	*four*
quīnque	cinque	cinq	cinco	cinco	cinci	*five*
sex	sei	six	seis	seis	sesse	*six*
septem	sette	sept	siete	sete	septe	*seven*
octō	otto	huit	ocho	oito	opt	*eight*
novem	nove	neuf	nueve	nove	noua	*nine*
decem	dieci	dix	diez	dez	zece	*ten*

THE INFLUENCE OF LATIN IN MODERN TIMES

Dark shaded areas show regions where languages directly derived from Latin are spoken. Light shaded areas show regions where the language has been extensively influenced by Latin.



THE ROMAN EMPIRE

WIDE EXTENT OF THE INFLUENCE OF LATIN

In ancient times Latin was spoken only in central Italy, but as the Romans extended their power over the adjoining regions the use of their language also spread more widely. After they conquered the nations living in what is now Spain, Portugal, France, Switzerland, Jugo-Slavia, Rumania, and some other countries, Latin began to be used here as well as in Italy. Finally it replaced almost entirely the languages formerly spoken throughout all this region.

When the Roman Empire gradually lost its power, and when the barbarians drove back the Roman armies, the Latin language still remained in a large part of the territory that had been Roman. It was replaced by other languages in

parts of Switzerland, in what is now Jugo-Slavia, and in some other regions east of Switzerland. But as a result of the spread of the Romance languages over South America and part of North America in modern times, Latin may be said to be more influential today than when Rome was a great nation. Spanish is now the language of the whole of South America (except Brazil), and also of Mexico and Central America. It is also used to some extent in parts of Texas, of New Mexico, of Arizona, and of southern California. The language of Brazil is Portuguese. French is spoken in some regions of Canada and in portions of the state of Louisiana.

THE LATIN ELEMENT IN ENGLISH

In addition to the importance which Latin has through the Romance languages it has directly influenced our own language very greatly. The figure at the head of this chapter, page 15, will serve to indicate the relation of English to Latin. While English is not a Romance language, more than half of the words in the English dictionary are derived either from Latin or Greek, and many of the words of Greek origin were first borrowed by Latin from Greek and then taken into English from Latin. Some of the Latin derivatives in English have come through the Romance languages, French in particular; others have been taken directly from Latin.

In the following paragraph from the Declaration of Independence the italicized words are of Latin origin:

> When in the *course* of *human events* it becomes *necessary* for one *people* to *dissolve* the *political* bands which have *connected* them with another, and to *assume* among the *powers* of the earth the *separate* and *equal station* to which the laws of *nature* and of *nature's* God *entitle* them, a *decent respect* to the *opinion* of mankind *requires* that they should *declare* the *causes* which *impel* them to the *separation*.

NEW WORDS FROM LATIN

Most of the new words which are being added to our language from time to time come from Latin or Greek. This is especially true of the names of new inventions. Such words as *submarine*, *automobile*, *telephone*, *tractor*, *motor*, *turbine*, are of this class. Further, the special terms used in chemistry, botany, physics, and other scientific studies are of Latin or Greek origin.

LATIN TERMS IN LAW AND MEDICINE

In the study of law, words derived from Latin are of very great importance. Such words as *jury*, *court*, *legal*, *conviction*, *acquittal*, and a great many other important words and expressions which lawyers must understand come from Latin. In the study of medicine, also, a great many Latin and Greek words or derivatives are used. The words *medicine*, *sanatorium*, *hospital*, *invalid*, *doctor*, *patient*, come from Latin. When a doctor writes a prescription he generally uses Latin words or their abbreviations.

THE FORMS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

Some Latin words which have been taken into the English language have the same spelling in English as in Latin. Such are *census*, *terminus*, *stimulus*, *veto*, *momentum*, *animal*. The meanings have in some instances changed, but the greater number of such words retain the same, or nearly the same, meaning as in the original Latin.

But most English words of Latin origin have been somewhat changed in their form. We shall see later that the spelling of many English words is explained by the development of the Latin words from which they have come, and that a knowledge of Latin aids one in remembering how to spell these words.

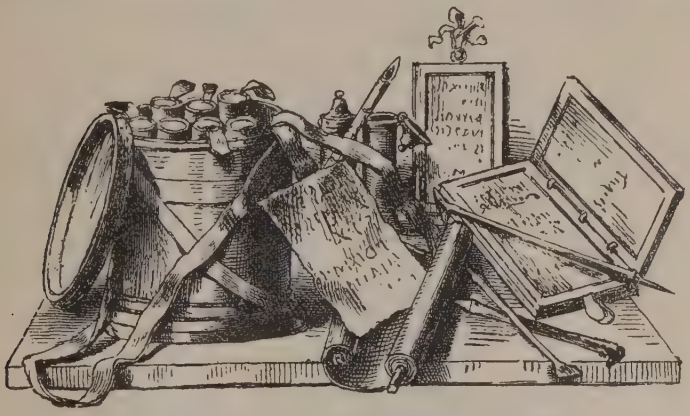
The following Latin words have familiar English derivatives or related words:

īnsula, *island*	insular, insulation
nōn, *not*	non-conductor, non-interference
patria, *native country*	patriot[1], patriotic[1]
terra, *land*	territory[2], terra firma
Britannia, *Great Britain*	Britannic
Hibernia, *Ireland*	Hibernian
Italia, *Italy*	Italian
America,[3] *America*	American
Eurōpa, *Europe*	European

[1] These words are derived through Latin from Greek.

[2] There is a Latin word **territōrium**, meaning territory, which is derived from **terra**, and from this word *territory* has come into English.

[3] While **America** does not represent a word known to the Romans, it is a Latin word in its formation.



ANCIENT BOOKS AND WRITING MATERIALS

CHAPTER II

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

REGULARITY OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION

I. It is much easier for us to learn how to pronounce Latin than it is for a foreigner to learn how to pronounce English. The sounds of the letters in Latin are more regular than in English. For example in English *a* may stand for the five different sounds represented in *fate*, *fare*, *fat*, *far*, *fall*, while no letter in Latin represents more than two sounds. Further, in Latin textbooks for high schools the different sounds of the vowels are shown by their appearance in print.

There are no silent letters in Latin. In the English word *more* the final *e* is not sounded, and the word has only one syllable. On the other hand the Latin word **more** (meaning 'by custom' or 'according to custom') is pronounced in two syllables, about as we should expect if it were spelled *mo'reh*.

THE ALPHABET

II. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *w*. In what we call the Classical Period, that is, the time when the most important Latin literature was being written, the Romans had no *j*, and the sounds of *u* and *v* were represented by one letter. There were, therefore, but twenty-three letters instead of our twenty-six. Of these twenty-three *y* and *z* were seldom used.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

III. The vowels (**a, e, i, o, u**) had two sounds each, a long and a short sound. In modern high-school books long vowels are regularly printed with a mark above them (**ā, ē,** etc.). A vowel which is unmarked is short. The following table will illustrate these sounds:

Long	*Short*
ā = *a* in *father*	**a** = first *a* in *ahá*
ē = *a* in *fade*	**e** = *e* in *net*
ī = *i* in *machine*	**i** = *i* in *this*
ō = *o* in *holy*	**o** = *o* in *domain*
ū = *u* in *rude*	**u** = *u* in *full*

dāns pronounced about as if spelled in English *dahns* (with *s* as in *see*).

ad pronounced with *a* shorter than in **dāns**, but not as English *add*.

mē pronounced like English *may*.

et pronounced to rime with English *let*.

sīc pronounced like English *seek*.

fit pronounced like English *fit*.

nōn pronounced to rime with English *lone*.

ob pronounced about as in English *obey*.

cūra pronounced *coo'ra*.

cum pronounced with *u* like *oo* in *foot* (not like *oo* in *too*).

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

IV. A diphthong is a blending of two vowel sounds to form a single syllable. The most important are **ae, au,** and **oe.** Their sounds are as follows:

ae = *ai* in *aisle* or *i* in *like*
caelum pronounced *ki'lum.*

au = *ou* in *round*
aut pronounced like English *out.*

oe = *oi* in *boil* or *oy* in *boy*
coepit pronounced *coy'pit.*

The three remaining diphthongs are of less importance. They are **ei** = *ei* in *vein,* **eu** = *eu* in *feud,* and **ui** almost = *ui* in *ruin,* but the **u** is shorter and the two are more closely blended.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

V. The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions are to be observed:

c and **ch** have the sound of *k*
centum pronounced *ken'tum.*
pulcher pronounced *pul'ker.*
g has only one sound, that heard in *go*
regio pronounced *re'gi-o* (*g* as English *gift*).
j is equivalent to *y* in *yes*
judex pronounced *yu'dex.*
s has only the sound heard in *say*
rosa pronounced *ro'sa*, with *s* as in *say.*
t has always the sound heard in *top.* It does not combine with *i* to give the sound of *sh* as in *nation.*
nūntiō pronounced *nun'ti-o.*
v has the sound of *w*
vel pronounced like English *well.*
x has only the sound of *ks*
exemplar pronounced *eks-em'plar.*
bs and **bt** are equivalent to *ps* and *pt*
urbs pronounced *urps.*
ph and **th** are nearly equivalent to *p* and *t*
Pholus pronounced *Po'lus.*
Pantheon pronounced *Pan'te-on.*

NOTE. The Romans added to the sounds of **p** and **t** in **ph** and **th** a breath element so that the sounds were somewhat like those heard in a hurried pronunciation of *up here* and *at home.*

ACCENT

VI. The accent of words in Latin is fixed by definite rules, so that one is not compelled to learn how to accent each new word as a matter of memory, as is the case in English.

All words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: **a′mō, lau′dant.**

NOTE. The accent of words of more than two syllables may be taught by imitation for a few weeks, if the teacher prefers, and the learning of the rules for these words postponed.

VII. In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last if it has a long vowel or a diphthong or if its vowel is followed directly by two consonants: **lau-dā′mus, in-cau′tus, in-ter′dum, pu-el′la.**

VIII. If the vowel of the syllable before the last is short and is followed directly by another vowel or by only one consonant the accent falls on the second syllable from the last: **pe-cū′ni-a, a-gri′co-la, e-pis′tu-la.**

EXCEPTION. If the two consonants following **a** short vowel in the syllable before the last are a mute with **l** or **r,** that is, **bl, cl, br, cr,** etc., the accent falls on the second syllable from the last, just as it would if the vowel were followed by a single consonant or by another vowel.

NOTE. The mutes are **b, p, c, k, q, g, d, t, ph, th, ch.**

SYLLABLES

IX. A syllable must always have a vowel or a diphthong. The rules for the division of Latin words into syllables are as follows:

(1) A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: **pō-nō, ha-be-ō.**

(2) Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows: **par-va, ter-ra.**

EXCEPTIONS. (1) If the two consonants are a mute followed by **l** or **r** (see VIII, note) both are taken with the vowel following: **pa-trī.** (2) In the division of a compound verb into syllables in writing or printing the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb: **ad-est.**

CHAPTER III

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR

VALUE OF GRAMMAR

We learn English by hearing it spoken and by constantly using it. The mistakes which we make in childhood in the use of words are corrected many times, and we usually learn to avoid them without knowing any rules by which to decide whether an expression is correct or incorrect. But we cannot take so many years to learn a foreign language as we have taken to learn English. Therefore we need to learn general rules for the correct use of words. To understand these rules it is necessary to know the general principles of grammar.

These general principles are also useful in the study of English, since they make it possible to see the reason for choosing some forms of expression and avoiding others. The following paragraphs give a few facts which are necessary in order to understand some of the statements in the lessons which follow. Other explanations are given in the lessons where they are needed.

THE NOUN

(1) Words which are used to denote persons, places, or things are called *nouns*. Thus the words *boy*, *girl*, *house*, *tree*, *city*, *Italy*, *Rome*, *Spain* are nouns. Nouns are also used as the names of qualities or ideas, such as *bravery*, *kindness*, *happiness*, *truth*, *love*, *patriotism*.

THE VERB

(2) In the sentences *The boy walks* and *The tree has fallen* the words *walks* and *has fallen* denote actions. Such words are called *verbs*.

a. Some verbs denote mere existence or continuance in a place rather than action. In the sentences *He is in the city* and *We shall stay here, is* and *shall stay* are verbs of this kind.

THE ADJECTIVE

(3) We often use some other word with a noun to describe the appearance or character of the person or thing which the noun denotes. Thus, in the expressions *tall trees* and *brave men* the words *tall* and *brave* describe the trees and the men. Such words are called *adjectives.*

a. There are a few adjectives which merely show what person or thing is meant without describing the person or thing. Such are *this, that, other, same. The, a,* and *an* belong to this class. These last three words are called *articles.*

THE PRONOUN

(4) In the sentence *The man saw the boy and warned him,* the word *him* is used instead of *boy.* A word which is used instead of a noun is called a *pronoun.*

(5) The word denoting the person or thing referred to by a pronoun is called the *antecedent* of the pronoun. In the sentence given above *boy* is the antecedent of *him.*

CLASSES OF PRONOUNS

(6) The pronouns *I, you, he, she, it, we,* and *they* are called *personal* pronouns.

When the words *who, which,* and *what* are used to introduce questions they are called *interrogative* pronouns. When they are used in sentences which are not questions they are called *relative* pronouns. Thus, in the sentence *Who gave you a knife? who* is an interrogative pronoun. In the sentence *It was my*

mother who gave me a knife, who is a relative pronoun. Sometimes *that* is used instead of *who* or *which*. Thus, *The man that just came is my uncle*. When so used, *that* is a relative pronoun.

(7) Point out the nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs in the following sentences:

1. The heavy storm had injured many trees. 2. My father has read this book. 3. The horses draw a heavy load. 4. Your uncle built a new house. 5. My letter has been sent. 6. Where was the money found? 7. This picture has often been admired. 8. Why did these men leave their homes? 9. Columbus discovered a new continent. 10. These books contain many interesting stories.

ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

FIRST LATIN LESSONS

LESSON I

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

READING EXERCISE

1. 1. America est patria mea. America est patria tua. Italia nōn est patria mea.

2. Hibernia est īnsula et Britannia est īnsula. Sed America nōn est īnsula. Hibernia nōn est parva īnsula.

3. Hibernia nōn est patria tua. Britannia nōn est patria tua. Italia nōn est patria tua. Sed Italia est terra pulchra.

4. Britannia est īnsula magna et pulchra. Hibernia est īnsula magna et pulchra. America est terra magna et pulchra.

2. VOCABULARY

est, is	**par′va,** small, little
et, and	**pul′chra,** beautiful
mag′na, large	**sed,** but
me′a, my, mine	**tu′a,** your, yours

THE ARTICLE

3. Latin has no word for the definite article *the* or for the indefinite article *a* or *an*. The Latin equivalent for *The boy has a book* or *A boy has a book* means literally *Boy has book*.

In translating we supply *the*, *a*, or *an* whenever the sense requires.

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE

4. The Latin adjective often follows its noun, as in the phrase **terra pulchra.** But **magna** and other adjectives denoting size commonly stand before their nouns as in English.

THE SUBJECT

5. In the first two sentences of paragraph 1 in section **1** we assert something about **America.** In the third sentence we assert something about **Italia.** These words are therefore the *subjects* of the sentences in which they stand.

Point out the subjects in all the sentences of paragraphs 3 and 4 of section **1.**

THE PREDICATE NOUN

6. In the sentences of paragraph 1 in section **1, patria** is linked to the subject by **est,** and in each of the sentences of paragraph 2 **īnsula** is in the same way linked to the subjects of these sentences.

The words **patria** and **īnsula** in these sentences are *predicate nouns.* Any form of the verb meaning *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be, has been,* etc.) may be used to link the predicate noun to the subject.

A predicate noun denotes the same person, place, or thing as the subject.

Point out the predicate nouns in the sentences of paragraphs 3 and 4 of section **1.**

THE PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

7. An adjective linked to the subject by any form of the verb meaning *to be* is a *predicate adjective:* **Īnsula est pulchra,** *The island is beautiful.*

8. EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. My native country is small.
2. Italy is not an island.
3. Your native country is a beautiful land.
4. The island is large and beautiful.
5. My native country is not an island.

A ROMAN FARM SCENE

AT PLAY AND IN SCHOOL

Review and Drill

9. 1. What are the most important modern languages which have developed from Latin?

2. What general name is given to this group of languages?

3. What differences are there between the English and the Latin alphabets?

4. Read aloud the Latin of section **1.**

LESSON II

THE DIRECT OBJECT: ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

10. 1. Agricola fīliam habet. Fīlia est parva. Parva fīlia agricolam amat. Agricola parvam fīliam amat.

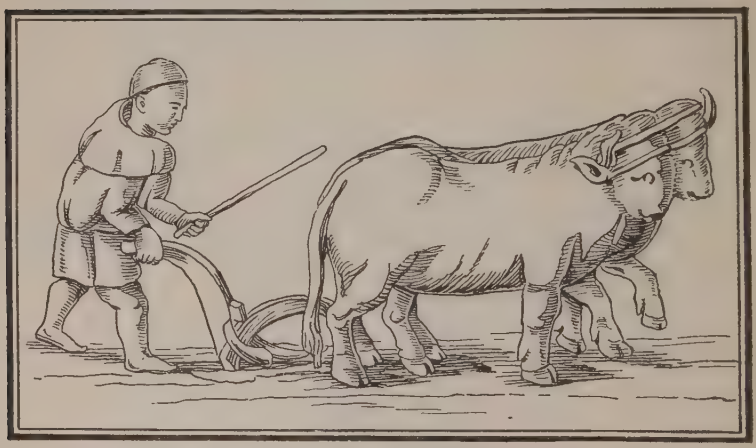
2. Agricola casam pulchram habet, sed casa nōn est magna. Casa mea nōn est magna. Sed parvam casam meam amō.

3. Eurōpam amās, sed fīlia tua Eurōpam nōn amat. Cūr fīlia tua Eurōpam nōn amat? Cūr fīlia tua Americam amat? America est patria, sed Eurōpa nōn est patria.

4. Patriam meam amō et patriam tuam amō. Patria mea est America et patria tua est Italia. Patriam tuam amās et patriam meam amās. Patria tua est terra pulchra.

11. VOCABULARY

agri'cola, farmer	**ca'sa,** cottage
a'mās, you love	**cūr,** why?
a'mat, loves	**fī'lia,** daughter
a'mō, I love	**ha'bet,** has



A ROMAN PLOW

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *-AM*

12. In the sentence **Agricola fīliam amat,** *The farmer loves the daughter,* **fīliam** denotes the person whom the subject of the sentence is said to love. In the English sentence *The boy wrote a letter* the word *letter* denotes the thing which the subject is said to have written.

THE DIRECT OBJECT

13. A word denoting the person, place, or thing directly affected by an act or on which the act is said to terminate is

called the *direct object*. In the sentences of section **12, fīliam** and *letter* are direct objects.

14. In the preceding reading exercise, section **10,** the direct objects end in **-am.** Adjectives modifying direct objects also end in **-am** in this exercise, while those modifying subjects or predicate nouns end in **-a.**

a. A predicate adjective modifies the subject of its clause.

b. The Latin words for *my* or *mine* and *your* or *yours* are adjectives, and their endings, like those of other adjectives, are determined by the words with which they are used.

POSITION OF THE VERB

15. The Latin verb commonly stands at the end of its sentence, as in the reading exercise, section **10.** But forms of the verb meaning *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be,* etc.) frequently come before the predicate noun or adjective.

THE USE OF "DO" IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES AND QUESTIONS

16. The English sentence *I do not love the cottage* is in Latin **Casam nōn amō** (*I love not the cottage*). Similarly, *Why do you love the island?* is in Latin **Cūr īnsulam amās?** (*Why love you the island?*). In such sentences Latin has no equivalent for *do.*

COMPLETION EXERCISE

17. Copy the following sentences, putting the proper endings (**-a** or **-am**) in place of the dashes.

1. Fīlia tua Americ— amat.
2. Patria mea nōn est Hiberni—.
3. Patri— tu— amās.
4. Fīlia tua īnsul— pulchr— amat.
5. Patria tua nōn est īnsul—.

Optional Drill

To the Teacher: The paragraphs for Optional Drill throughout the book may be used for practice or for study in class without previous preparation, or selected parts may be assigned for home study. It is not expected that they shall as a whole be made a part of the work regularly assigned for preparation.[1]

18. Translate: 1. Patria tua, casa tua, fīlia tua. 2. Īnsula pulchra, terra pulchra, magna terra. 3. Patriam amō; patriam amās. 4. Īnsula est magna; īnsula est pulchra. 5. Fīlia tua īnsulam amat. 6. Agricola īnsulam amat. 7. Magnam īnsulam amās. 8. Cūr īnsulam amās?

(*a*) Write two English sentences containing direct objects.

(*b*) Write two English sentences containing predicate nouns.

(*c*) After copying the sentences of section **17** draw one line under each predicate noun and two lines under each direct object.

LESSON III

PLURAL NUMBER OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

19. 1. Fīlia tua nōn multam pecūniam habet. Sed agricola multam pecūniam habet. Agricola pecūniam amat.

2. Agricola parvās fīliās habet. Parvae fīliae agricolam amant. Agricola parvās puellās amat. Fīlia tua quoque parvās puellās amat.

3. Agricola parvam casam habet. Parva casa est pulchra. Parvam et pulchram casam laudāmus. Magnam casam tuam nōn laudāmus. Fīliae tuae casam tuam nōn amant.

4. Britannia et Hibernia sunt magnae īnsulae. Italia et

[1]For suggestions regarding the use of these paragraphs with classes grouped according to ability see page 2 of the Preface.

America sunt terrae pulchrae. Italia et America nōn sunt īnsulae.

5. Eurōpa multās īnsulās habet. Eurōpa terrās pulchrās quoque habet. Eurōpam laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

20. VOCABULARY

amā′mus, we love	**pecū′nia,** money
a′mant, (they) love	**puel′la,** girl
laudā′mus, we praise	**quo′que,** also
mul′ta, much (**mul′tae,** many)	**sunt,** (they) are

SUBJECTS, PREDICATE NOUNS, AND OBJECTS IN THE PLURAL

21. In the sentence **Puellae casam amant,** *The girls love the cottage,* the subject is in the plural number and ends in **-ae.**

In the sentence **Britannia et Hibernia sunt īnsulae,** *Great Britain and Ireland are islands,* the predicate noun is also in the plural number and ends in **-ae.**

In the sentence **Puellae casās amant,** *The girls love the cottages,* the direct object is plural and ends in **-ās.**

The nouns in the plural number which are used as subjects or predicate nouns in the preceding reading exercise end in **-ae,** while the direct objects in the plural end in **-ās.**

FORMS OF ADJECTIVES WITH PLURAL NOUNS

22. The adjectives which modify plural subjects or plural predicate nouns in the preceding reading exercise end in **-ae;** those which modify plural direct objects end in **-ās.**

COMPLETION EXERCISE

23. 1. Parva puella cas— tu— (*your cottage*) amat.
2. Casae sunt parv— sed pulchr—.
3. America īnsul— pulchr— (*beautiful islands*) habet.
4. Fīlia mea et fīlia tua sunt puell— pulchr—.
5. Patri— me— (*my native land*) amō.

ROMAN COIN

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

24. 1. What are *pecuniary* difficulties? 2. What is a *laudatory* speech? 3. What is the meaning of *multicolored?* 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *amiable.*

Optional Drill

25. 1. Parvam puellam laudāmus; parvās puellās laudāmus. 2. Casa magna est; casae magnae sunt. 3. Īnsulam pulchram amāmus; īnsulās pulchrās amāmus. 4. Terrās pulchrās laudāmus; patriam tuam quoque laudāmus. 5. Agricola casam habet; agricola pecūniam quoque habet. 6. Agricola patriam amat; agricolae patriam amant. 7. Īnsula est parva; īnsulae sunt parvae.

26. 1. The girls love the small cottages. 2. We praise the beautiful islands. 3. My daughter loves your daughters. 4. The farmer also loves your native country. 5. We love the little girls.

(*a*) Write the direct object form of the words for *cottages* and *girls.*

(*b*) Point out the subjects, objects, and predicate nouns in paragraphs 3 and 4 of section **19.**

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: NUMBER

27. We have different forms of pronouns and also of nouns to show whether we are referring to one person or thing or to more than one. Thus *I* refers to one person, *we* refers to more than one. This distinction is called *number. I* is in the *singular* number, and *we* is in the *plural* number. In the same way, *book* is in the singular number, and *books* is in the plural number.

LESSON IV

OMISSION OF SUBJECT: NAMES OF CASES

READING EXERCISE

28. 1. Fīlia mea multās epistulās scrībit. Epistulae saepe longae sunt. Longās epistulās amāmus. Fīliae tuae quoque epistulās longās amant.

2. Fīliae tuae sunt parvae puellae. Fīliās tuās saepe vidēmus. Sunt puellae bonae. Fīliās tuās saepe laudāmus. Fīliās tuās amāmus.

3. Nauta magnam casam habet. Saepe nautam vidēmus. Nauta patriam amat sed Eurōpam quoque amat. Italiam et Britanniam et Hiberniam amat.

4. Schola tua est bona, et scholam tuam saepe laudāmus. Schola mea quoque est bona. America scholās bonās habet. Eurōpa quoque multās scholās bonās habet.

5. Parvam casam tuam saepe vidēmus. Casam tuam laudāmus. Sed parva puella casam tuam nōn amat. Puella est fīlia tua. Magnam casam amat. Sed casa tua est pulchra.

29. VOCABULARY

bo'na, good	**sae'pe,** often
epis'tula, letter	**scho'la,** school
lon'ga, long	**scrī'bit,** writes
nau'ta, sailor	**vidē'mus,** we see.

OMISSION OF THE SUBJECT

30. We have seen that **amō** is translated *I love,* without a separate word for *I.* In the same manner **amat,** which is translated *loves* when used with a noun as subject, may be translated *he loves* or *she loves* when the preceding sentence makes it perfectly clear who the subject is.

Nauta Americam amat. Hiberniam quoque amat, *The sailor loves America. He also loves Ireland.*

We may translate **scrībit** *he writes* or *she writes* if used without a subject, and **est** thus used may mean *he is* or *she is* or *it is.*

NAMES OF CASES

31. The subject is said to be in the *nominative case* and the direct object is said to be in the *accusative case.*

The endings for the nominative and accusative in all the nouns we have had thus far are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative	**-a**	**-ae**
Accusative	**-am**	**-ās**

32. EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. We praise your long letter.
2. The sailor loves money, but he does not have money.
3. We see the small islands and the cottages.
4. The girl loves your good daughters.
5. The farmer does not write many letters.

A ROMAN GIRL

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

33. 1. What do we mean by *scholastic* standards? 2. What is an *aeronaut?* 3. What is meant by *inscribe?* Find other words suggested by **scrībit.** 4. What is the meaning of *longevity?* 5. What is an *epistle?*

Optional Drill

34. 1. Epistula bona; epistulae bonae; casa bona. 2. Parva schola; magna schola; magnae scholae. 3. Scholam tuam vidēmus; epistulam tuam vidēmus. 4. Nauta epistulam scrībit; puella saepe epistulās scrībit. 5. Nauta epistulam longam habet; nauta epistulās longās habet. 6. Nauta pecūniam habet; pecūniam amat. 7. Casam vidēmus; est casa magna. 8. Casa tua est parva, sed est casa pulchra.

35. 1. We praise the islands; we praise the sailors. 2. We do not praise your long letter. 3. We often see the large islands. 4. Your letters are good, but (they) are not long. 5. Why does not the sailor write good letters?

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: CASE

36. Such pronouns as *he, she,* and *who* have different forms to show how they are used in sentences. We say *He walks, I see him,* and *I have his ball.* In these sentences *he* is subject, *him* is direct object, and *his* refers to a person as possessing something. In like manner we use *she* and *who* as subjects, *her* and *whom* as direct objects of a verb or as objects of a preposition, and *her* (or *hers*) and *whose* to denote the person possessing something.

A noun has the same form for the subject as for the object of a verb or a preposition, but it has a different form to refer to a person as possessing something. Thus we say *The boy walks, I see the boy, I have the boy's ball.* These different forms and uses of nouns and pronouns in sentences are called *cases* or *case uses.* The subject is in the *nominative case,* the direct object is in the *objective case,* and the word referring to the possessor is in the *possessive case.*

UNHAPPY OVER HIS LOAD

LESSON V

GENITIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

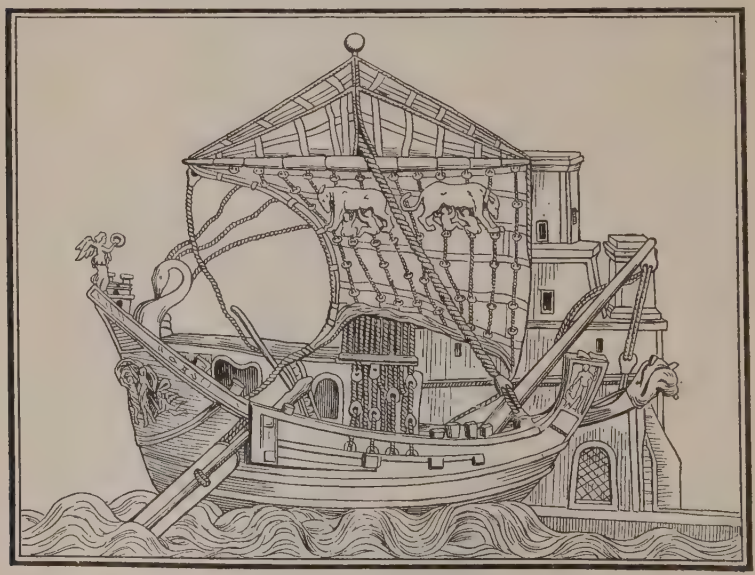
37. 1. Casa nautae est parva. Sed agricola magnam casam habet. Fīliae nautae magnam casam agricolae laudant.

2. Poēta incola Americae est. Sed Hibernia est patria poētae. Poēta fīliam habet. America est patria fīliae poētae. Fīlia poētae Americam amat.

3. Incolae īnsulārum sunt nautae et agricolae. Vīta agricolārum est vīta bona. Poētae saepe vītam agricolārum laudant.

4. Vītam nautārum interdum laudāmus. Nautae multās terrās vident. Sed vīta nautārum interdum perīculōsa est.

5. Fulvia est fīlia agricolae. Agricola Fulviam amat. Fulvia est puella pulchra.



A ROMAN BOAT

38. VOCABULARY

Ful'via, Fulvia (*name of a girl or woman*)
in'cola, inhabitant
inter'dum, sometimes
lau'dant, (they) praise
perīculō'sa, dangerous
poē'ta, poet
vi'dent, (they) see
vī'ta, life

LATIN NOUNS DENOTING OWNERSHIP OR POSSESSION

39. **Casa nautae est parva,** *The sailor's cottage is small.* Latin nouns ending in **-a** in the nominative and in **-am** in the accusative have a form ending in **-ae** in the singular to denote ownership or possession. The corresponding form in the plural ends in **-ārum. Casae nautārum sunt parvae,** *The sailors' cottages are small.*

TWO FORMS OF TRANSLATION FOR WORDS DENOTING POSSESSION, OWNERSHIP, ETC.

40. This form denoting ownership or possession and the like may be translated either by the possessive case, as in the examples above, or by *of* and the noun. Thus **casa nautae** may be translated either *the sailor's cottage* or *the cottage of the sailor.* In translating we use whichever of the two forms seems more natural in English.

a. While the ending of this form denoting possession is the same in the singular as is the subject form of the plural in the nouns we have had thus far, it will be possible to decide from the general meaning of the sentence how to translate such a form.

THE GENITIVE CASE

41. The Latin nouns described in section **40** are said to be in the *genitive case.* In addition to ownership the genitive denotes some other ideas for which we use the possessive case or a phrase with *of*, as *the boy's sister. the girl's father*, and the like.

a. An adjective modifying a noun in the genitive is also in the genitive and is in the same number as the noun.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

42. Write the Latin for the italicized words and phrases in the following sentences:

1. Ireland is the *sailor's* native country.
2. The inhabitants *of the islands* praise our native country.
3. Fulvia loves the *poet's* daughters.
4. We see the cottages *of the farmers.*
5. The *girl's* letters are long.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

43. When we say a thing is of *vital* importance we usually mean that it is absolutely necessary or that it is extremely important. But the original meaning of the word was stronger than this. From the origin of the word a *vital* matter should mean what we call "a matter of life and death." In this case as in many others the modern word has been somewhat changed from its earlier sense, though it is used in a few phrases with the meaning "necessary for life."

Optional Drill

44. 1. Fīlia agricolae; patria poētae; patria poētārum. 2. Epistula puellae; epistulae puellārum. 3. Interdum vītam agricolārum laudāmus. 4. Nautae interdum vītam agricolārum laudant. 5. Agricolae interdum vītam nautārum laudant. 6. Vīta nautae saepe perīculōsa est. 7. Vīta tua perīculōsa est. 8. Vīta poētae nōn saepe perīculōsa est. 9. Incolae īnsulae terram vident. 10. Fīlia agricolae epistulam bonam scrībit.

45. 1. Of the land; of the lands; of the letter; of the letters. 2. The sailor's daughter is small. 3. We praise the native

country of the sailors. 4. The sailors praise the inhabitants of the island. 5. The sailors see the inhabitants of the islands. 6. The inhabitants of the island see the sailors.

(*a*) Write the nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of the Latin words for *girl*, *daughter*, *land*.

(*b*) Translate the phrases of paragraph 1, section **44,** in two different ways (*see section* **40**).

(*c*) Point out a predicate adjective in the sentences of section **45.**

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: THE POSSESSIVE CASE

46. In most English nouns the possessive case ends in *s* preceded by an apostrophe for the singular number: *the editor's desk.* With plurals ending in *s* the apostrophe alone is commonly used: *boys' books.*

Plurals which do not end in *s* take the apostrophe and *s* for the possessive: *men's hats.*

Besides denoting possession or ownership the possessive case may denote family relationship and also certain other ideas: *the doctor's son; the janitor's mother; the fireman's bravery; the city's growth.*

LESSON VI

INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

47. 1. Fulvia epistulam scrībit et epistulam parvae puellae (*to the little girl*) dat. Parva puella epistulam agricolae (*to the farmer*) dat. Agricola epistulam legit et parvae puellae pecūniam dat.

2. Fīlia tua Fulviae rosam dat. Fulvia mihi rosam ostendit. Fīlia tua Fulviam amat.

3. Agricola saepe parvīs puellīs rosās dat. Parvae puellae sunt laetae. Rosās amant. Agricola multās rosās habet.

4. Nauta saepe epistulās incolīs īnsulae dat, et incolae īnsulae nautae pecūniam dant. Nauta mihi pecūniam ostendit.

5. Epistulam tuam parvae puellae dō. Parva puella est laeta. Epistulās amat.

48. VOCABULARY

dant, (they) give
dat, gives
dō, I give
lae'ta, happy
le'git, reads
mi'hi, to me, me (*as indirect object*)
osten'dit, shows
ro'sa, rose

THE INDIRECT OBJECT

49. In the sentence **Fulvia puellae epistulam dat,** *Fulvia gives the girl a letter,* the word **puellae** is the *indirect object,* that is, it denotes the person to whom something is given, said, or shown. All the nouns used thus far have a form ending in **-ae** for the indirect object in the singular. The corresponding form in the plural ends in **-īs: Fulvia pecūniam puellīs dat,** *Fulvia gives the girls money.*

a. We often use *to* with the indirect object: *Fulvia gives a letter to the girl.* The phrase *to the girl* in this sentence will be translated by the single word **puellae.**

THE DATIVE CASE

50. A Latin noun used as an indirect object is in the *dative case.*

a. An adjective modifying a noun in the dative case is also in the dative and is in the same number as its noun.

b. In the nouns used thus far the dative singular has the same ending as the genitive singular and the nominative plural.

MOSAIC PICTURE OF DOVES

These mosaic pictures were made up of many small pieces of colored stone. Sometimes the floors of Roman buildings were decorated with fine mosaics.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

51. 1. Agricola epistulam poēt— (*to the poet*) dat.
2. Poēta pecūniam naut— (*to the sailor*) dat.
3. Rosās parv— puell— (*to the little girls*) dō.
4. Parvae puellae mihi epistul— (*letters*) dant.
5. Fīlia tua naut— (*to the sailors*) pecūniam dat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

52. The words *legible*, *legibly*, and *illegible* are related to the Latin word of which **legit** is a form. Writing which is *legible* can be read; *illegible* writing cannot be read. One writes *legibly* if what he writes can be read. *Legend* also is derived from the same verb; and from **lēctum,** one of its forms which will be learned later, we have *lecture*. Originally *lecture* meant *a reading*.

Optional Drill

53. 1. Parvae puellae epistulās dō; parvīs puellīs epistulās dō. 2. Agricola poētae pecūniam dat; poēta agricolae pecūniam dat. 3. Incolae īnsulae nautae epistulās dant; nautae incolīs īnsulae pecūniam dant. 4. Rosam fīliae tuae dō; fīlia tua mihi epistulam dat. 5. Parvae puellae pecūniam dō et parva puella est laeta. 6. Nautae epistulam dō, et nauta epistulam legit. 7. Fīlia tua pecūniam habet sed Fulviae pecūniam nōn dat. 8. Fulvia epistulam legit et epistulam mihi ostendit.

54. 1. The little girl gives money to the farmers. 2. The little girls give money to the farmer. 3. The farmer gives letters to the little girl. 4. The farmer gives letters to the little girls. 5. I give a rose to the little daughter of the farmer. 6. The poet gives money to the sailors.

(*a*) Write two English sentences, each containing a direct and an indirect object.

(*b*) Write the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of the words for *letter* and *cottage*.

CAT WITH A PARTRIDGE

A mosaic picture

THE CITY OF THE SEVEN HILLS

Near the bank of the Tiber River, in the western part of central Italy, stands a group of hills which have been famous for many centuries. These hills were the site of ancient Rome, though the modern city has spread beyond them. At some period in the distant past a group of settlers chose this place as a location for their homes, and from the humble beginning of a small hilltop village there grew a powerful city.

These early settlers were perhaps herdsmen in search of a place which could be easily defended against an attack by enemies. In modern times cities are usually located on streams which will afford plenty of water, and this means that they are built in valleys or plains. But the founders of ancient cities and towns took care first of all to choose a situation which would be difficult for an enemy to attack successfully.

The original Roman settlement is believed to have been on the hill called the Palatine, which stands not far from the river and which is cut off from all the other hills by valleys. This hill has steep slopes or precipices on part of its sides, and on top there is room for such a village as these early settlers might have required.

When Rome had become a great city the Palatine was the favorite location for the homes of wealthy and prominent men. Still later the emperors built their magnificent residences here. Our English word "palace" is derived from *Palatium*, the Latin name for the Palatine, because of the elaborate and costly buildings which stood on this hill. At the present time the Palatine is covered with a mass of ruins, which mark the site of these imperial palaces.

Another hill called the Capitoline, or the Capitol, from the Latin name *Capitolium*, stands not far from the Palatine. There was on this hill a famous temple which was also called the Capitol (*Capitolium*). From this we have borrowed the name

THE TARPEIAN ROCK

which we give to the building at Washington in which Congress meets and to the buildings in the various states in which the state legislatures hold their sessions. On one side of the Capitoline Hill was a high precipice called the Tarpeian Rock, from which criminals were thrown as a method of execution.

South of the Palatine was the Aventine, on which many of the poorer class lived. The Circus Maximus, a famous place for chariot races, lay in the valley between the Palatine and the Aventine. The four remaining hills are the Caelian, the Esquiline, the Viminal, and the Quirinal. The Viminal is supposed to have taken its name from bushes or shrubs similar to willows which grew there, so that it was to the Romans "Willow Hill." Some of the important buildings in connection with the modern Italian government are on the Quirinal.

A high wall of large hewn stones was built around the city after it had come to include all the seven hills, and small parts of this wall remain today. At a later time the city outgrew the limits of this wall, and another was built, which included a larger area than that of the original seven hills. Most of this later wall still stands, though the city has again spread beyond the boundary formed by the wall.

LESSON VII

INDIRECT OBJECT (Continued)

READING EXERCISE

55. 1. Fulvia Cornēliae rosam dat. Cornēlia rosam fīliae agricolae ostendit. Fīlia agricolae quoque rosam cupit, sed Fulvia fīliae agricolae rosam nōn dat.

2. Agricolae epistulās dō, et agricola mihi pecūniam dat. Agricola epistulās legit. Agricola epistulās Fulviae ostendit, sed Fulvia epistulās nōn legit.

3. Puella mihi casam poētae mōnstrat. Casa est parva. Poētam nōn videō, sed fīliam poētae interdum videō. Fīlia poētae parvam casam amat.

4. Poēta fīliae pictūram dat. Fīlia poētae mihi pictūram ostendit. Pictūram laudō et poētam laudō. Fīlia poētae est laeta puella.

5. Nauta mihi fābulam nārrat. Fulvia quoque mihi interdum fābulās nārrat. Fīlia tua multās fābulās legit et saepe parvīs puellīs fābulās nārrat. Parvae puellae fābulās amant.

56. VOCABULARY

Cornē'lia, Cornelia (*name of a woman or girl*)
cu'pit, wishes, desires
fā'bula, story
lau'dō, I praise
mōn'strat, points out
nār'rat, tells
pictū'ra, picture
vi'deō, I see

57. EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. Fulvia gives your daughter a rose.
2. I often give letters to the sailor.
3. The farmer gives money to the poet.
4. The poet shows the farmer a letter.
5. The girl points out the island to the farmer.

SCATTERING FLOWERS

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

58. 1. What is meant by a *fabulous* sum of money? 2. What is *narrative* poetry? 3. What connection can you see between *demonstration* and **mōnstrat?** 4. Find an adjective which is connected in derivation with **pictūra.**

Optional Drill

59. 1. Fulvia fābulam mihi nārrat; Fulvia parvīs puellīs fābulam nārrat. 2. Cornēlia parvīs puellīs pictūram ostendit; nauta parvae puellae pictūram ostendit. 3. Fīlia tua mihi īnsulam mōnstrat; nauta agricolae īnsulam mōnstrat. 4. Pictūram pulchram laudāmus; pictūrās pulchrās laudāmus. 5. Casam Cornēliae videō; Cornēlia casam mihi mōnstrat. 6. Saepe poētās laudāmus; interdum poētās laudāmus.

60. 1. The sailor tells stories to the farmer; the sailor tells a story to the farmers. 2. The little girl wishes a rose; Fulvia gives the little girl a rose. 3. The farmer's daughter points out the cottage to me. 4. Cornelia shows the picture to the poet. 5. I see the farmer's cottage. 6. I praise the sailor's stories.

(*a*) Rewrite the last sentence in paragraph 4 of section **55**, changing the subject to the plural and making any other changes that are necessary.

(*b*) Rewrite the last sentence of paragraph 5 of section **55**, changing the subject to the singular and making any other changes that are necessary.

SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW OF GRAMMAR

To the Teacher: This review may be omitted with classes which recognize sentence elements with sufficient readiness, or it may be postponed to such a time as seems desirable.

THE SUBJECT

61. A word denoting the person, place, or thing about whom or about which we say or ask something is called the subject of the sentence: *The boy caught the ball. Where does your sister live?*

THE PREDICATE

62. What we say or ask about the subject is called the *predicate.* A noun or adjective in the predicate which is linked to the subject by a form of the verb *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be, has been,* etc.) is called a *predicate noun* or a *predicate adjective: That boy is my friend. The apple is red.*

THE DIRECT OBJECT

63. A word denoting the person, place, or thing directly affected by the action of the verb or on which the action may be said to terminate is called the *direct object: The man helps his brother. They watched the game.*

THE INDIRECT OBJECT

64. A word denoting the person to whom something is given, said, or shown is the *indirect object: I gave your father the letter.*

a. We sometimes use *to* with the indirect object: *I gave a letter to your father.*

Optional Drill

65. Point out the subjects, predicate nouns and adjectives, direct objects, and indirect objects in the following English sentences: 1. The storm damaged the crops. 2. The friends of this girl sent presents. 3. The engine of the airplane is small. 4. The large tree is an oak. 5. I gave the paper to your mother. 6. Tom showed his friend the medal. 7. The Indians told the scout a strange story. 8. Washington was a patriot. 9. Who saw the accident? 10. Why did the policeman arrest the man? 11. The man was a criminal.

LESSON VIII

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

66. 1. Fīlia tua parvae puellae est benigna. Parva puella fīliam tuam amat. Fīlia tua parvae puellae rosam dat. Rosa puellae est grāta.

2. Poētae saepe Italiam laudant. Italia poētīs cāra est. Sed patria mea mihi est cāra.

3. Epistulam fīliae tuae nōn laudō. Epistula longa est, sed mihi nōn est grāta. Fīlia tua nōn bene scrībit. Sed epistula tibi est grāta.

4. Fenestram casae tuae videō. Fenestra parva est. Casa agricolae multās fenestrās habet.

5. America multās silvās habet. Silvae Americae sunt magnae. Hibernia magnās silvās nōn habet.

6. Hispānia et Italia sunt terrae Eurōpae. Poētae interdum Hispāniam laudant. Est terra pulchra.

EUROPE IN ANCIENT TIMES

67. VOCABULARY

be′ne, well
benig′na, kind
cā′ra, dear
fenes′tra, window
grā′ta, pleasing
Hispā′nia, Spain
sil′va, forest
ti′bi, to you, you (*as indirect object*)

ADJECTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT DATIVE

68. In the sentence **Fulvia puellae benigna est,** *Fulvia is kind to the girl,* **puellae** is in the dative.

With adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, dear, pleasing, hostile, near,* and some others the dative is often used as the equivalent of an English phrase with *to.*

POSITION OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

69. (1) The genitive commonly stands after the word on which it depends, even though the corresponding English word denoting possession would stand first. Thus *the poet's cottage* may be translated **casa poētae.**

(2) The dative commonly stands before the word on which it depends. The words *kind to me* would take in Latin the order *to me kind.*

(3) The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.

70. EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. Italy is dear to the poet.
2. Fulvia is kind to your daughter.
3. The roses are pleasing to the little girls.
4. I give the little girl a rose.
5. Your letters are not pleasing to me.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

71. The word *Pennsylvania* is derived from **silva** and the name of William Penn, the leader of the early settlers in that state. In this word the first syllable of **silva** has become *syl-*. There is an English adjective, *sylvan*, meaning "of the forests," in which the same change is seen. The name *Sylvester* is also derived from **silva.**

Optional Drill

72. 1. Epistula mea tibi grāta est; epistulae meae tibi grātae sunt. 2. Epistulae tuae Cornēliae grātae sunt; epistulae Cornēliae tibi grātae sunt. 3. Casa tua magnam fenestram habet; casa mea multās fenestrās habet. 4. Fenestrās casae tuae videō; fenestram casae Cornēliae videō. 5. Puella est bona et benigna. 6. Puella bona tibi est cāra. 7. Patria tua tibi

est cāra. 8. Rosās pulchrās agricolae videō. 9. Patria mea magnās silvās habet. 10. Nauta nōn bene scrībit. 11. Nauta nōn bene legit.

73. 1. Your daughter is dear to the little girl. 2. The little girls are dear to your daughter. 3. The roses are pleasing to the poet. 4. The island is pleasing to the sailor. 5. The little girl is kind to the sailor. 6. The forest is pleasing to you. 7. The little cottage is pleasing to you. 8. I see the window of the little cottage.

(*a*) Point out all the datives in section **66.**

(*b*) Rewrite the third sentence in paragraph 1, section **66,** changing the direct and indirect objects to the plural.

WORD STUDY I

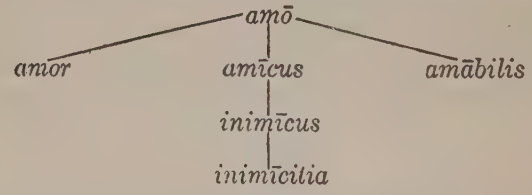
TWO CLASSES OF DERIVATIVES

We have seen (page 20) that many English words, such as *census, terminus, stimulus, veto, animal,* were originally Latin words, and have been taken into English without change of spelling. These have become so fully a part of our English vocabulary that we do not realize that they are borrowed from another language. In fact, however, they would be recognized by an ancient Roman, if he could come back to earth, as part of his own speech, unchanged in form in the course of two thousand years.

Many other words of Latin origin have been greatly changed from their earlier spelling and pronunciation. Examples are *humble, count, blame, sure.* These have not been taken directly from Latin into English, but have come down through French, and have been affected by the habits of pronunciation and the spelling of later times. The greater number of English derivatives from Latin are of this second class.

WORD FAMILIES

In studying the derivation of English words from Latin it is important to recognize the fact that there are groups of related Latin words. Thus **amō** (*I love*), **amor** (*love*, noun), **amīcus** (*friend*), **amābilis** (*lovely*), **inimīcus** (*enemy*), **inimīcitia** (*enmity*) are related. They have a common element which is represented by **am-** in the first four of the group and by **-im-** in the last two. We might indicate their connection as follows:



In explaining the derivation of an English word we sometimes say that it is related to a certain Latin word though it does not come directly from that word but from another of the same family or group. Thus we may say the word *amiable* is related in derivation to **amō,** though it comes directly from **amābilis,** which is in turn derived from **amō.**

Some of the Latin words from which our English derivatives have come were not often used by Roman writers, and therefore the English derivative is more easily explained by its relation to some familiar word of the group to which the Latin original belonged.

FINAL *-A* OF LATIN REPRESENTED BY *-E*

Some words of the Latin first declension have an English form in which final **a** is represented by English *-e*. The following examples have been seen:

rosa	*rose*
fābula	*fable*
epistula	*epistle*

In the last two of these, certain other changes have taken place in addition to that of **a** to *e*. It is not quite exact to say that final **a** of the nominative has become *e* but we may disregard for the present the details of this change.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN WORDS IN *-NTIA*

There are numerous Latin words ending in **-ntia** which have given English derivatives in *-nce* or *-ncy*. The following familiar words are of this class:

patientia	*patience*	clēmentia	*clemency*
temperantia	*temperance*	cōnstantia	*constancy*

Other changes in the spelling of derivatives will be explained later.

LESSON IX

PREPOSITIONS: ABLATIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

74. 1. Poēta casam in īnsulā habet. Casa mea quoque ibi est, et saepe poētam videō. Ex fenestrīs casae meae silvam videō. Silva pulchra est, et ibi saepe ambulō. Cum poētā in silvā ambulō. Poēta silvam amat.

2. Agricola et poēta nunc in viīs ambulant. Fulvia et Cornēlia interdum cum agricolā et poētā ambulant. Sed Cornēlia nunc in casā est. Fulviam nōn videō.

3. Fulvia nunc in Hispāniā est. Fīlia Cornēliae est cum Fulviā in Hispāniā. Cornēlia in Hiberniā quoque fīliam habet. Fīlia Cornēliae ex Hiberniā epistulās scrībit. Cornēlia epistulās fīliae mihi ostendit.

AN ANCIENT STREET SCENE

75. VOCABULARY

am′bulant, (they) walk	**i′bi,** there, in that place
am′bulō, I walk	**in,** in, on
cum, with	**nunc,** now
ē, ex, from	**vi′a,** street, road, way

a. In English the indefinite article has two forms, *a* and *an*. Similarly, in Latin the preposition meaning *from* given in this vocabulary has two forms, **ē** and **ex**. Before a vowel or *h* **ex** is always used. Before some consonants (but not all) **ē** is used.

CASE FORMS WITH CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS

76. In the phrases *with the girl, from the window, in the forest,* the words *girl, window, forest,* are said to be governed by the prepositions *with, from, in.*

The corresponding Latin phrases are **cum puellā, ex fenestrā, in silvā.** It will be observed that the letter in which these

nouns end is long (**ā**), while in the nominative it is short. The plural form of these nouns similarly used ends in **-īs: cum puellīs,** *with the girls.*

THE ABLATIVE

77. Latin nouns or pronouns governed by prepositions meaning *from, in,* or *with* are in the *ablative case.* In the nouns used thus far the ablative ends in **-ā** in the singular and in **-īs** in the plural.

a. An adjective modifying a noun in the ablative is also put in the ablative and is in the same number as its noun.

THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"

78. As seen in section **75,** *there,* meaning *in that place,* is in Latin **ibi.** But in such sentences as *There is no danger* we use *there* merely to introduce the sentence, and no idea of place is expressed. When thus used *there* is called an *expletive.*

Latin has no equivalent for this expletive use of *there,* and the sentence *There is no danger* will be translated as if it read *No danger is.* In such sentences the Latin verb usually stands before the subject.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

79. 1. Est casa in īnsul— (*the island*).
2. Parvae puellae in vi— (*the street*) ambulant.
3. Cum parv— puell— (*the little girls*) ambulō.
4. Ex fenestr— me— (*my window*) puellās videō.
5. Parva puella est in Hiberni— cum Cornēli—.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

80. 1. What is the meaning of *via* in railroad time-tables? 2. What is the origin and meaning of *deviate?* 3. What is the meaning of *amble?* 4. What is a *perambulator?*

Optional Drill

81. 1. In viā; in viīs; ex casā; ex casīs; cum puellā; cum puellīs. 2. In silvā ambulō; ex silvā ambulō; cum agricolā ambulō. 3. Ex fenestrā nautam videō; in viā nautam videō; cum Cornēliā nautam videō. 4. Est silva in parvā īnsulā; sunt silvae in parvīs īnsulīs. 5. Fīlia agricolae nunc in Italiā est; fīlia agricolae ex Italiā epistulam scrībit. 6. Fīlia agricolae cum fīliā tuā in Italiā est. 7. Nautās in viīs cum agricolīs videō. 8. Poētae īnsulam amant et ibi saepe ambulant.

82. 1. In the cottage, in the cottages; from the street, from the streets; with the little girl, with the little girls. 2. The girls walk in the forest; the girls walk from the forest; the girls walk with the farmer. 3. I walk on the island; I do not walk in the street now. 4. I love the large forest and sometimes I walk there. 5. The daughters of the poet sometimes walk there.

(*a*) Write the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of **silva** in the singular number.

(*b*) Write the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of **īnsula** in the plural number.

DECORATION FROM ALTAR IN POMPEII

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION

THE CASE FORMS OF *ROSA*

83. The different case forms of the noun **rosa** with their meanings are as follows:

Singular Number

NOM.	ro′sa, *a rose* (as subject or predicate)
GEN.	ro′sae, *of a rose, rose's*
DAT.	ro′sae, *to a rose, rose* (as indirect object)
ACC.	ro′sam, *rose* (as direct object)
ABL.	ro′sā, (*from, with, in, on*) *a rose*

Plural Number

NOM.	ro′sae, *roses* (as subject or predicate)
GEN.	rosā′rum, *of roses, roses'*
DAT.	ro′sīs, *to the roses, roses* (as indirect object)
ACC.	ro′sās, *roses* (as direct object)
ABL.	ro′sīs, (*from, with, in, on*) *roses*

a. The part of a noun to which the endings are added is called the *base*. It may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. Thus, the base of **rosa** is **ros-**.

84. The following sentences illustrate the use of the Latin cases:

The rose (**rosa**) is beautiful.
The fragrance of the rose (**rosae**) is delightful.
The sunshine has given color to the rose (**rosae**).
The girl is carrying a rose (**rosam**).
The butterfly is on the rose (**in rosā**).

The roses (**rosae**) are beautiful.
The fragrance of the roses (**rosārum**) is delightful.
The sun has given color to the roses (**rosīs**).
The girl is carrying roses (**rosās**).
The butterflies are on the roses (**in rosīs**).

THE FIRST DECLENSION

85. Nouns which form their cases with the same endings as those of **rosa** are said to belong to the *first declension*. All nouns with the nominative ending in **-a** and the genitive in **-ae** are of the first declension.

a. In the vocabularies hereafter the nominative of new nouns of the first declension will be given, with the genitive ending printed after the nominative to show that the noun is of the first declension. Thus **lūna, -ae** indicates that **lūna** is a first declension noun.

APPOSITION

86. A noun is sometimes set beside another to explain the meaning of the first by indicating more definitely who or what is meant.

Fīlia mea, Cornēlia, est in casā, *My daughter, Cornelia, is in the cottage.*

A noun thus used is in *apposition* with the noun it explains. **Cornēlia** is in apposition with **fīlia.**

87. A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun it explains.

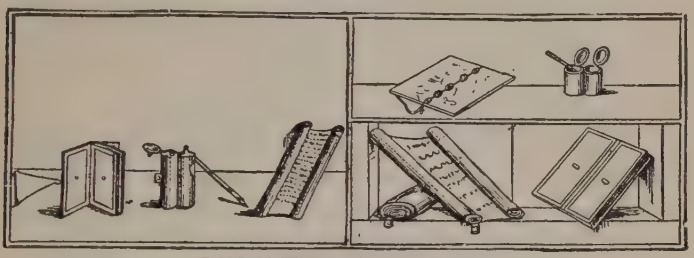
READING EXERCISE

88. 1. Casa nostra magnās fenestrās habet. Fenestrae sunt apertae. Ex fenestrīs viās vidēmus. Fīliae agricolae in viīs ambulant.

2. Fulvia puellās expectat. Puellae ex scholā properant. Fīlia tua cum puellīs est. Puellae laetae sunt. Puellās nunc vidēmus.

3. Schola nostra est magna. Scholam nostram laudāmus. In scholā nostrā linguam Latīnam discimus. Fāma scholae nostrae bona est.

4. Scholae Americae, patriae nostrae, sunt multae et bonae. In multīs terrīs Eurōpae quoque sunt scholae bonae. Sed Hispānia nōn habet multās scholās. Incolae Eurōpae scholās Americae saepe laudant.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

89. VOCABULARY

aper'ta, open
dis'cimus, we learn
expec'tat, awaits, waits for
fā'ma, reputation
Latī'na, Latin
lin'gua, language
nos'tra, our
pro'perant, (they) hasten, hurry

90. EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. From the open windows I see the street.
2. Your daughters hasten from school.
3. There are many schools in America.
4. Cornelia waits for Fulvia, the poet's daughter.
5. The sailor has money, but he does not have a good reputation.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

91. 1. What is an *aperture?* 2. Find from a dictionary the original meaning of *disciple.* 3. What is meant by a *bilingual* country? 4. What is an *expectant* attitude?

Optional Drill

92. 1. Americam, patriam nostram, amāmus; Italiam, patriam tuam, amās. 2. Cornēlia nunc in scholā est. 3. Puellae ex silvā properant; nautae ex viīs properant. 4. Fīliae tuae ex casā properant. 5. Fīlia tua Cornēliam in casā expectat. 6. Fulviam, fīliam tuam, amās. 7. Linguam patriae tuae, Italiae, discimus. 8. Fenestra casae aperta est; fenestrae casae apertae sunt. 9. Ex fenestrā silvam videō; ex fenestrīs silvam vidēmus. 10. Lingua nostra nōn est lingua Latīna.

93. 1. Our schools are good. 2. We learn your language in our school. 3. Our school has a good reputation. 4. I see the open window; we see the open windows. 5. The language of America, your native country, is not the Latin language. 6. Your daughter awaits the little girls in the street.

(*a*) Write the declension of the nouns **lingua** and **terra.**

(*b*) Write the declension of **casa mea.**

(*c*) Give the three prepositions which have been used thus far and tell what case they govern.

A YOUNG ROMAN

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS I-V

agricola	terra	amant
casa	vīta	laudant
epistula		vident
fīlia	amō	sunt
incola	amās	
īnsula	amat	cūr
nauta	habet	interdum
patria	scrībit	nōn
pecūnia	est	quoque
poēta	amāmus	saepe
puella	laudāmus	et
schola	vidēmus	sed

ENDINGS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	**-a**	**-ae**
Gen.	**-ae**	**-ārum**
Dat.	**-ae**	**-īs**
Acc.	**-am**	**-ās**
Abl.	**-ā**	**-īs**

USE OF CASES

(1) The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.

(2) A predicate noun is in the nominative case.

(3) The genitive case is used to denote the possessor or owner of something. It is also used to express certain other ideas expressed in English by the possessive case or by *of* with a noun or pronoun.

(4) The indirect object is in the dative case.

(5) The dative is often used with adjectives to express an idea which is expressed in English by *to* with a noun or pronoun.

(6) The direct object is in the accusative case.

(7) The ablative case is used as the object of prepositions meaning *from, in, with.*

NOTE. The genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative have certain other uses which will be explained later.

OPTIONAL DRILL A

1. Give the case and number of the following words; if any particular word might represent more than one form, name all the forms in which it might be found: epistulās, fābula, fīliārum; fāma, incolae, puellīs; patriam, viae, patria.

2. In the following sentences tell what case would be required to translate the italicized words or phrases: (*a*) The *island* is narrow. (*b*) The boy is the son *of a poet.* (*c*) My friend is walking with the *sailor.* (*d*) We heard a noise in the *street.* (*e*) You did not see the *picture.* (*f*) I gave the *girl* your book. (*g*) Your brother is a *farmer.* (*h*) I came from the *forest.*

OPTIONAL DRILL B

1. Write the names of the cases, observing carefully the spelling of each.

2. Write additional English sentences illustrating the uses of the cases.

3. Write the declension of five nouns from the review vocabulary.

A ROMAN BAKERY

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS VI-X

fābula
fāma
fenestra
lingua
pictūra
rosa
silva
via

mihi
tibi

ambulō
dō
laudō
videō
dat
expectat
mōnstrat
nārrat
cupit
legit
ostendit

discimus
ambulant
dant
properant

bene
ibi
nunc

cum
ē, ex
in

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

1. What is *narrative* poetry? 2. What is a *fabulous* account of anything? 3. What is the meaning of *donor?* 4. How is *demonstration* related in meaning to **mōnstrat?** 5. What is a *laudatory* speech?

Optional Drill

1. Pictūram videō et laudō. 2. Nautae ex viā properant. 3. Poēta saepe fīliae agricolae fābulās nārrat. 4. Rosam in casā videō. 5. Poēta pecūniam mihi sed nōn tibi dat. 6. Nautae cum incolīs īnsulae in viīs ambulant. 7. Fāma scholārum Americae est bona.

1. We praise the pictures. 2. We love the life of the sailor. 3. The girls hurry from the cottage. 4. We see the roses on the island. 5. Your daughter gives a picture to the poet.

LESSON XI

READING EXERCISE: SICILY

94. Sicilia est magna īnsula Eurōpae. In Siciliā sunt multae casae et vīllae. Sunt silvae quoque, sed silvae nōn sunt magnae.

Sicilia Italiae (*section* **68**) propinqua est. Ex Siciliā Italiam vidēmus. Incolae Italiae quoque Siciliam vident. Aqua Italiam et Siciliam sēparat, sed aqua est angusta.

Messāna est in ōrā maritimā Siciliae. Incolae Messānae ōram maritimam Italiae vident. Casās et vīllās Italiae vident. Incolae ōrae maritimae sunt nautae, sed casae agricolārum ōrae maritimae propinquae sunt.

Sicilia est terra amoena. Saepe poētae Siciliam laudant.

95. VOCABULARY

amoe′na, pleasant
angus′ta, narrow
a′qua, -ae, water
Messā′na, -ae, Messina, *a city of Sicily*
ō′ra mari′tima, seacoast
propin′qua, near
sē′parat, separates
Sici′lia, -ae, Sicily
vīl′la, -ae, farmhouse

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

96. 1. Your farmhouse is near the forest (*section* **68**). 2. From the window of the cottage we see the water. 3. The island is long and narrow. 4. The seacoast is pleasant, and I often walk there. 5. The farmhouses in Sicily are not large. 6. There are (*section* **78**) small islands near Sicily.

SICILY

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

97. 1. What are *aquatic* plants? 2. What is an *aqueduct?* 3. What is the meaning of *propinquity?* 4. What is the meaning of *villa* as an English word? 5. What hint regarding the spelling of *separation* can you find in **sēparat?**

Optional Drill

98. 1. In terrā amoenā; ex īnsulā amoenā; ex īnsulīs amoenīs. 2. Patria nostra est terra amoena. 3. Fīliae tuae ex vīllā

properant. 4. Vīlla multās et magnās fenestrās habet. 5. Fenestra vīllae est aperta. 6. Messāna viās angustās habet. 7. Incola Messānae mihi ōram maritimam Italiae mōnstrat.

99. 1. In the pleasant forest; from the large farmhouse; on the narrow seacoast. 2. The streets of Messina are narrow. 3. The sailors often see Sicily. 4. The small islands are near. 5. We see the forests of Sicily.

(*a*) Give the case of each noun in sentences 3, 4, and 5 of section **98,** and point out the case ending.

(*b*) Write the declension of **vīlla** in full.

LESSON XII

CONJUGATION OF *SUM*

THE FORMS OF *SUM*

100. The forms of the Latin verb **sum,** meaning *I am*, are as follows when referring to present time:

	Singular	*Plural*
1ST PERSON	sum, *I am*	su'mus, *we are*
2D PERSON	es, *you* (singular) *are*	es'tis, *you* (plural) *are*
3D PERSON	est, (*he, she, it*) *is*	sunt, (*they*) *are*

a. In English *you* may denote one person or more than one. We say *You are my friend* when speaking to one person, and *You are my friends* when speaking to two or more persons. Latin, however, has different forms for the singular and plural of this pronoun. The verb forms used to denote an act of the person or persons spoken to also differ according as the subject is singular or plural.

b. The infinitive of **sum** is **esse,** *to be.*

READING EXERCISE

101. 1. Incola Britanniae sum. Fīlia mea incola Hiberniae est. Sed patria nostra est America, et patriam nostram amāmus.

2. Nunc in Americā es, sed America nōn est patria tua. Patriam tuam amās. Cūr Americam nōn amās?

3. Nunc in Italiā estis. In Italiā sumus. Italia est terra pulchra. Sed Italia nōn est patria nostra. Italiam saepe laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

4. Ex fenestrā meā noctū stellās spectō. Saepe lūnam quoque spectō. Lūna nunc obscūra est, sed stellae clārae sunt.

5. Ex viā fenestram tuam vidēmus. Fenestra aperta est. Fīliam tuam in casā vidēmus. Cūr fīlia tua nōn in viā cum puellīs est?

6. Fīlia mea aegra est. Puellae sunt miserae quod fīlia mea est aegra.

102. VOCABULARY

ae'gra, ill
clā'ra, bright, clear; famous
lū'na, -ae, moon
mi'sera, unhappy
noc'tū, at night
obscū'ra, dim
quod, because
spec'tō, I watch, look at
stel'la, -ae, star

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

103. 1. I am now an inhabitant of America. 2. The poet's daughters are in Ireland. 3. You are in a beautiful country. 4. We are in the cottage with the sailor. 5. I am watching (I watch) the stars, but I do not see the moon.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

104. 1. What is the meaning of *clarify?* What part of speech is it? 2. What is a *lunar* eclipse? 3. Find two English verbs derived from **spectō** with a syllable placed before **-spect-**. 4. What is a *constellation?*

AN ANCIENT HOUSE WITH A BALCONY

Optional Drill

105. 1. Stellās clārās spectō; lūnam quoque videō. 2. Lūna nunc nōn obscūra est; stellae nunc nōn obscūrae sunt. 3. Parva puella est aegra; parva puella est misera. 4. Parvae puellae sunt aegrae et miserae. 5. Fulvia est misera quod parva puella est aegra. 6. Nunc in Americā sumus; nunc in Americā estis. 7. Patria nostra nōn est in Eurōpā. 8. Noctū in casā sumus; noctū ex fenestrīs stellās vidēmus. 9. Fīlia nautae nōn es; fīlia poētae nōn es. 10. Saepe misera es; cūr es misera?

106. 1. The stars are now dim; the moon is now bright. 2. You are kind to Cornelia; Cornelia is kind to you. 3. The poet's daughter is unhappy because she does not have money. 4. From my window I watch the little girl in the street. 5. I am not often in the forest at night.

(*a*) Change the verbs of the first two sentences of paragraph 3, section **101,** to the singular number.

(*b*) Give the dative singular and plural of **stella.**

(*c*) Change the verb of the second sentence in paragraph 5, section **101,** to the plural number, making such other changes as are necessary.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS

107. In some tenses a verb has a different form when its subject is in the first person from what it would have if the subject were in the third person. Thus we say *I walk,* but *he walks.* The third person plural also differs from the third person singular. Thus, *he walks, they walk.* A verb is said to be in the same person and number as its subject.

LESSON XIII

FIRST CONJUGATION

THE VERB *PORTŌ*

108. The forms of **portō,** *I carry,* when referring to present time and representing the subject as doing the act expressed by the verb are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
1ST PERSON	por′tō, *I carry*	portā′mus, *we carry*
2D PERSON	por′tās, *you carry*	portā′tis, *you carry*
3D PERSON	por′tat, *he, she, it, carries*	por′tant, *they carry*

a. The forms given above may also be translated *I am carrying, you are carrying, he is carrying,* etc. Latin has no means of distinguishing between such expressions as *I carry* and *I am carrying, he praises* and *he is praising, they walk* and *they are walking.*

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

109. The verb **portō** is said to be of the *first conjugation.* The infinitive meaning *to carry* is **portāre.** All verbs which have

the infinitive ending **-āre** are of the first conjugation and are conjugated like **portō.** The verbs **ambulō, amō, expectō, labōrō, laudō, mōnstrō, nārrō, properō, sēparō, spectō,** and **stō,** forms of which appear in this or the preceding lessons, are of the first conjugation.

a. The verb **dō** is of the first conjugation, but it is irregular in that it has the vowel **a** short everywhere in the indicative mood except in the second person singular, **dās.** The infinitive is **dare.**

PERSON ENDINGS

110. With a verb denoting an act done by the subject the following are the endings which are used to show person and number, together with their meanings.

Singular	*Plural*
-ō or **-m,**[1] *I*	**-mus,** *we*
-s, *you* (singular)	**-tis,** *you* (plural)
-t, *he, she, it*	**-nt,** *they*

READING EXERCISE

111. 1. Schola nostra est schola bona. Scholam nostram laudāmus et amāmus.

Scholam laudātis, sed in scholā nōn bene labōrātis. Fulvia scholam laudat et in scholā bene labōrat. Fulvia est puella impigra.

2. Cūr hīc stātis?

Hīc stāmus quod fīliam tuam expectāmus. Ubi fīlia tua est?

Fīlia mea nunc in scholā est.

3. Vesperī saepe in viīs ambulō. Nautae quoque ibi ambulant. Nautās saepe vidēmus cum in viīs ambulāmus. Agricolae quoque in viīs vesperī ambulant.

[1] The use of **-m** as a person ending will be seen in certain forms to be learned later.

4. Jānua est aperta, et Cornēliam in casā videō. Cornēlia agricolam expectat. Agricola epistulam portat. Agricola epistulam Cornēliae dat.

112. VOCABULARY

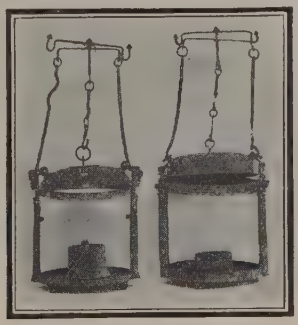
cum, when
hīc, here
im′pigra, energetic, industrious
jā′nua, -ae, door
labō′rō, -āre, work
por′tō, -āre, carry
stō, stā′re, stand
u′bi, where, when
ves′perī, in the evening

COMPLETION EXERCISE

113. 1. Puellae saepe in viīs vesperī ambula—. 2. Cūr agricola ex silv— propera—? 3. Epistulās tuās nunc expectā— (*subject "we"*). 4. Cūr Cornēlia mihi pecūniam nōn da—? 5. Cornēlia tibi pecūniam nōn da— quod nōn bene labōrā— (*subject "you" singular*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

114. 1. What do you suppose was originally the duty of a *porter?* 2. What connection in meaning can you see between **stō** and *station?* 3. At what time of day are *vesper* services held?



ROMAN LANTERNS

Optional Drill

115. 1. Ambulāmus; stāmus; labōrāmus; amāmus. 2. Spectat; spectant; spectō; spectāmus. 3. Labōrās; dās; labōrant; dant. 4. Amāre; labōrāre; stāre; dare. 5. Portant; portat; portās; portō. 6. Sunt; stant; sum; stō. 7. Ubi es? Ubi stās? Hīc sum; hīc stō. 8. Ambulātis; ambulat; ambulō; ambulāre.

116. 1. They await; they walk; they point out; they praise. 2. He loves; he gives; he hastens; he works. 3. They hasten; we hasten; you (*singular*) hasten; I hasten. 4. We tell; I tell; you (*plural*) tell; they tell. 5. You (*plural*) stand; you (*singular*) walk; we praise; we carry.

(*a*) Write the conjugation of **labōrō** and **stō** in the present active (like **portō**), and give the meaning of each form.

(*b*) Write the present active infinitive (like **portāre**) of **laudō, properō, nārrō, expectō,** and give English meanings.

Principles of English Grammar: Indicative Mood

117. A verb which states a fact or asks a question implying that the answer will be a statement of fact is said to be in the *indicative mood.*

ROMAN COOKING UTENSILS

Some of these are very modern in appearance.

ROMULUS AND REMUS

The Romans believed that their city was founded by a hero named Romulus, and that from his name the word *Rome* was derived. The stories told regarding him are so largely imaginary that it is difficult to say what truth they may have had as a basis.

According to these stories Romulus and his twin brother Remus were sons of the god Mars and a princess whose father had been king of a city not very far from Rome. The grandfather of the boys had been driven from his kingdom and the kingship seized by his brother. This new king ordered the twins to be drowned in the Tiber River. The servants who were to carry out this cruel order placed the children in a box and left it near the edge of the river. Here they were found by a wolf, which, instead of injuring them, took care of them. Later, a shepherd found them and took them to his hut on the Palatine. After the boys grew up they drove out the brother of their grandfather who had wanted to kill them, and they restored their grandfather to the kingdom. Then they decided to build a city on the Palatine, where they had been brought up.

THE CAPITOLINE WOLF

In order to determine which of them should give his name to the new city they watched for signs to be given by the flight of birds. Both soon saw flocks of vultures, but Romulus saw the larger number and therefore claimed the right to have the settlement called by his name. While the wall was being built Remus ridiculed its small size and showed his contempt by jumping over it. As a result he was killed by Romulus or one of his followers. This story of the quarrel between the

two brothers and of the killing of Remus was rather frequently referred to in Roman literature. When the great poet Virgil wishes to picture a time of perfect peace he speaks of Romulus and Remus as living together in harmony instead of being engaged in strife. Romulus led his people in successful wars, and he also organized their government. He selected a council of elderly men as his advisers and to this council he gave the name *senate* (Latin *senātus*), from the Latin word *senex*, meaning "old man." The word "senate" is used in modern times not only for one division of our Congress but for a similar body in some other countries.

While Romulus was inspecting the army on a certain occasion a great storm came on, concealing him from sight. When the storm had cleared away, Romulus was no longer to be seen. His followers declared that he had been carried away to become one of the gods.

The modern Romans still keep a live wolf in a cage on the side of the Capitoline Hill as a reminder of the old legend of the wolf which cared for Romulus and Remus. In ancient times a hut, such as might have been the home of the shepherd where the boys were reared, was kept on the Palatine. The picture here given is that of a small building which was constructed on this same hill in recent times to represent this ancient shepherd hut.

LESSON XIV

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES WITH *-NE*

FORMS OF QUESTIONS

118. Habetne poēta fīliam? *Has the poet a daughter?* **Estne Sicilia magna īnsula?** *Is Sicily a large island?* In these two Latin sentences the syllable **-ne** is added to the first word, to indicate that they are questions. In translation no separate English word is used for **-ne.**

We have previously had questions introduced by **cūr** and **ubi.** When such interrogative words as these are used or when we have interrogative pronouns meaning *who, what,* and the like, **-ne** will not be used.

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS

119. A question which calls for *yes* or *no* in reply may be answered by repeating the words of the question in the form of a statement with **nōn** if the answer is *no,* without **nōn** if the answer is *yes.*

Sometimes the adverb **minimē** is used for *no* and **ita** for *yes.*

120. READING EXERCISE*: COLLOQUIUM* (*A DIALOGUE*)

Quid facit agricola?
Agricola terram colit.
Quis cum agricolā labōrat?
Puella cum agricolā labōrat.
Quis est puella?
Puella est fīlia agricolae.
Estne parva puella quoque fīlia agricolae?
Minimē. Parva puella est cōnsōbrīna fīliae agricolae.
Quid portat parva puella?
Parva puella urnam portat.
Quid est in urnā?

Est aqua in urnā.
Ubi est amita parvae puellae?
Amita parvae puellae est in vīllā.
Labōratne amita puellae cum agricolā?
Minimē. Terram nōn colit.
Quid facit amita?
Amita in vīllā labōrat.
Labōratne interdum parva puella cum amitā?
Ita. Parva puella interdum cum amitā in vīllā labōrat.

121. VOCABULARY

a′mita, -ae, aunt
co′lit, cultivates, tills
cōnsōbrī′na, -ae, cousin (*a girl or woman*)
fa′cit, does, is doing
i′ta, so; yes
mi′nimē, by no means, no
quis, who?
quid, what?
ur′na, -ae, jar, pitcher

a. **Quid** has the same form for the nominative and the accusative singular.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

122. 1. Is your aunt now in Spain? 2. Does Italy have many islands? 3. Does the little girl carry water from the farmhouse? 4. What do the girls give to their cousin? 5. Where is your money now?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

123. From **labōrō** of the vocabulary of Lesson XIII we have *labor*, *laborer*, and *laborious*. A *co-laborer* is one who works with another. A *laboratory* is a place where experimental work of certain kinds is done.

Optional Drill

124. 1. Estne urna parva? Ita; urna est parva. 2. Habetne Fulvia parvam cōnsōbrīnam? Ita; Fulvia parvam cōnsōbrīnam habet. 3. Quis terram colit? Agricola terram colit. 4. Quid facit amita tua? Amita mea in ōrā maritimā ambulat. 5. Portatne parva puella magnam urnam? Minimē; parvam urnam portat.

125. 1. Are your daughters now in Europe? 2. Do the girls often walk in the forest? 3. Does Cornelia give money to your cousin? 4. Do the inhabitants of Sicily love Italy?

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

126. A verb which takes a direct object is called a *transitive verb*. In the sentence *I saw the fire*, the verb *saw* is transitive. A verb which does not take a direct object is called an *intransitive verb*. In the sentence *We walked in the park*, the verb *walked* is intransitive.

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XI-XIV

amita, -ae	expectō, -āre	facit
aqua, -ae	labōrō, -āre	
cōnsōbrīna, -ae	mōnstrō, -āre	hīc
jānua, -ae	nārrō, -āre	ita
lūna, -ae	portō, -āre	minimē
stella, -ae	properō, -āre	noctū
urna, -ae	sēparō, -āre	ubi
vīlla, -ae	spectō, -āre	vesperī
	stō, stāre	
quis	sum, esse	cum
quid	colit	quod

PERSON ENDINGS OF THE VERB, ACTIVE VOICE

Singular	*Plural*
1. **-ō** *or* **-m,** *I*	**-mus,** *we*
2. **-s,** *you* (singular)	**-tis,** *you* (plural)
3. **-t,** *he, she, it*	**-nt,** *they*

THE IRREGULAR VERB *SUM*

Present Infinitive, **esse**

(Present Indicative, see section **100**)

FIRST CONJUGATION

Present Active Infinitive Termination, **-āre**

(Present Active Indicative, see section **108**)

AGREEMENT OF VERBS

A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

QUESTIONS WITH *-NE*

(See section **118**)

LESSON XV

SECOND DECLENSION

DECLENSION OF *TEMPLUM*

127. The different case forms of the noun **templum,** *a temple,* are as follows:

Singular

NOM.	tem′plum, *a temple* (as subject)
GEN.	tem′plī, *of a temple*
DAT.	tem′plō, *to a temple, temple* (as indirect object)
ACC.	tem′plum, *a temple* (as direct object)
ABL.	tem′plō, (*from, with, in*) *a temple*

Plural

NOM.	tem′pla, *temples* (as subject)
GEN.	templō′rum, *of temples*
DAT.	tem′plīs, *to temples, temples* (as indirect object)
ACC.	tem′pla, *temples* (as direct object)
ABL.	tem′plīs, (*from, with, in*) *temples*

THE SECOND DECLENSION

128. Nouns with the genitive singular ending in **-ī** are of the second declension. The second declension nouns are not all alike in the nominative. Some have the nominative ending in **-um,** others in **-us,** and others in **-er.** Those ending in **-um** are declined like **templum.**

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

129. 1. Templum videō; templa videō. 2. Poēta templum laudat. 3. Oppidum nōn amō; oppidum nōn laudō. 4. Sicilia oppida et templa habet. 5. Oppida et templa Siciliae vidēmus. 6. Tēctum in silvā est. 7. Tēctum ex fenestrā meā videō. 8. Praemium tibi dō; praemium mihi dās. 9. Puella praemia

habet. 10. Incola oppidī es; incola oppidī sum. 11. Ex tēctō properāmus. 12. Agricola in oppidō est. 13. Incolās oppidōrum laudāmus. 14. Templa oppidōrum laudāmus. 15. Nōnne Fulvia fīlia agricolae est? 16. Nōnne Sicilia templa habet? 17. Nōnne patriam tuam amās?

OPPIDUM ITALIAE

130. VOCABULARY

nōn'ne, *a word used to introduce a question implying the answer "yes"*
op'pidum, -ī, town
prae'mium, -ī, reward
tēc'tum, -ī, house
tem'plum, -ī, temple

a. The difference between questions introduced by **-ne** and by **nōnne** may be illustrated by the following:

Amāsne patriam tuam? *Do you love your native country?*
Nōnne patriam tuam amās? *Do you not love your native country?*

b. The word **nōnne** is merely **nōn** with the interrogative **-ne** added.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

131. 1. We see the houses on the island. 2. I love the towns of my native country. 3. There are (*section* **78**) temples in the towns of Sicily. 4. Does not the poet praise the towns of Sicily? 5. Does not Cornelia love the little girl?

Optional Drill

132. 1. In oppidō; in oppidīs; ex oppidīs. 2. Templī; templōrum; ex templīs. 3. In templō stō; ex templō properō. 4. Tēctum vidēmus; tēctum in oppidō est. 5. Oppidum in īnsulā est; oppida vidēmus. 6. In oppidō labōrās; in oppidīs labōrāmus. 7. Nōnne fīlia nautae in oppidō est? 8. Nōnne Fulvia est cōnsōbrīna tua? 9. Nōnne amita tua parvam puellam amat?

133. 1. Fulvia has a reward. 2. I am often in the town. 3. Do not the girls walk in the street? 4. Do we not see the farmhouses?

(*a*) Give the genitive plural of **oppidum** and **nauta.**

(*b*) Give the ablative singular of **templum** and **īnsula.**

(*c*) Give the dative singular of **praemium** and **aqua.**

LESSON XVI

GENDER OF NOUNS

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION

134. Most first declension nouns are feminine, even though we should expect many of them to be neuter from their meanings. Those denoting males, however, are masculine. Thus, **agricola, nauta,** and **poēta** are masculine; **incola** may be either masculine or feminine. All other nouns of this declension which have been given are feminine.

GENDER OF NOUNS IN *-UM*

135. All nouns ending in **-um** in the nominative singular are of the neuter gender.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN GENDER

136. The adjectives which have been given with the ending **-a** have also a neuter form in **-um,** declined like **templum.**

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender as well as in case and number. Thus we say **parva puella,** *a small girl,* but **parvum templum,** *a small temple.*

READING EXERCISE

137. 1. Tēctum in magnō oppidō habeō, sed oppidum nōn amō. Parvam casam in silvā habeō, et aestāte in casā habitō. Fīlia mea quoque in casā aestāte habitat. Sed hieme in oppidō sumus.

2. Tēctum tuum in oppidō saepe videō. Tēctum magnum est sed nōn pulchrum. Casa in silvā est pulchra.

TEMPLE OF PAESTUM

3. Italia multa templa habet. Templa Italiae tibi nōta sunt. In Hispāniā quoque sunt templa. Oppidum tuum habet parvum templum.

4. Oppida patriae nostrae laudās. Fīlia tua oppida Italiae saepe laudat, sed in oppidīs Italiae nōn diū manet. Nunc in parvō oppidō Hispāniae est. Multa oppida Hispāniae et Italiae sunt pulchra.

5. Puellae parvum tabernāculum habent. Tabernāculum vīllae propinquum est. Cornēlia et cōnsōbrīna mea nunc in tabernāculō sunt.

138. VOCABULARY

aestā'te, in summer	**hi'eme,** in winter
di'ū, long, for a long time	**ma'net,** remains
ha'beō, I have	**nō'ta,** known, well known
ha'bitō, I live	**tabernā'culum, -ī,** N., tent

a. The forms **hieme** and **aestāte** are ablatives of nouns. The declension to which they belong will be explained later.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

139. 1. You do not praise the large town. 2. We often praise the towns of Italy. 3. I see a tent in the forest. 4. Cornelia gives me a large reward. 5. Fulvia does not remain in the town in summer.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

140. We say a region is *habitable* if it is a place where people can live. A *habitation* is a dwelling place or home. An *inhabitant* is one who lives in a particular place. A country is *uninhabited* if no one lives there. When we know the meaning of **habitō** it is easy to see the relation and source of all these words.

Optional Drill

141. 1. Magnī oppidī; magnōrum oppidōrum; in magnō templō. 2. Quid videō? Quid habeō? Ubi habitās? 3. Templum videō; praemium habeō; in oppidō habitās. 4. Tēctum est magnum; tēcta sunt magna; tēcta sunt multa et magna. 5. Aestāte Fulvia in Britanniā manet. 6. Hieme Cornēlia in Hispāniā habitat. 7. Parva silva; parvum oppidum; in magnā silvā; in magnō oppidō. 8. Ex meō tabernāculō; in tuō tabernāculō.

142. 1. A beautiful town; beautiful towns; in a beautiful town. 2. In the small temple; from the small temple; from the small temples. 3. What do we see? 4. We see the farmer's cottage. 5. I live in the large town. 6. I have beautiful pictures. 7. In summer the girl remains in the town. 8. I have a great reward.

(*a*) Decline together **parvum oppidum.**

(*b*) Decline together **magnum templum.**

(*c*) Name the case of each noun in paragraph 3, section **137.**

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: GENDER

143. We use the pronoun *he* when we are referring to a man or boy or a male animal, the pronoun *she* when we are referring to a woman or girl or a female animal, and the pronoun *it* when we are referring to something without sex. Thus when we are speaking of a boy we may say *He is a stranger*, when speaking of a girl we may say *She is not at home*, and when speaking of a book we may say *It is mine.* This distinction in pronouns is called *gender.*

Such words as *he* are in the *masculine* gender, such words as *she* are in the *feminine* gender, and such words as *it* are in the *neuter* gender.

Nouns also are said to have gender. Thus, *brother* is masculine, *sister* is feminine, and *house* is neuter.

a. A word like *friend*, which may refer to either a man or a woman, is sometimes said to be in the *common* gender.

LESSON XVII

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

DECLENSION OF *AMĪCUS*

144. The noun **amīcus** is of the second declension, and is declined as follows:

Singular

NOM.	amī'cus, *a friend* (as subject)
GEN.	amī'cī, *of a friend, friend's*
DAT.	amī'cō, *to a friend, a friend* (as indirect object)
ACC.	amī'cum, *a friend* (as direct object)
ABL.	amī'cō, (*from, with, in*) *a friend*

Plural

NOM.	amī'cī, *friends* (as subject)
GEN.	amīcō'rum, *of friends, friends'*
DAT.	amī'cīs, *to friends, friends* (as indirect object)
ACC.	amī'cōs, *friends* (as direct object)
ABL.	amī'cīs, (*from, with, in*) *friends*

a. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** are chiefly masculine.

ADJECTIVES IN *-US*

145. Such adjectives as **bona** and **magna** have a masculine form ending in **-us** in the nominative, with the other case endings like those of the noun **amīcus.**

READING EXERCISE: *FĪLIUS ET FĪLIA AGRICOLAE*

146. 1. Agricola fīlium et fīliam habet. Fīlius agricolae domī manet, sed fīlia in scholā hieme est, et tum in oppidō cum amīcō benignō agricolae habitat. Agricola oppidum nōn

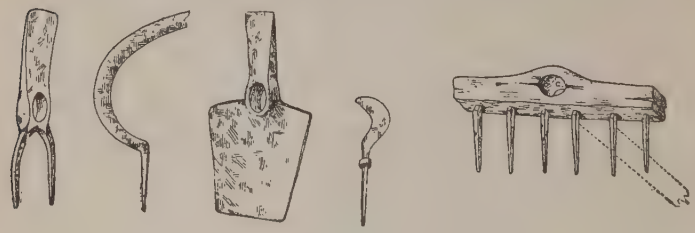
amat, et fīliam hieme nōn saepe videt. Aestāte puella domī manet. Agricola equōs habet, et fīliae equum bonum dat. Fīlia equōs nōn timet, et laeta est quod equum bonum habet. Fīlius agricolae laetus est cum puella domī est. Fīlius agricolae nūllōs amīcōs in oppidō habet.

2. Tēctum amīcī agricolae in nostrō oppidō est. Ex fenestrā meā tēctum amīcī agricolae videō. Ibi fīlia agricolae hieme habitat. Amīcus agricolae parvum fīlium habet, sed nūllās fīliās habet.

147. VOCABULARY

amī′cus, -ī, M., friend	**nūl′lus,** no, none
do′mī, at home	**ti′met,** fears
e′quus, -ī, M., horse	**tum,** then
fī′lius,[1] **-ī,** M., son	**vi′det,** sees

a. The genitive and dative singular of **nūllus** are irregular. They are not used in the exercises of this book.



ROMAN FARM TOOLS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

148. 1. My friend loves good horses. 2. The sailor's son is a poet. 3. Cornelia praises the farmer's friend. 4. I give a letter to the sailor's son. 5. The cottage of the poet's friend is in the town.

[1] The genitive of this word is commonly **fīlī** (contracted from **fīlii**). The uncontracted form, however, is used in the exercises of this book.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

149. 1. What is an *equestrian* statue? 2. From a consideration of **fīlius** and **fīlia,** what do you think is meant by *filial* respect? 3. What is the meaning of *nullify?*

Optional Drill

150. 1. Equus meus; equus amīcī meī; hieme et aestāte. 2. Nūllum equum videō; nūllōs equōs videō; nūlla tabernācula videō. 3. Puella equōs videt; puella equōs timet; fīlia tua equōs timet. 4. Fīlius agricolae domī est; fīlius agricolae aestāte domī est; fīlia agricolae tum nōn est domī. 5. Cum amīcō; cum amīcīs; cum fīliō tuō; cum amīcīs fīliōrum tuōrum. 6. Nōn diū fīlius hieme in oppidō manet. 7. Multōs amīcōs habeō. 8. Amīcōs meōs laudō. 9. Amīcus meus fīlium habet. 10. Amīcus meus in parvō oppidō habitat.

151. 1. Of my friend; of my good friend; with my friend; with my good friend. 2. The little girl fears your friend. 3. In winter the sailor remains at home. 4. Then he sees many friends. 5. Your friend has no horses.

(*a*) Give the nominative plural of the following nouns: **fīlia, fīlius, agricola, amīcus, equus, oppidum, tēctum.**

(*b*) Give the accusative plural of the following nouns: **puella, equus, tabernāculum, amīcus, fīlia, fīlius.**

(*c*) Decline **equus.**

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: THE ADVERB

152. We often use a word with a verb to tell how an action is done. In the sentence *He runs swiftly* the word *swiftly* tells how the act of the verb *runs* is done. Such words are called *adverbs.* Adverbs are also used to tell something about adjectives and even about other adverbs. In the expressions *too small* and *very swiftly* the adverbs *too* and *very* tell something about the adjective *small* and the adverb *swiftly.*

LESSON XVIII

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

DECLENSION OF *PUER* AND *AGER*

153. The nouns **puer,** *boy,* and **ager,** *field,* of the second declension, are declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	pu′er	pu′erī	a′ger	a′grī
Gen.	pu′erī	puerō′rum	a′grī	agrō′rum
Dat.	pu′erō	pu′erīs	a′grō	a′grīs
Acc.	pu′erum	pu′erōs	a′grum	a′grōs
Abl.	pu′erō	pu′erīs	a′grō	a′grīs

TWO CLASSES OF NOUNS IN *-ER*

154. The two classes of second declension nouns represented by **puer** and **ager** differ only in the fact that nouns like **puer** keep the **e** before **r** in all the cases, while in **ager** and similar nouns **e** appears before **r** only in the nominative singular. When a new word of this class appears in the vocabulary the genitive, or a part of it, is printed after the nominative to show whether it is declined like **puer** or **ager.**

155. READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

READING A ROMAN BOOK

1. Quid facit puer?
   Puer librum legit.
2. Quis est puer?
   Puer est Sextus, fīlius poētae.
3. Quid discit Sextus in scholā?
   Sextus in scholā linguam Latīnam discit.
4. Quid facit Sextus cum in scholā nōn est?
   Sextus labōrat in agrīs cum in scholā nōn est.

5. Quid facit puella?
   Puella epistulam scrībit.
6. Cūr puellam nōn laudās?
   Puellam nōn laudō quod nōn est impigra.
7. Quid portat parva puella?
   Parva puella līlia portat.
8. Ubi est fēmina?
   Fēmina est in vīllā.
9. Quid facit fēmina in vīllā?
   Fēmina cēnam parat.
10. Quis cum fēminā in vīllā labōrat?
    Fīlia fēminae quoque in vīllā labōrat.

156. VOCABULARY

a'ger, a'grī, M., field
cē'na, -ae, F., dinner
dis'cit, learns
fē'mina, -ae, F., woman
li'ber, li'brī, M., book
lī'lium, -ī, N., lily
pa'rō, -āre, prepare
pu'er, pu'erī, M., boy
Sex'tus, -ī, M., Sextus (*the name of a man or boy*)

COMPLETION EXERCISE

157. 1. Puer libr— (*a book*) legit. 2. Sextus in agr— (*the field*) cum agricol— (*the farmer*) labōrat. 3. Cūr puer— (*the boys*) nōn laudās? 4. Puer— (*the boys*) nōn laudō quod nōn labōr— (*subject "they"*). 5. Puer— (*the boys*) praemium nōn dō.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

158. 1. What grammatical term is connected in derivation with **fēmina?** 2. Find two nouns derived from **liber.** 3. The plural form **puerī** sometimes means "children." What is a *puerile* objection?

Optional Drill

159. 1. In agrō; in agrīs; ex agrō; ex agrīs; cum puerīs; cum puerō; in librō. 2. Liber puerī; librī puerōrum; fīlius fēminae. 3. Quis librum habet? Quis librum videt? Quis librōs videt? 4. Fēmina līlia portat; līlia videō; līlia vidēmus. 5. Quid puella discit in scholā? Quid puella discit domī? 6. Quid facit Sextus hieme? Quid facit Sextus aestāte? 7. Sextus aestāte in agrīs labōrat. 8. Quis est Sextus? 9. Sextus est fīlius agricolae.

160. 1. The boy reads the books. 2. Why do you not praise the boy? 3. I do not praise the boy because he does not work. 4. I do not give a reward to the boy. 5. I see the farmer's fields. 6. I have the girl's books. 7. Of the good boy; of the good boys; with the boy's friend. 8. Of the fields; in the books; of the books.

(*a*) Make the direct objects plural in the answers to the questions in 1 and 5 of section **155.**

(*b*) Decline together **tuus liber.**

LESSON XIX

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

161. SUMMARY OF SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

	Singular			
Nom.	templum	amīcus	ager	puer
Gen.	templī	amīcī	agrī	puerī
Dat.	templō	amīcō	agrō	puerō
Acc.	templum	amīcum	agrum	puerum
Abl.	templō	amīcō	agrō	puerō

A ROMAN ROAD

Plural

NOM.	templa	amīcī	agrī	puerī
GEN.	templōrum	amīcōrum	agrōrum	puerōrum
DAT.	templīs	amīcīs	agrīs	puerīs
ACC.	templa	amīcōs	agrōs	puerōs
ABL.	templīs	amīcīs	agrīs	puerīs

a. The noun **vir,** *man* (genitive **virī**), also belongs to this declension. For this word, as for **puer,** the base is the same as the nominative.

THE VOCATIVE

162. In addition to the cases which have been given, there is another case called the *vocative,* which is used to denote the person addressed. Thus, in the sentences "John, come here," and "Boy, what street is this?" the words *John* and *boy* are in the vocative case.

The vocative has the same form as the nominative in all Latin nouns except those of the second declension ending in **-us.** The vocative singular of these nouns ends in **-e.** Thus, the vocative singular of **amīcus** is **amīce,** the vocative of **Mārcus** is **Mārce.** The vocative plural is always the same as the nominative plural.

SUMMARY OF IMPORTANT FACTS REGARDING THE SECOND DECLENSION

163. (1) The genitive singular ends in **-ī.**

(2) Nouns ending in **-um** are neuter.

(3) Nouns ending in **-er** are masculine.

(4) Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

(5) The nominative plural of masculine nouns ends in **-ī.**

(6) The nominative and accusative plural of all neuter nouns (in all declensions) end in **-a.**

READING EXERCISE

164. 1. Mārcus, amīcus meus, agricola est, et multōs equōs habet. Mārcus equīs hieme multum frūmentum dat. Equī magnī et validī sunt. Aestāte equī interdum in agrīs sunt, et tum frūmentum nōn edunt. Sed frūmentum equīs damus cum labōrant.

2. Puerum in agrō cum agricolā vidēmus. Puer fīlius agricolae est. Agricola fīliam quoque habet. Fīlia hodiē in hortō labōrat. Sed fīlia nōn est sōla in hortō. Amīcus puellae quoque in hortō est.

3. Cūr, Sexte, sōlus in viā ambulās?
Sōlus in viā ambulō quod amīcī meī hodiē in agrīs labōrant.
Cūr in agrīs cum amīcīs tuīs nōn labōrās?
In agrīs nōn labōrō quod nōn validus sum.

165. VOCABULARY

e′dunt, they eat
frūmen′tum, -ī, N., grain
ho′diē, today
hor′tus, -ī, M., garden
Mār′cus, -ī, M., Marcus (*the name of a man or boy*)
mul′tī, many
sō′lus, alone
va′lidus, strong, well

a. The genitive and dative singular of **sōlus,** like the same cases of **nūllus,** are irregular. The other forms of these adjectives are regular.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

166. 1. The boy is the son of my friend. 2. I often praise the boy, but I do not praise the boy's friend. 3. We see the farmer's fields from the window of the cottage. 4. The boys are now in the garden with your daughter. 5. Marcus, why do you stand in the street?

TRAVELER LEAVING AN INN

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

167. 1. What is *horticulture?* 2. Give two English words connected in derivation with **sōlus.** 3. What is a *valid* reason? 4. What connection in meaning do you see between **validus** and *invalid?* 5. What are *edible* berries?

Optional Drill

168. 1. In hortō; ex hortō; hortōrum; ex hortīs. 2. Multī amīcī; cum multīs amīcīs; cum amīcīs validīs; cum sōlō amīcō. 3. Agricola multum frūmentum habet; equī multum frūmentum edunt. 4. Hodiē Mārcus sōlus in hortō labōrat. 5. Sextus et Mārcus sunt amīcī. 6. Cūr, Mārce, in viā stās? 7. Cūr, amīce, nōn labōrās? 8. Puerī sunt validī, sed nōn bene labōrant.

169. 1. With Marcus alone; with many boys; in the small garden. 2. In winter the horses eat grain. 3. The boy is in the field. 4. The boys are in the field. 5. The boy's friend is alone in the forest. 6. Marcus works in the fields today.

(*a*) Give the nominative plural of the masculine nouns (excluding proper names) in Lessons XVII, XVIII, and XIX.

(*b*) Decline **hortus tuus.**

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XV-XIX

ager, agrī
amīcus, -ī
cēna, -ae
equus, -ī
fēmina, -ae
fīlius, -ī
frūmentum, -ī
hortus, -ī
liber, librī
līlium, -ī
oppidum, -ī
praemium, -ī
puer, puerī
tabernāculum, -ī
tēctum, -ī
templum, -ī
aestāte
domī
hieme
habitō, -āre
parō, -āre
habeō
discit
manet
timet
videt
edunt
diū
hodiē
tum

ENDINGS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc.	*Neuter*	*Masc.*	*Neuter*
NOM.	**-us, -er, (-ir)**	**-um**	**-ī**	**-a**
GEN.	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ōrum**	**-ōrum**
DAT.	**-ō**	**-ō**	**-īs**	**-īs**
ACC.	**-um**	**-um**	**-ōs**	**-a**
ABL.	**-ō**	**-ō**	**-īs**	**-īs**

The vocative has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns ending in **-us** in the nominative. These have the vocative singular ending in **-e.**

GENDER

Most nouns of the first declension are feminine. By exception **agricola, nauta, poēta,** and a few other words which regularly denote men are masculine; **incola** may be either masculine or feminine.

Most nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** and all those ending in **-er** are masculine.

All nouns ending in **-um** are neuter.

CITY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES

The appearance of ancient Rome or of any other city of the Roman world differed greatly from that of a modern city. When we think of streets in which there were no automobiles, no street cars, no motor trucks, and no electric lights at night, we can realize something of this difference, though all these things were absent from the cities of our own country a century ago. But the streets of Rome were so narrow that the use of wagons during the daytime was very limited, and not even gas or oil lights were available for the streets.

Those who did not choose to walk were carried in litters, something like the conveyances still used in some cities of Asia. These were borne by slaves and were private property. There was nothing corresponding to the modern street car or omnibus or taxicab as a means of public conveyance. If one did not own slaves to carry his litter he had to walk, unless he could borrow a friend's conveyance and its bearers.

The streets were not paved with concrete or asphalt, though the Romans knew how to make very good concrete. Stone blocks or slabs were used, and these were usually well fitted together so that they made good pavements, though they might become rather rough as a result of being worn.

Instead of the great stores in which all sorts of articles are sold in a modern city, Rome had a great many small shops in which goods of various kinds were sold. Often these shops were in the front part of dwelling houses or apartment buildings.

While the buildings seemed tall in comparison with the narrow streets, they would not appear so in a modern city with office buildings of fifteen stories or more. Perhaps the buildings of Rome did not have more than five or six stories at the most. Since there were no elevators it was sufficiently tiresome to have to climb to the upper stories of such buildings.

Probably the house fronts were rather plain, and the general

appearance of many streets must have been very monotonous. But in various parts of the city there were fine temples and other public buildings. On two of the hills, the Capitoline and the Palatine, stood buildings of this sort, which were visible for a long way and which added distinction to the city.

Since machinery operated by steam or electricity did not exist, much of the work now done by such means was then done by slaves. This resulted in greater numbers of persons being employed for every sort of work and so increased the crowding in the streets and in places where work was going on.

One rather striking feature of ancient Rome was the abundant supply of water which was brought in by great aqueducts. These brought water for the great bathing establishments in the city and for various other uses. Parts of these aqueducts are still to be seen in the country about Rome, and one which was originally built more than 1800 years ago is still in use. It has been frequently repaired, but it is still in large part the ancient structure. The Romans built aqueducts in many parts of the world where their cities were located, and the ruins of a great many of these can still be seen.

A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

LESSON XX

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

170. DECLENSION OF *BONUS* IN ALL GENDERS

The adjective **bonus** is declined as follows:

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	bo′nus	bo′na	bo′num
GEN.	bo′nī	bo′nae	bo′nī
DAT.	bo′nō	bo′nae	bo′nō
ACC.	bo′num	bo′nam	bo′num
ABL.	bo′nō	bo′nā	bo′nō

Plural

NOM.	bo′nī	bo′nae	bo′na
GEN.	bonō′rum	bonā′rum	bonō′rum
DAT.	bo′nīs	bo′nīs	bo′nīs
ACC.	bo′nōs	bo′nās	bo′na
ABL.	bo′nīs	bo′nīs	bo′nīs

REVIEW LIST OF ADJECTIVES

171. The following adjectives, of which one form has previously been given, are declined like **bonus**[1]:

amoenus, -a, -um
angustus, -a, -um
apertus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um
grātus, -a, -um
laetus, -a, -um
Latīnus, -a, -um
longus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um
meus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um
nōtus, -a, -um
obscūrus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um
perīculōsus, -a, -um
propinquus, -a, -um
tuus, -a, -um
validus, -a, -um

[1] The adjectives **nūllus** and **sōlus** are also declined like **bonus** except in the genitive and dative singular.

a. It must be remembered that the words for *my* (*mine*) and *your* (*yours*) are adjectives in Latin, and hence they will agree in gender, number, and case with the word denoting the thing possessed.

ROMAN TABLE AND LAMP

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

172. 1. Quid in pictūrā vidēmus?
In pictūrā mēnsam Rōmānam vidēmus.
Estne magna mēnsa?
Mēnsa nōn est magna sed est pulchra.
Estne mēnsa pretiōsa?
Ita; mēnsa est pretiōsa.
Suntne mēnsae Rōmānae saepe pretiōsae?
Ita est. Multae mēnsae Rōmānae sunt pretiōsae.

Sed quid est in mēnsā?
In mēnsā est parva lucerna.
Estne lucerna quoque pretiōsa?
Minimē. Lucerna nōn est pretiōsa.

2. Quis hodiē abest?
Mārcus hodiē abest.
Sed cūr Mārcus abest?
Domī manet et labōrat.
Ubi hodiē labōrat?
In hortō aut in agrīs fīlium agricolae juvat.
Probāsne Mārcum?
Ita. Mārcum probō quod fīlium agricolae juvat.
Manetne Sextus saepe domī?
Sextus nōn saepe domī manet.

173. VOCABULARY

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by
ab'sum, abes'se, be absent, be distant
aut, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or
ju'vō, -āre, help, assist
lucer'na, -ae, F., lamp
mēn'sa, -ae, F., table
pretiō'sus, -a, -um, expensive, costly
pro'bō, -āre, approve, approve of
Rōmā'nus, -a, -um, Roman; *masculine as noun*, a Roman; *pl.*, the Romans

a. The verb **absum** is conjugated like **sum,** of which it is a compound: **absum, abes, abest,** etc.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

174. 1. Cornelia carries a small lamp and a book. 2. We often help the farmer in the field. 3. We watch the boys from the window or we walk in the street. 4. Why is your cousin absent today? Is she in the town? 5. On the table is an expensive book.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

175. 1. The Spanish word *mesa* is used in the southwestern part of the United States to mean a *tableland*. What do you suppose is its origin? 2. In English derivatives Latin *b* is sometimes represented by English *v*. What derivative from **probō** can you find? 3. What is the derivation of *precious?*

Optional Drill

176. 1. In magnō oppidō; in magnā vīllā; in magnō agrō. 2. Cum puellā bonā; cum puerō bonō; cum puerīs bonīs. 3. Cornēlia fīlium bonum et fīliam bonam habet. 4. Amīcus noster est benignus; fēmina est benigna. 5. Puella abest; puellae absunt. 6. Puer est laetus.

177. 1. The island is large; the temple is large; the horse is large. 2. I see the small lamp. 3. I see the farmer's small son. 4. Sextus has large horses. 5. Spain has many towns.

(*a*) Write the declension of **benignus** in full.

(*b*) Decline together **templum clārum.**

LESSON XXI

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES; SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

178. An adjective must agree with its noun in gender, but its endings are not necessarily the same as those of the noun. Since **agricola, nauta,** and **poēta** are masculine, any adjective modifying one of them will be masculine.

The words for *a good sailor* are declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
Gen.	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
Dat.	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
Acc.	nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
Abl.	nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

179. The masculine form of some adjectives may be used in the plural without a noun to denote persons. Thus, **multī** means *many (persons)*, **bonī** means *the good (persons)*. In descriptions of war or military operations of any kind **nostrī** means *our men* or *our soldiers*.

The neuter form of some adjectives may be used in the plural to refer to things. Thus, **multa** means *many things*.

READING EXERCISE

180. 1. Sextus est bonus agricola, et multum frūmentum habet. Magnum tēctum et parvum hortum habet. In hortō cum fīliā et fīliō nunc stat. Vesperī saepe in viīs cum amīcīs ambulat. Multī Sextum amant quod benignus est.

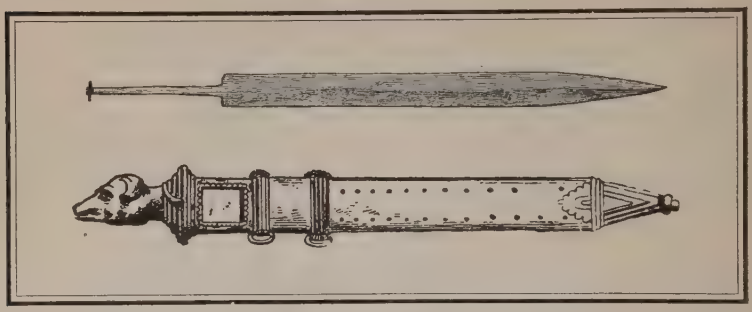
2. Fīlius Sextī in magnō bellō pugnat, et gladium et scūtum habet. Pūblius quoque, amīcus Sextī, in bellō pugnat.

3. Librōs multōrum poētārum laudō, sed librōs tuōs nōn laudō. Poēta bonus nōn es. Fāma tua nōn magna est.

4. Nunc amīcus nautae ex tēctō properat. Nauta laetus est quod amīcum videt. Nauta et amīcus nōn diū in viā ambulant, quod amīcus dēfessus est.

5. Cūr, amīce, ex tēctō properās? Ex tēctō properō quod nautam in viā videō.

6. Amīcus tuus sum, sed cōnsilium tuum nōn laudō. Nōn est cōnsilium satis bonum. Pūblius habet cōnsilium bonum.



ROMAN SWORDS

181. VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, N., war
cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, weary
gladius, -ī, M., sword
Pūblius, -ī, M., Publius (*name of a man or boy*)
pugnō, -āre, fight
satis, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough
scūtum, -ī, N., shield

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

182. 1. Sextus praises my horses. 2. We do not expect a long war. 3. The sailor is tired. 4. Publius has a large shield. 5. The farmers are strong.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

183. 1. What is a *belligerent* attitude? 2. What is the meaning of the expression "*ante-bellum* days" (referring to the American Civil War)? 3. What was the original meaning of *gladiator?* 4. Find the meaning of the name of the flower *gladiolus.* 5. What is a *pugnacious* disposition?

Optional Drill

184. 1. Agricola dēfessus; poēta bonus; nauta validus; poētārum bonōrum. 2. Bella longa; bellī longī· magna scūta:

magnōrum scūtōrum; magnī scūtī; multa scūta et multī gladiī. 3. Cōnsilium bonum; cōnsilia bona; cōnsilium agricolae benignī. 4. Pūblius pugnat; Sextus nōn pugnat. 5. Sextus nōn est validus; poēta nōn est validus; fēmina nōn est valida.

185. 1. Many wars; in many wars; of many wars. 2. A tired sailor; of a tired sailor; with a tired sailor. 3. The boy sees the swords and shields. 4. Publius praises your plans. 5. The good farmer has good horses. 6. The good poet writes good books. 7. The sailor is strong.

(*a*) Rewrite the first sentence in paragraph 4 of section **180**, changing the subject to the plural.

(*b*) Decline **meus** and **tuus** in all genders and in both numbers.

LESSON XXII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Continued)

ADJECTIVES WITH THE MASCULINE IN *-ER*

186. There are certain adjectives which end in **-er** instead of **-us** in the nominative singular of the masculine. These are of two classes, with the same difference which has been seen in nouns ending in **-er.**

	Singular		
	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	mi′ser	mi′sera	mi′serum
Gen.	mi′serī	mi′serae	mi′serī
Dat.	mi′serō	mi′serae	mi′serō
Acc.	mi′serum	mi′seram	mi′serum
Abl.	mi′serō	mi′serā	mi′serō

		Plural	
	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'sera
Gen.	miserō'rum	miserā'rum	miserō'rum
Dat.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs
Acc.	mi'serōs	mi'serās	mi'sera
Abl.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs

		Singular	
Nom.	pul'cher	pul'chra	pul'chrum
Gen.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chrī
Dat.	pul'chrō	pul'chrae	pul'chrō
Acc.	pul'chrum	pul'chram	pul'chrum
Abl.	pul'chrō	pul'chrā	pul'chrō

		Plural	
Nom.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chra
Gen.	pulchrō'rum	pulchrā'rum	pulchrō'rum
Dat.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs
Acc.	pul'chrōs	pul'chrās	pul'chra
Abl.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs

a. The following adjectives have previously been seen in the feminine form. The nominative in all three genders is here given. All except **miser** are declined like **pulcher.**

aeger, -gra, -grum
impiger, -gra, -grum
miser, -a, -um
noster, -tra, -trum
pulcher, -chra, -chrum

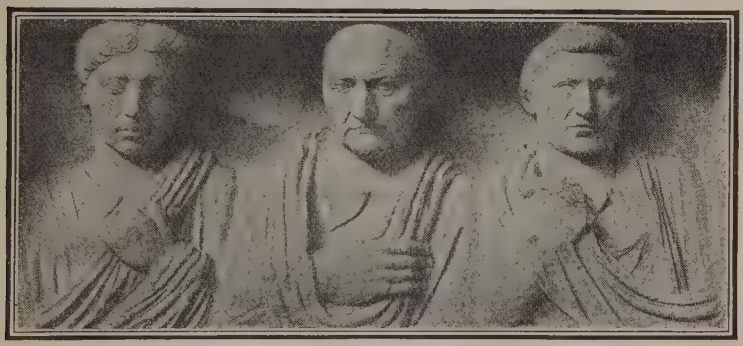
READING EXERCISE

187. 1. Amīcus meus multōs librōs habet. Librōs amat. Fīlius amīcī meī librōs nōn amat. Sed puer bonus est, et bene

labōrat. Validus et impiger est. Equōs bonōs amat et laetus est cum in agrīs labōrat.

2. Amīcus tuus parvum hortum habet. In hortō sunt rosae et līlia. Fīlius amīcī tuī mihi saepe rosās dat. Līlia et rosās amō, et in hortō cum fīliō amīcī meī interdum ambulō. Ex fenestrā tēctī nostrī hortum vidēmus.

3. Hortus Mārcī est pulcher, et ibi cum Mārcō saepe ambulāmus. Mārcus est amīcus noster. Sed hodiē Mārcus in hortō nōn ambulat quod aeger est. Miserī sumus quod amīcus noster est aeger.



A ROMAN FAMILY
Daughter, father, and mother

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

188. 1. The plan of the sailors is not good. 2. The boy has my sword. 3. The poet is unhappy. 4. The woman is unhappy. 5. The son of our friend is a sailor.

Optional Drill

189. 1. Amīcus bonus; puer bonus; nauta bonus; agricola impiger; puella impigra. 2. Cum nautā bonō; cum fēminā bonā; cum amīcō bonō; poētārum clārōrum. 3. Nauta est miser; fēmina est misera; nautae sunt miserī; fēminae sunt

miserae. 4. Noster amīcus; nostra patria; ex nostrō librō; in hortō pulchrō. 5. Cum cārō amīcō; bella perīculōsa; laetus puer. 6. Puer est aeger; amīcus tuus est aeger. 7. Parva fenestra; parvum tēctum; parvus ager.

190. 1. Copy the following sentences, replacing each dash by the correct case ending:

(1) Sextus equōs me— laudat. (2) Bellum long— expectāmus. (3) Fīlia tu— est puella bon—. (4) Poēta est clār—. (5) Nauta est valid—.

2. Translate the following phrases:

A beautiful garden; of an unhappy poet; with the sons of our friend; of the long wars.

(*a*) Decline **impiger,** using **pulcher** as a model.

(*b*) Give the Latin for the following phrases as direct objects: *an unhappy sailor; a sick friend; a strong farmer.*

WORD STUDY II

DISAPPEARANCE OF LATIN VOWELS IN ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

In the previous lesson on word study we saw that the words *fable* and *epistle* have lost a vowel from the original Latin forms **fabula** and **epistula.** Similarly *table,* from **tabula,** and many other words have been shortened by the loss of a vowel.

LOSS OF CONSONANTS

Sometimes the comparison of an English word with its Latin original shows that a consonant has disappeared. Thus we have a number of words beginning with **ex** in which the Latin word had **s** following **ex.** Of this class is *expect,* from an early Latin form consisting of **ex**+**spectō.** In this book **expectō** is spelled without **s,** but the form used by many Roman writers was **exspectō.** Later the Romans dropped **s.**

In like manner *exist* and *exile* come from words which once had **ex** followed by **s**. Some Latin textbooks still employ this form.

CHANGE OF *AE* AND *OE* TO E

In the word *premium*, from Latin **praemium**, we represent Latin **ae** by *e*. This change is seen in a number of words. We have *equal* from **aequālis**, which has about the same meaning as *equal* and which in turn comes from **aequus**, meaning *level*, *equal*, or *fair*.

Similarly Latin **oe** becomes *e* in English derivatives. From Latin **poena**, *punishment*, we have *penalty* and *penal*. Latin **poenitēre** (also spelled **paenitēre**) is of common origin with **poena** and is the source of *penitent* and *penitentiary*. The word *federation* is connected with Latin **foederātus**, meaning *bound together by a treaty* (**foedus**, *a treaty*).

WORDS ENDING IN *-ANT* AND *-ENT*

There are numerous English adjectives and nouns which end in *-ant* or *-ent*, such as *independent*, *patient*, *tenant*, *apparent*, *constant*. Most of these have come from Latin present participles, a class of words which have stems ending in *-ant*, *-ent*, or *-ient*.

All derivatives of this class which have come from verbs of the first conjugation end in *-ant*. Some of those from verbs of the remaining conjugations end in *-ant*, others in *-ent*. This seeming irregularity arises from the fact that in French, through which these words have mainly been brought into English, the ending had developed as *-ant* for the entire group. Later this was changed to *-ent* for many words to correspond with the spelling which would represent the original form. But this change was not uniform, and in consequence we have some words in which the original conjugation of the Latin word is indicated by the English spelling and others in which it is not. Nouns of this group usually have the ending *-ant*.

LESSON XXIII

PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT INDICATIVE

USE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

191. The two sentences *The boy helps his friend* and *The boy is helped by his friend* both have the word *boy* as subject, since in each sentence we say something about the boy. But in the first sentence the subject does the act, while in the second the act is done by someone else. A verb which denotes an act done by the subject is said to be in the *active voice*, and a verb which denotes an act done to the subject by some other person or thing is said to be in the *passive voice*. In the illustrative sentences given above, *helps* is in the active voice and *is helped* is in the passive voice.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ*

192. The verb **portō** is conjugated as follows in the present indicative passive.

Singular	*Plural*
por′tor, *I am carried*	portā′mur, *we are carried*
portā′ris,[1] *you are carried*	portā′minī, *you are carried*
portā′tur, *he, she, it, is carried*	portan′tur, *they are carried*

a. These forms may also be translated: *I am being carried, you are being carried, he is being carried,* etc.

PERSON ENDINGS

193. The person endings used in the passive voice are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
-or (-r), *I*	**-mur,** *we*
-ris, *you* (singular)	**-minī,** *you* (plural)
-tur, *he, she, it*	**-ntur,** *they*

[1]There is also a form of the second person singular ending in **-re.** It is not used in the exercises of this book.

a. The characteristic vowel **-ā-** becomes short before **-ntur,** and it disappears before **-or.** In the active, as we have seen, it becomes short before the endings **-t** and **-nt** and disappears before **-ō.**

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

194. With passive verbs the person by whom the act is done is denoted by the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab,** meaning *by.*

Epistula ā puellā portātur, *the letter is carried by the girl.*

a. Before vowels or *h,* **ab** is used; before most consonants, **ā.**

b. In addition to its use meaning *by* with the ablative of agent **ā** or **ab** sometimes means *from.* The distinction between **ē** or **ex** and **ā** or **ab** meaning *from* is that **ē** or **ex** denotes *place from within which,* while **ā** or **ab** does not indicate that the starting point is within the place named.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

195. 1. Laudantur; amantur; expectantur. 2. Laudāmur; laudāmus; amāmur; amāmus. 3. Lucerna ā fēminā portātur; fēmina lucernam portat. 4. Cōnsilium tuum probātur; cōnsilia tua probantur. 5. Amīcōs amātis; ab amīcīs amāminī. 6. Scūtum ā Mārcō portātur; rosae ā Cornēliā portantur. 7. Ā fīliō tuō juvāmur; fīlium tuum juvāmus. 8. Īnsula ā nautīs mōnstrātur; nautae īnsulam mōnstrant. 9. Librī ā fēminīs dantur; librī puerīs dantur. 10. Fēminae puerīs librōs dant.

LANTERN OF EARTHENWARE

A CHARIOT DRIVER

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

196. 1. He is praised; he is praising; he is kind. 2. They are helped; they are walking; they are happy. 3. The girl is loved; the girl is beautiful.

Optional Drill

197. 1. Oppidum tuum laudātur. 2. Patria tua amātur. 3. Amīcī nostrī juvantur. 4. Scūtum ā puerō portātur. 5. Epistulae probantur; epistulae sunt bonae. 6. Puerī laudantur; puerī sunt impigrī. 7. Amīcus meus expectātur; amīcus meus in viā ambulat.

(*a*) Conjugate **amō** in the present passive and give the meaning of each form.

(*b*) Indicate the person endings in sentences 1 and 2 of section **195.**

LESSON XXIV

READING EXERCISE

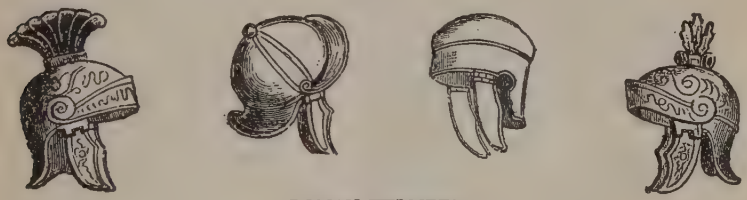
198. 1. Pūblius est vir bonus, et ab amīcīs amātur et laudātur. Fīlium habet, sed fīlius nōn laudātur, quod impiger nōn est et male labōrat. Pūblius est miser quod fīlius nōn est impiger.

2. In tēctō tuō galeam et scūtum videō. Gladium quoque videō. Tua arma sunt Rōmāna. Nunc virī galeās et gladiōs in proeliīs habent, sed scūta in bellō nōn portantur.

3. Oppidum nostrum viās lātās habet. In viīs multōs puerōs et puellās vidēmus. Puerī et puellae ex scholā properant.

4. Cūr nūllōs librōs hodiē portās? Librī meī hodiē ab amīcō meō portantur. Saepe librōs amīcī meī portō.

5. Ex oppidō nostrō castra vidēmus. Castra magna sunt. Amīcus meus nunc in castrīs est.



ROMAN HELMETS

199. VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, weapons, arms
castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp
galea, -ae, F., helmet
lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad
male, badly
proelium, -ī, N., battle
vir, virī, M., man

a. The word **castra** is used in the plural number with singular meaning. When it is the subject of a verb the verb must be plural, although translated by an English verb in the singular. An adjective modifying **castra** must be plural.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

200. 1. The boys are helped by the men. 2. Our town is often praised by the poets. 3. The boy's plan is approved by many men. 4. Your native land is loved by my friend. 5. Rewards are given to the boys and girls. 6. The Roman poets are praised by the poets of our native land.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

201. 1. What is an *armory?* 2. What sort of person is a *malefactor?* 3. What are *virile* qualities?

OPTIONAL DRILL

202. 1. Expectāminī, expectātis; expectāris; expector. 2. Fābula nārrātur; fābulae nārrantur; fābulās nārrant. 3. Epistula portātur; epistulae portantur; scūtum ā virō portātur. 4. Vir ā fēminā laudātur; fēmina ā virō laudātur; vir fēminam laudat. 5. Vir arma habet; vir arma portat; arma ā virō portantur. 6. Castra vidēmus; agrōs lātōs vidēmus. 7. Pūblius galeam Rōmānam habet; Sextus gladium Rōmānum habet. 8. Cūr male labōrās? Male labōrō quod aeger sum.

203. 1. The boy is often praised; the boys are often praised. 2. The book is carried by the girl. 3. The letters are carried by the boy. 4. Our country is loved. 5. Your friends are loved. 6. A reward is expected. 7. Rewards are not given.

(*a*) Conjugate **juvō** in the present active and the present passive and give the meaning of each form.

(*b*) What Latin form will translate *is* in the sentence "The camp is large"?

LESSON XXV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *HIC*

204. The demonstrative **hic,** *this* (plural *these*), is declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

205. 1. Hī puerī; hujus puerī; cum hōc puerō; cum hīs puerīs. 2. Hoc oppidum; in hōc oppidō; in hīs oppidīs. 3. Haec fēmina, hujus fēminae; hae fēminae; hārum fēminārum; cum hāc fēminā. 4. In hāc terrā; ex hāc terrā; ex hīs terrīs. 5. Haec via est longa. 6. Hanc terram amāmus. 7. Hic puer est fīlius amīcī nostrī. 8. Hic poēta multōs librōs scrībit. 9. Haec īnsula magnās silvās habet. 10. Haec castra ex oppidō vidēmus. 11. Huic puellae benignus es. 12. Praemium huic puerō dō.

CHARIOT HORSE AND DRIVER

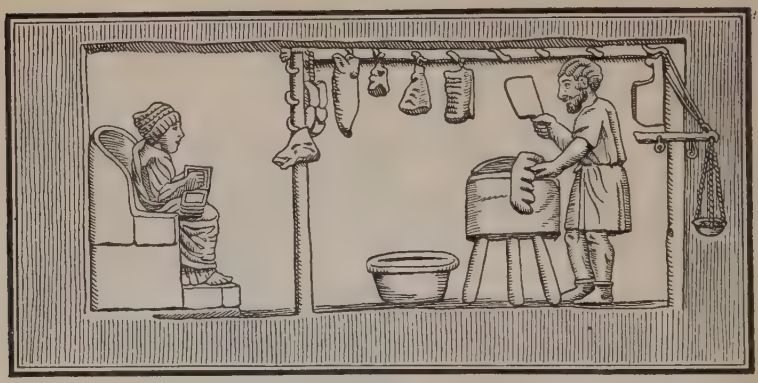
EXERCISES FOR WRITING

206. 1. With this friend; with these friends; with this sailor. 2. Of this friend; of these friends; of this school. 3. In this field; in these fields; from this field. 4. The boy gives a letter to this woman. 5. Your letter is pleasing to this farmer.

Optional Drill

207. 1. Haec fēmina fīliam habet. 2. Fīlia hujus fēminae hodiē in scholā est. 3. Cūr huic amīcō pecūniam nōn dās? 4. Hic ager est parvus. 5. Hunc librum tibi dō. 6. Hoc oppidum amō. 7. Amīcī meī in hōc oppidō sunt. 8. Puerī sunt in hīs tabernāculīs. 9. Fulvia est cōnsōbrīna hōrum puerōrum. 10. Haec templa nōn sunt magna.

208. 1. I live in this cottage. 2. The inhabitants of these islands are sailors. 3. Marcus is the son of this farmer. 4. Cornelia loves this girl. 5. These rewards are small.



AN ANCIENT MEAT MARKET

(*a*) Decline together **haec terra.**

(*b*) Decline together **hic amīcus.**

(*c*) Give the accusative singular of the Latin for the following: this field, this water, this temple.

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW LESSONS XX-XXV

arma, -ōrum
bellum, -ī
castra, -ōrum
cōnsilium, -ī
galea, -ae
gladius, -ī
lucerna, -ae
mēnsa, -ae
proelium, -ī
scūtum, -ī
vir, virī

aeger, -gra, -grum
amoenus, -a, -um
angustus, -a, -um
apertus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um
bonus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um
dēfessus, -a, -um
grātus, -a, -um
impiger, -gra, -grum

laetus, -a, -um
lātus, -a, -um
longus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um
meus, -a, -um
miser, misera, miserum
multus, -a, -um
noster, -tra, -trum
nōtus, -a, -um
nūllus, -a, -um
obscūrus, -a, -um

parvus, -a, -um	validus, -a, -um	male
perīculōsus, -a, -um	hic, haec, hoc	satis
pretiōsus, -a, -um		ā, ab
propinquus, -a, -um	absum, abesse	
pulcher, -chra, -chrum	juvō, -āre	aut
sōlus, -a, -um	probō, -āre	
tuus, -a, -um	pugnō, -āre	

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN *-US*

(See section **170**)

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

(See section **186**)

DECLENSION OF *HIC*

(See section **204**)

PERSON ENDINGS OF THE VERB, PASSIVE VOICE

Singular	*Plural*
1. **-or (-r),** *I*	**-mur,** *we*
2. **-ris,** *you* (singular)	**-minī,** *you* (plural)
3. **-tur,** *he, she, it*	**-ntur,** *they*

THE PASSIVE VOICE

(See sections **191, 192**)

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

(See section **179**)

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

(See section **171** *a*)

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

(See section **194**)

COUNTRY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES

In the earliest period of their history the Romans were farmers and herdsmen, and the ordinary citizen cultivated his own land. But in later times when wealth had increased, farm work was chiefly done by slaves. Since the tools were of a simpler sort than those used on a modern farm, the work was harder and a greater number of workers was necessary.

Instead of using horses in plowing and in similar work, the Romans employed oxen. For lighter work, such as turning the mill to grind grain, donkeys or horses might be used, though these mills were often turned by slaves. To prepare a field for planting or sowing the crop required a much longer time than it does at present. The plows were not so well shaped for turning a furrow as a good plow of the kind now used, but they served to loosen the soil.

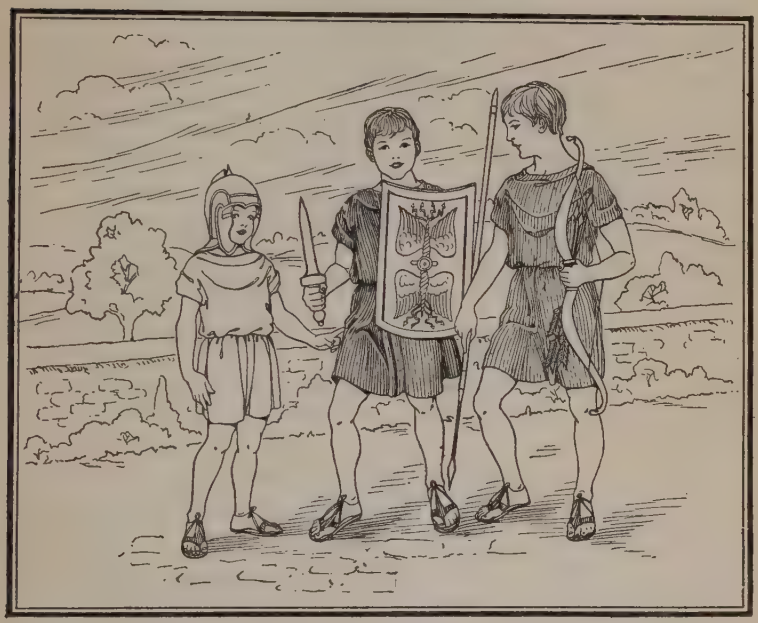
The Romans did not grow corn or potatoes, since neither of these articles was known in Europe until after the discovery of America. They raised wheat and some other kinds of grain, and they gave much attention to grapes and olives. Olives were especially important for oil, though they were also eaten as in modern times. Olive oil served the purpose of butter to a great extent, and also it was used for producing light.

Large numbers of sheep were kept, chiefly for the sake of their wool, since the Romans seem to have cared less for mutton than we do. In early times all cloth for garments among the Romans was made of wool, but at a later period silk, cotton, and linen came into use to some extent.

Wealthy Romans often had fine country places which were kept for pleasure rather than for profit. After the Romans had conquered a number of foreign countries they imported most of their wheat from these countries instead of raising it in Italy. Farming in Italy then came to be mainly the growing of fruit and the raising of cattle and other live stock.

LESSON XXVI

READING EXERCISE



TRĒS PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ

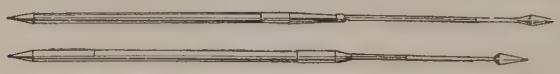
209. 1. Hic puer est Mārcus. Ā dextrā stat Sextus, ā sinistrā stat Pūblius. Hī trēs sunt puerī Rōmānī. Arma quoque Rōmāna vidēmus. Mārcus gladium et scūtum habet. Sextus jaculum et sagittās portat. Pūblius est parvus, et arma nōn habet. Mārcus et Sextus et Pūblius sunt fīliī Titī. Titus est sagittārius, et nunc in Hispāniā est. Rōmānī cum incolīs Hispāniae pugnant.

2. (*Marcus speaks.*) Mārcus sum. Hic puer parvus est Pūblius. Pūblius gladium nōn habet quod parvus est. Puer tertius est Sextus. Sextus est magnus puer et arma portat. Fīliī Titī sumus.

3. (*Publius speaks.*) Pūblius sum. Arma nōn habeō quod parvus sum. Sextus et Mārcus sunt puerī magnī et arma portant. Arma amant et bellum laudant, sed nōn in bellō pugnant.

210. VOCABULARY

dextra, -ae, F., right hand;
  ā dextrā, on the right
jaculum, -ī, N., javelin
sagitta, -ae, F., arrow
sagittārius, -ī, M., archer
sinistra, -ae, F., left hand;
  ā sinistrā, on the left
tertius, -a, -um, third
Titus, -ī, M., Titus (*name of a man or boy*)
trēs, three



ROMAN JAVELINS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

211. 1. This boy and this girl are in our school. 2. A friend of this boy is now in our town. 3. I often give this boy money. 4. (There) are no roses in this garden. 5. This farmer is a good man.

Optional Drill

212. 1. Hoc jaculum est longum. 2. Cūr hās sagittās portās? 3. Interdum hunc sagittārium in oppidō vidēmus. 4. Incolae hujus terrae cum Rōmānīs pugnant. 5. Hīs parvīs puerīs arma nōn dantur. 6. Haec oppida viās lātās habent. 7. Titus est amīcus hōrum virōrum. 8. Hic poēta est incola Galliae. 9. Incolae hārum īnsulārum in parvīs casīs habitant.

213. 1. These archers do not carry shields. 2. My cottage is on this small island. 3. These tents are large. 4. Fulvia does not live in this town. 5. The books of these poets are not often praised.

(*a*) Give the Latin for the following as subjects: these boys, these girls, these rewards.

(*b*) Give the Latin for the following as direct objects: these fields, these cottages, these farmers.

(*c*) Decline together **haec castra.**

LESSON XXVII

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

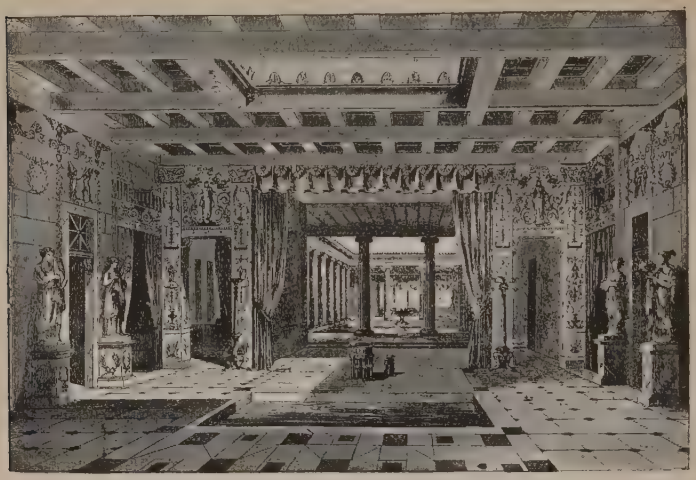
CASE USE WITH PREPOSITIONS

214. The prepositions **cum, ex,** and **in,** as has been seen, take the ablative case. There are, however, many prepositions with which the accusative is used. The accusative, therefore, in addition to being the case of the direct object of a verb, is also found with certain prepositions.

When a new preposition is given in the vocabulary, the case with which it is used will be indicated. Thus **ante,** *prep. with acc.*, means that **ante** is a preposition which takes the accusative. The number of prepositions taking the accusative is larger than the number of those taking the ablative.

PHRASES WITH *TO*

215. We have seen that an English phrase with *to* is translated by the dative case if it is equivalent to an indirect object or if it depends on an adjective similar in meaning to those given in section **68.** In such phrases the English word *to* is represented by the case ending of the Latin word. But phrases with *to* denoting the place to which a person or thing moves are expressed by the preposition **ad,** followed by the accusative case.



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE (RESTORATION)

READING EXERCISE: *SCHOLA MEA ET AMĪCĪ MEĪ*

216. 1. Māne ad scholam properō. Multī virī tum per viās properant. Ante scholam nostram est magnum aedificium. In hōc aedificiō multī virī labōrant. Amīcus meus, Pūblius, ibi aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Post hoc aedificium est via lāta. Trāns hanc viam est parva casa, et amīcus meus in hāc casā habitat.

2. Vesperī post hōrās scholae cum amīcīs meīs saepe ambulō. Interdum amīcōs ad tēctum nostrum invītō. Saepe ad tēcta amīcōrum invītor. Multōs amīcōs habeō.

3. Māne puerī et puellae ad scholam properant. Haec schola est ante magnum aedificium. Ibi labōrō. Fīlius amīcī meī in hōc aedificiō aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Vesperī post hōrās scholae fīlius amīcī in viā ambulat. Multī puerī tum in viīs ambulant. Interdum fīlius amīcī ad tēctum meum invītātur. Multōs amīcōs habet.

217. VOCABULARY

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward
aedificium, -ī, N., building
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of
hōra, -ae, F., hour
invītō, -āre, invite
māne, in the morning
per, *prep. with acc.*, through
post, *prep. with acc.*, behind, after
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

218. 1. The girl hurries to the cottages. 2. We walk through the forest with a friend. 3. The tent is in the forest behind the town. 4. (There) is a large building across the street. 5. My friends are often invited to your house.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

219. 1. What is an *edifice?* 2. Find the origin of the abbreviations *a. m.* and *p. m.* 3. What is a *transcontinental* railroad? 4. What is an *anteroom?*

Optional Drill

220. 1. Ante bellum; post bellum; per silvam; trāns īnsulam. 2. Ante templum; ante templa; ante castra. 3. Per viās; per īnsulās; post īnsulās; post castra. 4. Multa aedificia; magna aedificia; ad oppidum; in oppidō. 5. Invītat; invītātur; māne labōrō; māne labōrāmus. 6. Hujus hōrae; hārum hōrārum; per hanc hōram. 7. Ad silvam; ex silvā; ad castra; ex castrīs. 8. Ad silvam properāmus. 9. Per viās properāmus. 10. Post hōrās scholae in viā ambulās.

221. 1. Before the cottage; behind the cottage; through the forests; in the forests. 2. Across the forest; across the field; through the field. 3. In this building; from this building; to this building. 4. I invite Titus to my cottage; Titus is invited

to my cottage. 5. In the morning I walk in the forest. 6. We walk through the forest.

(*a*) Tell which of the phrases with *to* in the following sentences will be translated by **ad** with the accusative and which by the dative case alone: (1) I gave the letter to the boy. (2) He is walking to the town. (3) We hurried to the window. (4) The report is not pleasing to your father.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: THE CONJUNCTION

222. The words *and*, *but*, and *or* are used to join words or parts of sentences. In the sentence *Your father and mother are not in the city* the word *and* is used to join the words *father* and *mother*. In like manner, in the sentence *The train is late, but it will soon arrive* the word *but* joins the two parts of the sentence *The train is late* and *it will soon arrive*. Such words are called *conjunctions*. Conjunctions of a somewhat different kind are *because*, *although*, *if*, and some other words. In the sentence *I shall go if I receive the letter* the conjunction *if* is used to join the verb *shall go* and *I receive the letter*.

LESSON XXVIII

SECOND CONJUGATION

CHARACTERISTIC VOWEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

223. The verb **monet,** *he warns,* differs from **portat,** *he carries,* in that it has **e** instead of **a** before the ending **-t.** Similarly, **monēmus,** *we warn,* differs from **portāmus,** *we carry,* and **monētur,** *he is warned,* differs from **portātur,** *he is carried.*

This verb belongs to the *second conjugation.* The infinitive, meaning *to warn,* is **monēre.** All verbs which have the present active infinitive ending in **-ēre** are of the second conjugation and are conjugated like **moneō.** The present indicative of **moneō** is as follows:

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *MONEŌ*

224.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	*Singular*
mo′neō, *I warn, am warning*	mo′neor, *I am warned*
mo′nēs, *you warn*, etc.	monē′ris, *you are warned*
mo′net, *he, she, it, warns*, etc.	monē′tur, *he, she, it, is warned*
Plural	*Plural*
monē′mus, *we warn*	monē′mur, *we are warned*
monē′tis, *you warn*	monē′minī, *you are warned*
mo′nent, *they warn*	monen′tur, *they are warned*

a. The person endings are the same as in the forms of **portō.**

b. The verbs **videō, habeō,** and **maneō,** which have been used in previous lessons, are of the second conjugation, as well as **moneō, timeō,** and **dēbeō,** which occur in the vocabulary of this lesson.

READING EXERCISE

225. Patria sociōrum nostrōrum est terra pulchra. In hāc terrā sunt multa oppida et magnae silvae. Ibi magna et pulchra aedificia quoque mōnstrantur. Agricolae ibi sunt impigrī et equōs bonōs habent. Interdum in patriā nostrā equōs ex hāc terrā vidēmus.

Sed incolae patriae sociōrum nostrōrum saepe bellum timent, et vīta ibi multa perīcula habet. In multīs terrīs Eurōpae vīta est perīculōsa quod incolae saepe in bellō pugnant. Castra et arma vident. Propter haec bella multī sunt miserī.

Sociōs nostrōs propter perīculum interdum monēmus. Cōpiās magnās nōn habent. Cōpiās parātās habēre dēbent. Sed nūllus vir bonus bellum cupit.

ROMAN INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

226. VOCABULARY

cōpia, -ae, F., plenty; *pl.*, troops, forces
dēbeō, -ēre, owe, ought
moneō, -ēre, warn
parātus, -a, -um, prepared, ready
perīculum, -ī, N., danger
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
socius, -ī, M., ally
timeō, -ēre, fear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

227. 1. We are sometimes warned by our friends. 2. You (*singular*) ought to have your book. 3. War is not feared by our allies. 4. You do not see our house from your window. 5. We do not fear danger, because we are prepared.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

228. 1. What is a *copious* supply? 2. Find in a dictionary the origin of the words *debt* and *peril*. 3. What is the original meaning of *monitor?*

Optional Drill

229. 1. Monet; portat; monētur; portātur; monēmus; portāmus. 2. Habēmus; habitāmus; habet; habitat; timet; timētur. 3. Perīculum vidēs; perīculum timēs; perīculum timēre nōn dēbēs. 4. Cōpiae nostrae parātae sunt; sociī nostrī parātī sunt. 5. Magnās cōpiās habētis et timēre nōn dēbētis. 6. Hoc perīculum est magnum; haec perīcula sunt magna. 7. Sociōs monēmus; sociī monentur; ā sociīs monēmur.

230. 1. They are feared; they are warned; they are praised. 2. They have; they live; they see. 3. We ought to warn; we ought to praise; I ought to work. 4. I am prepared; we are prepared; he is prepared. 5. The forces of the allies are large. 6. Before these wars; after these wars; through this land.

(*a*) Conjugate **videō** and **timeō** in the present tense, active and passive.

(*b*) Decline together **hoc perīculum.**

LESSON XXIX

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

231. Quid in mēnsā videō?
Librum Latīnum meum vidēs.
Habetne cōnsōbrīna tua librum Latīnum?
Ita. Cōnsōbrīna mea quoque librum Latīnum habet.
Cūr hōs librōs habētis?
In scholā nostrā linguam Latīnam discimus.
Habentne multī puerī et puellae in hāc scholā librōs Latīnōs?
Ita. Multōs librōs Latīnōs in scholā nostrā vidēmus.
Estne lingua patriae tuae lingua Latīna?
Minimē. Sed lingua nostra multa verba Latīna habet.

Cūr Sextus ā magistrō monētur?
Monētur quod nōn bene labōrat. Saepe domī manet.
Amatne Sextus linguam Latīnam?
Minimē. Nūllōs librōs amat. Nōn est impiger.
Habetne multa praemia?
Nūlla praemia habet. Nam praemia puerō pigrō nōn dantur.
Habetne multōs amīcōs?
Amīcōs nōn habet. Multī (*section* **179**) puerum pigrum nōn probant.
Estne hic puer laetus?
Nōn est laetus. Poenam timet.
Timetne Mārcus quoque poenam?
Minimē. Poena ā Mārcō nōn timētur.
Cūr ā Mārcō poena nōn timētur?
Mārcus bene labōrat. Saepe laudātur.

232. VOCABULARY

magister, -trī, M., teacher[1]	**piger, -gra, -grum,** lazy
maneō, -ēre, remain	**poena, -ae,** F., punishment
nam, *conj.*, for	**verbum, -ī,** N., word

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

233. 1. We often see your son in the town. 2. You ought to give money to this man. 3. Our forces are not feared by the Romans. 4. These boys are warned, and they fear punishment. 5. In summer we do not remain in the town.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

234. 1. What is a *verbal* agreement? 2. What is the derivation of *penitentiary?* 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *master*.

[1]The word for teacher when denoting a woman is **magistra, -ae.**

SCENE NEAR TIVOLI

The modern town of Tivoli is on the site of the ancient Tibur, a town located in the hills not far from Rome.

Optional Drill

235. 1. Monēmus; monēminī; ā magistrō monēmur. 2. Timēs; timēris; habēs; habitās. 3. Monēminī; timēminī; timētis. 4. Nunc timēre nōn dēbēs. 5. Verba tua nōn sunt grata. 6. Cūr poenam timēs? 7. Fīlius nautae est piger. 8. Magister puerō librum dat.

(*a*) Conjugate **habeō** in the present active.

(*b*) Give the present infinitives of all the second conjugation verbs that have been learned thus far, with their meanings.

(*c*) Point out the person endings in 1, 2, and 3 of section **235**.

(*d*) Write the accusative singular and plural of the words for "a lazy sailor."

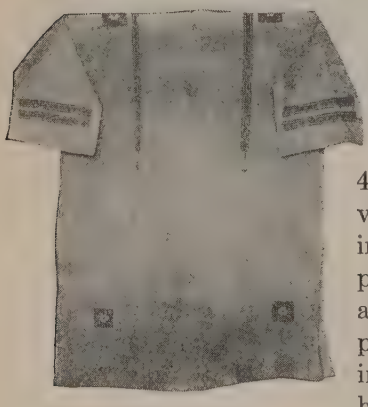
LESSON XXX

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *ILLE*

236. The demonstrative **ille,** *that* (plural *those*), is declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	il'le	il'la	il'lud	il'lī	il'lae	il'la
GEN.	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illō'rum	illā'rum	illō'rum
DAT.	il'lī	il'lī	il'lī	il'līs	il'līs	il'līs
ACC.	il'lum	il'lam	il'lud	il'lōs	il'lās	il'la
ABL.	il'lō	il'lā	il'lō	il'līs	il'līs	il'līs

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION



TUNIC

This garment was found in Egypt, but it probably represents the form of the Roman tunic.

237. 1. In illō oppidō; in hōc oppidō; cum illīs amīcīs; cum hīs amīcīs. 2. Illīus virī; illīus bellī; illīus fīliae. 3. Illī amīcō; cum illō agricolā; ab illō nautā. 4. Hae puellae et illī puerī; illī virī et hae fēminae. 5. Ille puer in perīculō est. 6. Illī nautae perīculum nōn timent. 7. Illōs amīcōs monēre dēbēmus. 8. Illa pictūra saepe laudātur. 9. Cūr in illā terrā manēs? 10. Ille vir huic puerō benignus est. 11. Illīs sociīs pecūniam dare dēbēmus. 12. Post illam silvam est parvum oppidum.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

238. 1. That horse; that book; that war; that star. 2. Of that war; of that letter; of that field. 3. In those fields; in

these fields; in this island. 4. In that building; from those buildings; from that farmhouse. 5. That horse is small. 6. I often give letters to that girl.

Optional Drill

239. 1. Magister illōs puerōs laudat. 2. Illud aedificium est magnum templum. 3. Hī virī et illae fēminae sunt incolae Eurōpae. 4. Illud verbum est verbum Latīnum. 5. In illā mēnsā sunt librī tuī. 6. Cornēlia est amita illīus puerī. 7. Cūr illum puerum nōn invītās? 8. Ab illīs virīs timēmur. 9. Illa oppida in Siciliā sunt. 10. Magister illī puerō praemium dat.

240. 1. I often see those towns. 2. The sons of that man are lazy. 3. The schools of that town are not praised. 4. Those boys and these girls live in this town. 5. The teacher gives that boy a book.

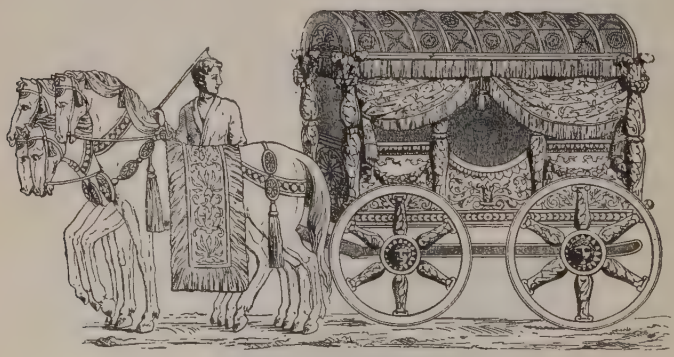
(*a*) Decline together **illud jaculum.**
(*b*) Decline together **illa fābula.**
(*c*) Conjugate **timeō** in the present passive.

A TEMPLE OF JUPITER

TRAVEL AMONG THE ROMANS

In many respects the methods and conditions of travel among the Romans were like those in the early period of our own country. For travel by land, since there were no railroads, no automobiles, and no airplanes, one had to rely on vehicles drawn by horses or mules, unless he chose to ride horseback or to walk.

For a rather large part of Rome's history the Romans had an advantage over our own people of early times in that there were very good roads in Italy. These roads were not quite so good as our best modern automobile roads, but they were better than most of the roads in our country forty years ago. In many places the pavement of these ancient Roman roads is still to be seen.



A ROMAN CARRIAGE

The wagons and carriages used by the Romans were of various kinds. Some of them had covers or tops to keep off the rain and the sun, others were open. They did not have springs to lessen the effect of rough places in the road, but since the roads were usually smooth they were perhaps not so uncomfortable as might be thought. For journeys in which speed was important light carts were sometimes used.

A fact which made travel less satisfactory than at present was the lack of good hotels. Most of the places which were kept to provide accommodations for travelers were of a poor sort and were patronized chiefly by a rough and unpleasant-mannered class. Often they were headquarters for thieves. Persons who had acquaintances along the route by which they were traveling usually arranged to stop at the homes of these acquaintances instead of going to hotels.

Wealthy persons were always attended by a number of slaves, partly because this served to indicate that they had plenty of money and partly because bandits were sometimes to be feared. For short distances a traveler would be carried in a litter instead of riding in a carriage. Sometimes rather long journeys were made in this way. Strong and active slaves carried these litters, though there was one kind of conveyance for which the poles were attached to two mules, one in front of the litter and one behind, instead of being carried on the shoulders of slaves.

Those who traveled by sea could not rely on ships which left at regular dates like modern ocean liners, but had to find merchant vessels which were sailing at about the time they wished to go. These boats were small and they were apt to be uncomfortable. Since they depended either on sails or oars they were slow. But travel by water was almost entirely limited to the Mediterranean, chiefly between Italy and Greece or Italy and the north coast of Africa, so that the distances were short as compared with modern voyages.

LESSON XXXI

READING EXERCISE

241. 1. Ille vir est caecus, sed in viīs sine amīcō saepe ambulat neque perīculum timet. Saepe ad tēctum fīliī ambulat. Fīlius in tēctō post hortum nostrum habitat.

2. Quam timida illa puella est! Sed nūllum perīculum in hīs locīs est, et puella tūta est.

3. Cūr pecūniam illī puerō iterum dās? Pecūniam iterum illī puerō dō quod epistulās meās portat. Hodiē epistulam ad amīcum tuum portat.

4. Mārcus nōn adest. Ubi est? Cum amīcō in silvā est. Sed Titus et Sextus adsunt. Hī puerī sunt amīcī meī. Mārcus quoque amīcus meus est.

5. Fīlia illīus fēminae nunc in Britanniā est. Fēmina epistulās ad fīliam saepe scrībit. Fīlia quoque epistulās scrībit. Hās epistulās amīcō dat. Amīcus epistulās ad Americam portat.

VOCABULARY

242.

adsum, adesse, be present, be at hand
caecus, -a, -um, blind
iterum, *adv.*, again
locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** N.), place.
neque, *conj.*, nor, and not
quam, *adv.*, how, as, than
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
timidus, -a, -um, timid
tūtus, -a, -um, safe

a. The verb **adsum** (like **absum,** section **173** *a*) is a compound of **sum,** and is conjugated like the simple verb: **adsum, ades, adest,** etc.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

243. 1. Who is that girl? 2. Why has that boy no books? 3. The daughter of that man is ill. 4. I often give letters to that boy. 5. That woman and that man are inhabitants of Ireland.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

244. 1. What is the meaning of *reiterate?* 2. Find an adjective, a noun, and a verb which are connected in derivation with **locus.** 3. What is meant by the statement "The legislature adjourned *sine die*"? 4. Find a noun which is connected in derivation with **timidus.**

THE RANSOM OF ROME

Gold is given to the Gauls that Rome may be spared. The Gallic leader adds his sword to the weights in the scales

Optional Drill

245. 1. In illō locō; in hōc locō; ex hīs locīs; ex illīs locīs. 2. Iterum adsum; iterum adsumus; iterum adsunt. 3. Timidus es; quam timidus es!; tūtus es; tūtī sumus. 4. Sociōs nōn habēmus, neque bellum timēmus. 5. Ille vir caecus nōn sine amīcīs est. 6. In hōc locō sine perīculō manēmus. 7. Illī puerī parātī sunt. 8. Illī amīcō; cum illō agricolā; ab illō nautā. 9. Interdum ab illīs amīcīs invītāmur. 10. Iterum ab illīs amīcīs invītāmur.

246. 1. We are safe without weapons. 2. How timid that blind boy is! 3. Your son is not present today, nor do I see your daughter. 4. That place is not safe. 5. These men and those boys are my friends.

(*a*) Decline together **illa silva.**

(*b*) Decline the adjective **timidus** in all genders.

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXVI-XXXI

aedificium, -ī
cōpia, -ae
dextra, -ae
hōra, -ae
jaculum, -ī
locus, -ī
magister, -trī
perīculum, -ī
poena, -ae
sagitta, -ae
sagittārius, -ī
sinistra, -ae
socius, -ī
verbum, -ī

caecus, -a, -um
parātus, -a, -um
piger, -gra, -grum
tertius, -a, -um
timidus, -a, -um
tūtus, -a, -um
trēs

ille, illa, illud

adsum, adesse
dēbeō, -ēre
invītō, -āre
maneō, -ēre
moneō, -ēre

timeō, -ēre

iterum
māne
quam

ad
ante
per
post
propter
sine
trāns

nam
neque

SECOND CONJUGATION

Present Active Infinitive Termination, **-ēre**

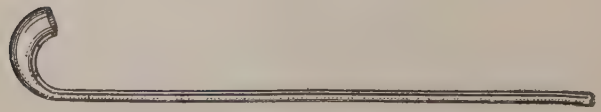
(Present Indicative, see section **225**)

DECLENSION OF *ILLE*

(See section **236**)

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

(See section **215**)



A ROMAN TRUMPET

LESSON XXXII

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

247. In the sentence *I was walking in the street* the act denoted by the verb is in past time and is represented as going on or continuing. The forms of the Latin verb which correspond to this usage are said to be in the *imperfect tense:* **ambulābam,** *I was walking.*

a. Occasionally we use the simple past tense of an English verb when we really mean to represent an act or situation as continuing. Thus, *The man had many friends.* In this sentence *had* represents a situation continuing or existing at a past time and will be translated by the imperfect.

THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

248. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the imperfect active:

Singular

portā′bam, *I was carrying* (or *I carried*)
portā′bās, *you were carrying* (*you carried*)
portā′bat, *he, she, it, was carrying* (*he carried,* etc.)

Plural

portābā′mus, *we were carrying* (*we carried*)
portābā′tis, *you were carrying* (*you carried*)
portā′bant, *they were carrying* (*they carried*)

Singular

monē'bam, *I was warning* (or *I warned*)
monē'bās, *you were warning* (*you warned*)
monē'bat, *he, she, it, was warning* (*he warned*, etc.)

Plural

monēbā'mus, *we were warning* (*we warned*)
monēbā'tis, *you were warning* (*you warned*)
monē'bant, *they were warning* (*they warned*)

a. The syllable **-bā-**, which is seen in all the forms of the imperfect, is called the *tense sign* of the imperfect. The forms are made up of the present stem + **bā**[1] + person endings.

READING EXERCISE

249. 1. Gallī auxilium postulābant quod Rōmānī agrōs Galliae vāstābant et oppida occupābant. Gallī prō patriā fortiter pugnābant, sed satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant, et propter perīculum auxilium dēsīderābant.

2. Auxilium postulāmus quod bellum timēmus. Agrī nostrī vāstantur, et oppida occupantur. Sine sociīs patria nostra nōn tūta est.

3. Bellum nōn dēsīderāmus, sed Rōmānōs nōn timēmus. Patria cāra est, et prō patriā pugnāmus.

4. In bellō agricolae nōn sine perīculō in agrīs labōrant. Tum fēminae et puerī et puellae in oppidīs timent. Bellum fēminīs nōn grātum est.

5. Mārcus in viā cum parvā puellā ambulābat. Puella rosam portābat. Parva puella cōnsōbrīna Mārcī est, et saepe cum Mārcō ambulat.

[1] In this tense sign ā becomes short before the person endings **-m, -t, -nt** in the active and before **-r** and **-ntur** in the passive.

250. VOCABULARY

auxilium, -ī, N., help, assistance
dēsīderō, -āre, desire
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul (*a country*)
Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul
occupō, -āre, seize
postulō, -āre, demand
prō, *prep. with abl.*, for, on behalf of, before
vāstō, -āre, lay waste

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

251. 1. I was walking with friends in the street. 2. That boy was carrying a book and a letter. 3. Our allies were fighting bravely for (their) native country. 4. The Romans were laying waste the fields in Gaul. 5. The boys did not see (were not seeing) the danger.

GALLIC CAVALRYMAN

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

252. 1. Find an adjective ending in *-ic* which is related to **Gallus.** 2. What is the meaning of *pro-slavery?* 3. What is a *devastated* region? 4. What is an *auxiliary* verb?

Optional Drill

253. 1. Occupābat; occupat; occupātur; monēbat; monet; monētur. 2. Auxilium postulābat; auxilium postulat; auxilium postulātur. 3. Propter perīcula; propter illud bellum; propter praemium. 4. Gallī illam terram vāstābant; Gallī illam terram

vāstant; illa terra ā Gallīs vāstātur. 5. Prō patriā pugnābant; prō patriā pugnant; prō amīcīs fortiter pugnant. 6. Auxilium dēsīderābāmus; auxilium dēsīderāmus. 7. Tum perīculum timēbāmus; nunc perīculum nōn timēmus. 8. Cūr illum virum timēbātis?

254. 1. They were carrying; they were warning; he was praising; he is praised. 2. The Romans were laying waste those fields. 3. That man was walking in the forest. 4. He did not fear (was not fearing) danger in that place. 5. We were fighting bravely for our country. 6. He saw (was seeing) the danger and he demanded (was demanding) help. 7. They were seeing; they were fearing; they were warning; they were desiring.

(*a*) Rewrite paragraph 1, section **249,** changing the verbs to the present tense.

(*b*) Conjugate **timeō, habeō,** and **habitō** in the imperfect active.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: TENSE OF VERBS

255. When someone says, *The boy stands in the street,* we know that the act is going on while we are being told about it; that is, in the present time. If the sentence is *The boy stood in the street,* we know that the act took place at some past time, and similarly the sentence *The boy will stand in the street* shows that the act is going to take place in the future. In these sentences the form of the verb shows what is the time of the act. The forms of a verb which show time are called *tenses.* There are six tenses in English. Their names are *present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect,* and *future perfect.* The following forms of the verb *walk* with the subject *I* show how these tenses are used.

PRESENT	I walk	PRESENT PERFECT	I have walked
PAST	I walked	PAST PERFECT	I had walked
FUTURE	I shall walk	FUTURE PERFECT	I shall have walked

X WORD STUDY III

USE OF PREFIXES

We often attach a word or syllable to the beginning of another word in English and thus form a new word. From *contented* we form *discontented* by joining the syllable *dis-* to *contented.* A word or syllable thus joined to the beginning of a word is called a *prefix.*

LATIN PREFIXES

Most Latin prefixes are prepositions, though a few are not. We have had **absum** and **adsum** in which the prepositions **ab** and **ad** are prefixed to **sum,** and **expectō** in which **ex** is prefixed to **spectō** (with **s** dropped). Similarly **circum** (*around*) is prefixed to **spectō** to form **circumspectō.**

INSEPARABLE PREFIXES

In addition to the prepositions used as prefixes there are a few prefixes which are never found as separate words. One of these is **re-** (sometimes spelled **red-**), which regularly means *back* or *again.* From **re-** and **vocō** we have **revocō,** *call back.* Another of this class is **in-** meaning *not.* Words formed with this prefix sometimes denote the opposite of the simple word. From **amīcus,** *friend,* we have **inimīcus,** *enemy,* in which this prefix is seen.

These are called *inseparable* prefixes. Their number is not large.

a. The inseparable prefix, **in-,** *not,* must not be confused with the preposition **in,** *in* or *into,* which is also frequently used as a prefix.

CHANGES IN SPELLING

When a prefix is joined to a word a vowel in the original word is sometimes changed. As an example we have seen the first vowel of **amīcus** changed to **i** in the derived word **inimīcus.** Our word *prohibit* comes from a compound of **habeō** in which **a** has become *i.*

CHANGES IN MEANING WITH PREFIXES

Usually we can understand the meaning of a new word formed with a prefix when we know the meaning of the prefix and of the word to which it is attached. Thus **circum,** *around,* and **spectō,** *look,* form **circumspectō,** *look around.*

But sometimes the meaning of the new word has changed from that indicated by the parts or elements of which it is made up. Thus **expectō** (originally **exspectō**) cannot be defined exactly by taking the usual meanings of **ex** and **spectō,** though it keeps something of the idea of *look* (*look for*).

EXERCISE

Find in your English dictionary twenty words beginning with *ex* (not *extra*).

A STREET IN OSTIA

LESSON XXXIII

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

256. The use in questions of **quis,** *who,* and **quid,** *what,* has been seen in previous lessons. **Quis** is a nominative form and **quid** is either nominative or accusative. The genitive meaning *whose* or *of whom* is **cujus** in the singular and **quōrum** in the plural.

These are forms of the *interrogative pronoun.* Its complete declension is given below. In the singular the same forms are commonly used for the masculine and feminine, but the plural is regularly declined in the three genders.

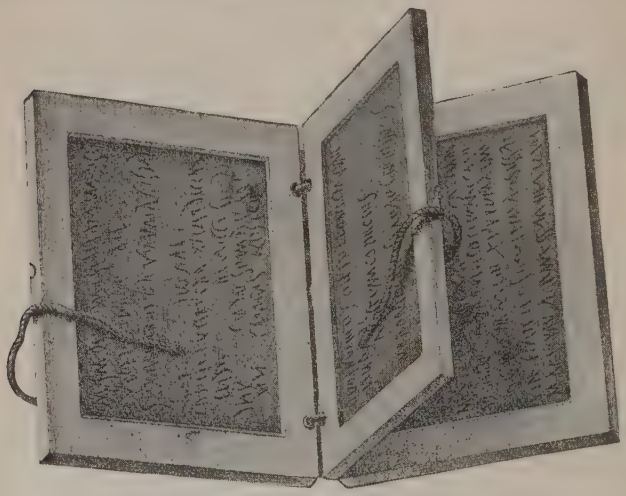
	Singular		
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	
Nom.	quis	quid	*who, what*
Gen.	cujus	cujus	*whose, of whom, of what*
Dat.	cui	cui	*to whom, to what, whom* (as indirect object)
Acc.	quem	quid	*whom, what*
Abl.	quō	quō	(*from, by, with*) *whom, what,* etc.

	Plural			
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	*who, what*
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	*whose, of whom, of what*
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to whom, to what, whom* (as indirect object)
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	*whom, what*
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	(*from, by, with*) *whom, what*

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

257. In the sentences *Which road shall we take?* and *What town is this?* the words *which* and *what* are interrogative adjectives.

In the nominative singular the interrogative adjective is **quī** or **quis** for the masculine, **quae** for the feminine, and **quod** for the neuter. The feminine has in the singular **quam** for the accusative and **quā** for the ablative and the neuter has **quod** for the accusative. The other forms are the same for all genders as those of **quis** given on page 145.



WRITING TABLETS

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

258. 1. Quis est ille vir?
Ille vir est Pūblius.
Cui Pūblius epistulam dat?
Pūblius epistulam Sextō dat.
Cujus fīlius est Sextus?

Sextus est fīlius amīcī meī.
In quō oppidō amīcus tuus habitat?
Amīcus meus in oppidō nōn habitat. Est agricola.
Sed quem videō in viā cum Sextō?
Titum in viā cum Sextō vidēs.
Cūr Titus adest?
Titus adest quod invītātur.
Ā quō hic puer invītātur?
Titus ab amīcō tuō invītātur.

2. Quōrum agrōs Rōmānī vāstābant?
Rōmānī agrōs Gallōrum vāstābant.
Quī oppida Gallōrum occupābant?
Rōmānī oppida Gallōrum occupābant.
Quōs Gallī timēbant?
Gallī Rōmānōs timēbant.
Quibus Gallī nunc pecūniam dant?
Gallī Rōmānīs pecūniam dant.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

259. 1. Whose son are you? 2. Whose (*plural*) daughters are those girls? 3. To whom (*singular*) was Titus giving money? 4. Whom (*singular*) do you see in the street? 5. Whom (*plural*) do our allies fear?

Optional Drill

260. 1. Quid portās? Quid portābās? 2. Cujus librum habēs? 3. Cui librum dās? 4. Ā quō praemium datur? 5. Quōs fēmina monet? 6. Ā quibus auxilium postulātur? 7. Quōs ad tēctum tuum invītās? 8. Quōrum arma sunt illa? 9. Quid nunc expectās? 10. Quibus praemia dabātis?

261. 1. Who was working in the field? 2. Who were demanding money? 3. Whom (*plural*) ought we to await? 4. To whom (*singular*) were you telling this story?

LESSON XXXIV

READING EXERCISE

262. 1. Illud oppidum longē ab oppidīs sociōrum abest. Sed incolae perīculum in bellō nōn timent quod mūrus oppidī altus est. Propter hunc mūrum oppidum est tūtum.

2. Puerī in viā clāmant. Mē vocant, sed nōn respondeō quod amita mea mē nunc in tēctō manēre jubet. Hodiē aeger sum.

3. Cūr, puerī, in viā clāmātis? Quem vocātis?
Sextum vocāmus. In illō tēctō habitat.
Sed Sextum hodiē in tēctō manēre jubeō, quod aeger est.

4. Vīlla nostra est inter oppidum et silvam, sed nōn longē ab oppidō abest. Ex jānuā vīllae oppidum vidēmus. In illō oppidō multōs amīcōs habeō. Saepe amīcī meī in vīllā nostrā sunt.

5. Inter haec magna aedificia est via angusta. Saepe in hāc viā ambulō quod casa nostra nōn longē ab hīs aedificiīs abest. Amīcus meus quoque ibi habitat.

263. VOCABULARY

altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep
clāmō, -āre, shout
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among
jubeō, -ēre, order, command
longē, *adv.*, at a distance, far
mē (*direct object*), me
mūrus, -ī, M., wall
respondeō, -ēre, answer, reply
vocō, -āre, call

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

264. 1. Why do you not answer Marcus (*indirect object*)? 2. Our garden is between the house and the street. 3. On the right is a high wall. 4. Whose (*singular*) cottage do you see? 5. That island is far (distant) from Sicily.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

265. 1. What is meant by *altitude?* 2. What is an *inter-scholastic* contest? 3. What are *mural* decorations? 4. What is a *vocation?*

Optional Drill

266. 1. Quis abest? Quī absunt? Quis respondet? Quī respondent? 2. Quem vocās? Quem vocābās? Quis clāmat? Quis clāmābat? 3. Quid jubēs? Quid vidēs? Quid vidēbās? 4. Oppidum ā silvā nōn longē abest. 5. Mūrus est altus; aedificium est altum. 6. Inter amīcōs; inter mūrōs; inter īnsulās. 7. Cūr mē vocās? Cūr mē vocābās? Cūr mē manēre jubēs? 8. Quōs timēbās? Quōs vidēbās? 9. Ā quibus illud **oppidum** occupātur? 10. Ā quō auxilium postulātur? 11. Cui **epistulam** dās?

267. 1. Who has my book? 2. By whom (*singular*) is the money demanded? 3. By whom (*plural*) are the towns being seized? 4. Whose son is Marcus? 5. To whom (*singular*) do you give the books? 6. Whose (*plural*) letters are these? 7. Who fears this man?

(*a*) Conjugate **respondeō** and **dēsīderō** in the imperfect tense, active voice.

(*b*) Decline **Gallia** in the singular and **Gallus** in the singular and plural.

LESSON XXXV

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

268. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** have the following forms in the imperfect indicative passive:

I	II
Singular	*Singular*
portā′bar, *I was being carried* or *I was carried*	monē′bar
portābā′ris, *you were being carried*, etc.	monēbā′ris
portābā′tur, *he was being carried*, etc.	monēbā′tur
Plural	*Plural*
portābā′mur, *we were being carried*, etc.	monēbā′mur
portābā′minī, *you were being carried*, etc.	monēbā′minī
portāban′tur, *they were being carried*, etc.	monēban′tur

READING EXERCISE

269. 1. Sociī nostrī superābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Agrī vāstābantur et oppida ācriter oppugnābantur. Auxilium rogābātur, sed cōpiās tum nōn habēbāmus. Nunc sociōs juvāre parātī sumus.

2. Agrī nostrī vāstābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbāmus. Auxilium postulābāmus, sed multī perīculum nōn vidēbant. Nunc sociōs habēmus, et tūtī sumus.

3. Cōnsilia tua ōlim probābantur quod bellum nōn timēbāmus. Sed nunc cōnsilia tua nōn bona vidēntur, quod patria nostra in perīculō est.

4. Quamquam populus Rōmānus magnās cōpiās habēbat, sociōs quoque habēbat. Hī sociī in bellō saepe auxilium rogābant. Rōmānī sociōs in bellō juvābant.

ROUND TEMPLE IN ROME

270. VOCABULARY

ācriter, *adv.*, vigorously, fiercely
ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time
oppugnō, -āre, attack
populus, -ī, M., people
quamquam, *conj.*, although
rogō, -āre, ask
superō, -āre, defeat, overcome
videor, -ērī, seem

a. The verb **videor** is merely the passive of **videō,** but it is usually translated *seem.*

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

†**271.** 1. Our town was being fiercely attacked by the Gauls. 2. The Romans were being helped by allies and friends.

3. Formerly our allies were not feared by the Gauls, but now they are feared. 4. This boy often asked help. 5. Formerly your native country was not praised by the allies, but now it is often praised.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

272. 1. Give an adjective and a noun which are derived from **populus.** 2. What is an *insuperable* difficulty? 3. What is an *interrogative* sentence?

Optional Drill

273. 1. Oppidum ācriter oppugnābātur; oppidum ācriter oppugnātur. 2. Juvābāmur; juvābāmus; juvāmus; rogābat; rogat; probābat; probat. 3. Ōlim Rōmānī Gallōs superābant; ōlim Gallī Rōmānōs superābant. 4. Hic poēta clārus vidētur. 5. Ille puer miser vidētur. 6. Oppidum tūtum vidēbātur. 7. Quamquam tūtus es, perīculum timēs. 8. Quamquam sociōs habēmus, bellum nōn dēsīderāmus. 9. Quis cōnsilium tuum probat? 10. Ā quō cōnsilium tuum probātur? 11. Ā quō cōnsilium tuum probābātur? 12. Probābāmur; probāmur; probābāmus; probāmus.

274. 1. They were being defeated; they are being defeated; they are being warned. 2. The camp is being attacked (*section* **108** *a*). 3. Who was asking aid? 4. By whom (*singular*) was aid being asked? 5. The Roman people did not fear the Gauls. 6. The allies of the Roman people are in danger and are demanding help.

(*a*) Copy the imperfect passive forms of the verb **moneō** as given in section **268** and write the English meaning after each form.

(*b*) Write the declension of the interrogative pronoun.

(*c*) Change the verbs of section **269** to the present tense.

LESSON XXXVI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *IS*

275. THE FORMS OF *IS*

	Singular		
	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	is, *he*	ea, *she*	id, *it*
GEN.	ejus, *his*	ejus, *her* (possessive)	ejus, *its*
DAT.	eī, *to him*	eī, *to her*	eī, *to it*
ACC.	eum, *him* (dir. obj.)	eam, *her* (dir. obj.)	id, *it* (dir. obj.)
ABL.	eō (*from, by, with*) *him*	eā (*from, by, with*) *her*	eō (*from, by, with*) *it*
	Plural		
NOM.	eī, iī } *they*	eae, *they*	ea, *they, those things*
GEN.	eōrum, *their*	eārum, *their*	eōrum, *their*
DAT.	eīs, iīs } *to them*	eīs, iīs } *to them*	eīs, iīs } *to them*
ACC.	eōs, *them* (dir. obj.)	eās, *them* (dir. obj.)	ea, *them* (dir. obj.)
ABL.	eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them*	eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them*	eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them*

a. The masculine and feminine forms will be translated like those of the neuter gender if they refer to antecedents which would be neuter in English. Thus a masculine form (**is, eum, eō,** etc.) will be used to refer to **ager** because it is masculine, and a feminine form will be used to refer to **silva.** But since *field* and *forest* are neuter in English, the pronouns which refer to them will be translated *it.*

b. The forms **iī, iīs,** are pronounced in one syllable as if spelled **ī** and **īs.**

ADJECTIVE USE OF *IS*

276. The forms of **is** are commonly used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, his, him, her,* etc., as has been seen, but sometimes they are used as adjectives. When they modify nouns they will be translated either *this* or *that* as the sense requires. Thus **is puer** may mean either *this boy* or *that boy,* and **ea puella** may mean either *this girl* or *that girl.* But **is** does not emphasize the idea that the thing denoted by the noun it modifies is near, as does **hic,** or that it is some distance away, as does **ille.**

HIC AND *ILLE* AS PRONOUNS

277. The forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, him, his, her,* etc., instead of the forms of **is.** The plural forms **hī, illī,** etc., mean *these* or *those (persons);* the neuter **haec, illa,** etc., mean *these things* or *those things.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

278. 1. Eum vocāmus; eōs vocāmus; ab eō vocāmur; ab eīs vocāmur. 2. Eum moneō; eam moneō; cum eō; cum eīs. 3. Amīcus ejus; ab amīcīs eōrum; cum amīcīs eōrum. 4. Eī pecūniam dō; eīs epistulās dō; epistulae eīs dantur. 5. Ea terra est terra amoena. 6. Cum eō amīcō tūtus sum. 7. In eō locō cum fīliō tuō stābam. 8. Fāma ejus poētae in Hispāniā est magna. 9. In eō oppidō cum amīcō habitābam. 10. Patria tua ab eīs nōn probātur. 11. Ex eō locō multī properābant.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

279. 1. I often walk with him. 2. The man gives a reward to them. 3. With his friend; with their friend. 4. I was calling him. 5. I was helping them. 6. We are often helped by these allies. 7. Money is demanded by these boys.

ANCIENT TOMB
A small modern farmhouse has been built on top of the tomb.

Optional Drill

280. 1. Mārcum laudāmus, sed amīcus ejus est piger. 2. In hōc oppidō agricolās et fīliōs eōrum interdum vidēmus. 3. Puerōs expectāmus, sed eōs nōn vidēmus. 4. Hī virī praemia rogant, sed praemia eīs nōn dantur. 5. Eum laudō et ab eō laudor. 6. Eōs amāmus et ab eīs amāmur. 7. Amīcī meī nunc in hōc oppidō sunt, et saepe cum eīs in viīs ambulō. 8. Sextus est fīlius ejus nautae.

281. 1. We often see your son and his friend. 2. These women and their daughters do not remain on the island in winter. 3. The boys work well in school and the teacher praises them. 4. But Titus is not praised by him. 5. This man does not help friends and he is not helped by them.

(*a*) Decline together **id oppidum.**

(*b*) Give the accusative singular of **hic, ille,** and **is** in the masculine.

(*c*) Give the accusative plural of **hic, ille,** and **is** in the feminine.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXXII-XXXVI

auxilium, -ī
mūrus, -ī
populus, -ī

altus, -a, -um
is, ea, id

mē

clāmō, -āre
dēsīderō, -āre
jubeō, -ēre
occupō, -āre
oppugnō, -āre
postulō, -āre
respondeō, -ēre
rogō, -āre
superō, -āre
vāstō, -āre
videor, -ērī
vocō, -āre

ācriter
fortiter
longē
ōlim

inter
prō

quamquam

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

(See section **256**)

DECLENSION OF *IS*

(See section **275**)

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

The tense sign of the imperfect is **-bā-**.

THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

(See section **248**)

THE IMPERFECT PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

(See section **268**)

ADJECTIVE USE OF *IS*

(See section **276**)

HIC AND *ILLE* AS PRONOUNS

(See section **277**)

A ROMAN SCHOOL

ROMAN SCHOOLS

Rome had no system of public schools supported by taxes as we have in our own country and as most other countries have today. But this did not mean that Roman boys and girls had no opportunity to gain an education. There were many private schools to which children could be sent for a small tuition fee, and in some families children were taught at home instead of being sent to school. Probably all but the children of the very poorest learned to read and write.

The elementary schools were held in small shops instead of in separate school buildings. There was only one teacher, who was often a slave. The pupils were apt to be treated rather harshly, and we have references to severe forms of punishment. A picture drawn on the wall of an ancient house shows a boy being whipped by his teacher. The furnishing of these schoolrooms was scanty as compared with a modern school.

In these elementary schools the chief subjects taught were reading, writing, and methods of dealing with numbers, corresponding to some parts of our study of arithmetic. Much care was given to correct pronunciation. In the more advanced

schools pupils studied literature, both Greek and Latin. For the Roman boy Greek was the most important foreign language, in fact the only one taught in school. Since Greek literature was greatly admired by the Romans, the writings of the Greek poets were extensively taught. Roman poetry was also studied. On the wall of an ancient house there were found some lines from a Roman poet which appear to have been written by a boy or girl, perhaps as part of a lesson.

The education of girls usually stopped with the elementary school. But boys, if they belonged to families which could afford it, went on to schools which might be compared to our high schools. In these schools much attention was given to preparing and delivering orations, for the reason that public speaking was important to anyone who wished to take part in political life. Other studies accompanied this, but oratory was considered the most important.

Finally, to complete his education, the Roman boy often spent some time in Greece or Asia Minor, where he listened to lectures on philosophy by prominent teachers of this subject. This foreign study took the place of a modern university course after college.

LESSON XXXVII

READING EXERCISE

282. 1. Fulvia ex jānuā nōs vocat. In tēctum properāmus, et avunculum nostrum cum fīliīs ejus ibi vidēmus. Avunculus noster et fīliī ejus nōs salūtant. Eōs salūtāmus.

2. Avunculus meus in parvō oppidō habitat. Tēctum ejus est magnum et pulchrum. Mārcus nōn longē ā tēctō avunculī meī habitat. Interdum ad tēctum avunculī meī invītor, et Mārcum tum videō. Cum eō saepe in viīs ambulō. Ōlim in eō oppidō habitābam, et Mārcum saepe vidēbam.

3. Cūr ita timidus es? Timeō quod nūlla arma habeō, et inimīcus meus armātus est. Nūllum auxilium videō, quamquam undique circumspectō. Manēre nōn audeō.

SHOPPING IN ROMAN DAYS

283. VOCABULARY

armātus, -a, -um, armed
audeō, -ēre, dare
avunculus, -ī, M., uncle
circumspectō, -āre, look around
inimīcus, -ī, M., enemy
nōs, we, us
salūtō, -āre, greet
undique, *adv.*, on all sides

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

284. 1. Titus is a good man, and we love him. 2. Sextus works well, but his son is not industrious. 3. I do not give him a reward, because he does not work well. 4. These men have no money, but they have many friends. 5. We were looking around on all sides, because our enemies had weapons.

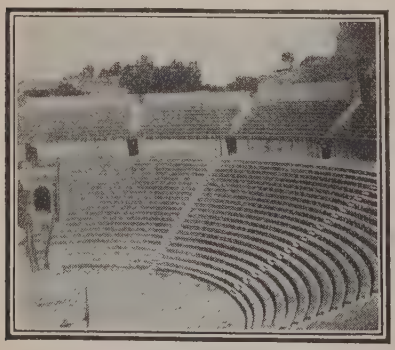
ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

285. 1. What was the Spanish *Armada?* From what Latin word is *armada* derived? 2. What is an *audacious* plan? 3. What is a *circumspect* person? 4. What is the meaning of *inimical?* 5. What is the source and the meaning of the abbreviation *i. e.?*

Optional Drill

286. 1. Cūr eum nōn salūtās? 2. Cum eō in hōc locō manēre nōn audeō. 3. Fulvia avunculum meum videt et ad eum properat. 4. Cornēliam et fīliam ejus in casā videō. 5. Illī virī sunt armātī, et eōs timēmus. 6. Hōs virōs amāmus quod saepe ab eīs juvāmur. 7. Illī virī domī manent, sed fīliī eōrum in Eurōpā sunt. 8. Id aedificium ubi Sextus labōrat in hōc oppidō est. 9. Parvās fīliās et cōnsōbrīnam eārum in vīllā saepe vidēmus.

287. 1. This man is my enemy, but I do not fear him. 2. We are greeted by him. 3. Your uncle praises the boys and he is loved by them. 4. We do not dare to remain with them. 5. Why is the teacher feared by them?



A ROMAN THEATER IN FRANCE

(*a*) Conjugate **salūtō** in the imperfect tense, passive voice.

(*b*) Conjugate **audeō** in the imperfect tense, active voice.

(*c*) Point out all the forms of **is** in section **282** and give their case and gender.

LESSON XXXVIII

FUTURE TENSE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

288. The future tense of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

ACTIVE

Singular	*Singular*
portā′bō, *I shall carry*	monē′bō, *I shall warn*
portā′bis, *you will carry*	monē′bis, *you will warn*
portā′bit, *he, she, it, will carry*	monē′bit, *he, she, it, will warn*
Plural	*Plural*
portā′bimus, *we shall carry*	monē′bimus, *we shall warn*
portā′bitis, *you will carry*	monē′bitis, *you will warn*
portā′bunt, *they will carry*	monē′bunt, *they will warn*

PASSIVE

Singular	*Singular*
portā′bor, *I shall be carried*	monē′bor, *I shall be warned*
portā′beris, *you will be carried*	monē′beris, *you will be warned*
portā′bitur, *he, she, it, will be carried*	monē′bitur, *he, she, it, will be warned*
Plural	*Plural*
portā′bimur, *we shall be carried*	monē′bimur, *we shall be warned*
portābi′minī, *you will be carried*	monēbi′minī, *you will be warned*
portābun′tur, *they will be carried*	monēbun′tur, *they will be warned*

a. The syllable **-bi-** is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations. It has the form **-bu-** in the third person plural, **-b-** in the first person singular of both voices, and **-be-** in the second person singular of the passive.

THE PRESENT SYSTEM

289. The present, imperfect, and future tenses make up the present system of the indicative. These tenses are formed on the present stem of the verb, which is found by dropping **-re** of the present active infinitive. In the first and second conjugations the tenses of the present system are formed as follows:

Present = present stem + person endings.
Imperfect = present stem + **bā** + person endings.
Future = present stem + **bi** + person endings.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

290. 1. Titus auxilium rogābit quod in perīculō est. 2. Titum juvābimus quod amīcus noster est. 3. Sextus ex viā nōs vocat, sed nōn respondēbimus. 4. Ex illō locō casam nostram vidēbitis. 5. Cōpiae Gallōrum ā Rōmānīs nōn timēbuntur. 6. Cornēlia hōs librōs portābit. 7. Fīlium hujus virī iterum monēbō. 8. Illa fēmina in Britanniā cum fīliā tuā manēbit. 9. Quamquam cōnsilium tuum probō, cōnsilia amīcōrum tuōrum nōn probābō. 10. Sextum hodiē in oppidō cum Mārcō manēre jubēbō. 11. Juvat; juvābit; jubet; jubēbit. 12. Habet; habēbit; habitābit.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

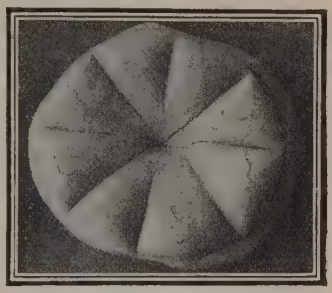
291. 1. I shall invite Marcus and Fulvia to my cottage. 2. The man has weapons and he will not fear danger. 3. Your friend will have money because he works well. 4. These girls will not remain in Spain. 5. I shall not live in this town.

Optional Drill

292. 1. Huic puerō nōn iterum pecūniam dabō. 2. Agrī Galliae in bellō vāstābuntur. 3. Oppidum oppugnāre nōn

audēbitis. 4. Amita mea mē salūtābit et ad vīllam invītābit. 5. In vīllā fīliōs et fīliās amitae meae vidēbō. 6. Puerī ā Mārcō vocābuntur, sed nōn respondēbunt. 7. Habēbis; habitābis; juvābis; jubēbis.

293. 1. You will have money but you will not have friends. 2. I shall see famous towns in Ireland and Great Britain. 3. The inhabitants of the island will be warned by the sailors. 4. The boys will watch the horses in the field.



LOAF OF BREAD FROM POMPEII

LESSON XXXIX

READING EXERCISE

294. 1. Germānī ā Rōmānīs superābuntur, et multa oppida eōrum occupābuntur. Sed Rōmānī haec oppida nōn dēlēbunt. Oppida Germānōrum ā perīculō servābuntur.

2. Rōmānī Germānōs superābunt et multa oppida eōrum occupābunt. Sed haec oppida ā Rōmānīs nōn dēlēbuntur. Rōmānī nōn sunt barbarī.

3. Illud oppidum oppugnābimus. Multī vulnerābuntur, et multī necābuntur, sed oppidum ā cōpiīs nostrīs occupābitur.

4. Gallī castra ex hōc locō mox movēbunt. Nam Rōmānī magnās cōpiās habent, et castra Gallōrum oppugnāre parātī sunt.

5. Castra nostra movēbimus, quod cōpiae Rōmānōrum nōs oppugnāre parātae sunt. Tum eōs nōn timēbimus, quamquam magnās cōpiās nōn habēmus.

295. VOCABULARY

barbarus, -ī, M., a barbarian; *pl.*, the barbarians
dēleō, -ēre, destroy, blot out
Germānus, -ī, M., a German; *pl.*, the Germans
moveō, -ēre, move
mox, *adv.*, soon
necō, -āre, kill
servō, -āre, save, preserve
vulnerō, -āre, wound

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

✕**296.** 1. We shall help our allies, and their country (**patria**) will be saved. 2. The forces of the Romans will not fear the Gauls. 3. This town will be attacked and (will be) destroyed. 4. We were moving our camp from that place. 5. The Gauls will not attack our forces in this place.

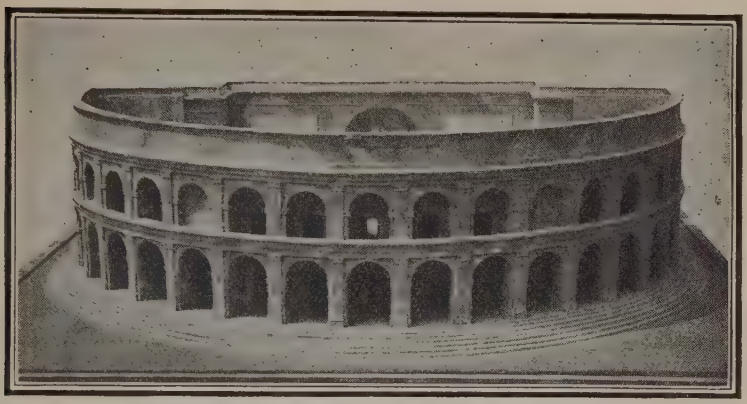
ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

297. 1. Mention an adjective which is suggested by **barbarus.** 2. What is an *indelible* stain? 3. What is a *vulnerable* spot? 4. What is an *immovable* obstacle?

Optional Drill

298. 1. Vulnerābit; vulnerābat; vulnerābitur; vulnerābātur; vulnerātur. 2. Timēbit; timēbitur; timēbat; timet. 3. Barbarī necābuntur; oppida dēlēbuntur; liber movēbitur; castra movēbuntur. 4. Mox oppida oppugnābuntur. 5. Mox castra oppugnābuntur. 6. Multī servābuntur. 7. Multī vulnerābuntur. 8. Multī necābuntur. 9. Eōs servābimus; nam amīcī nostrī sunt. 10. Movēbit; servābit; dēlēbunt; vulnerābunt; dēlēbuntur; vulnerābuntur. 11. Quis cum servābit? 12. Haec terra ab eīs vāstābitur. 13. Cōpiae nostrae post hunc mūrum manēbunt.

299. 1. He will praise; he will fear; he will be praised; he will be feared. 2. The shield will be moved; the weapons will be moved. 3. The boy will be invited; the boys will be invited.



MODEL OF THE THEATER OF HERCULANEUM

4. The wall will be destroyed; the books will be destroyed; they will destroy the books. 5. The town of the allies will be saved. 6. We shall be praised by him; we shall be approved by him. 7. We shall be warned by them.

(*a*) Decline together **is gladius.**

(*b*) Conjugate **moveō** in the imperfect tense, passive voice, and in the future tense, active voice.

LESSON XL

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

300. The irregular verb **sum** does not have the tense signs which have been seen in the imperfect and future of regular verbs.

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
e′ram, *I was*	erā′mus, *we were*
e′rās, *you were*	erā′tis, *you were*
e′rat, *he, she, it, was*	e′rant, *they were*

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
e′rō, *I shall be*	e′rimus, *we shall be*
e′ris, *you will be*	e′ritis, *you will be*
e′rit, *he will be*	e′runt, *they will be*

READING EXERCISE

301. 1. Ōlim in hāc terrā erant silvae multīs in locīs. Per hās silvās et per tōtam terram ferae bēstiae errābant. Barbarī quoque per silvās errābant et bēstiās saepe necābant. Nunc tēcta agricolārum et oppida vidēmus in eīs locīs ubi ōlim erant barbarī et ferae bēstiae.

2. Semper amīcus tuus erō. Amīcī tuī erunt amīcī meī, et eōs in perīculō juvābō. Sed patriae tuae amīcus nōn sum.

3. Cūr in silvā cum cēterīs puerīs herī nōn erās?
In silvā nōn eram, quod aeger eram.

4. Ubi herī erat hic servus? Eum nōn vidēbam.
Hic servus in tēctō avunculī meī herī erat.

VOCABULARY

302.

bēstia, -ae, F., beast, animal
cēterī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, the other, the others
errō, -āre, wander, err
ferus, -a, -um, fierce, wild
herī, *adv.*, yesterday
semper, *adv.*, always
servus, -ī, M., slave, servant
tōtus, -a, -um, the whole, all

a. The adjective **cēterī** is used chiefly in the plural. Its forms in the singular may be disregarded.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

303. 1. Yesterday I was in town with my uncle. 2. This house will always be dear to me. 3. We were in the tents behind the forest. 4. We are Romans; we will not be slaves. 5. Formerly there were many fierce animals on this island.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

304. 1. What abbreviation is used for *et cetera?* 2. Find the meaning of the expression *Errare est humanum.* 3. What is the meaning of the motto *Semper paratus?* 4. What is a *total* failure?

KILLING WILD ANIMALS

The picture represents a scene in the arena.

Optional Drill

305. 1. Semper impiger erō; semper impiger eram; semper impiger sum. 2. Parātus esse dēbeō; parātī esse dēbēmus; parātī esse dēbent. 3. Errābam; errābō; errābat; errābit. 4. Herī servus labōrābat; hodiē servus labōrat; bene servus labōrābit. 5. Tōtum oppidum est tūtum; tōtus locus est tūtus; tōta terra est tūta. 6. Cēterī errant; cēterī errābunt; cēterī errābant. 7. Bēstiae ferae in silvā erant; bēstiae ferae in silvā errant. 8. Hodiē amīcus tuus sum; herī amīcus tuus eram; semper amīcus tuus erō. 9. Amīcī tuī erunt tūtī. 10. Amīcī tuī monēbuntur.

306. 1. He is; he was; he will be; I am; I was; I shall be. 2. He is unhappy; he is (being) warned; she will be happy; she will be praised. 3. We saw (were seeing) wild beasts in the forest. 4. The slaves were wandering on the island. 5. The whole town is in danger. 6. Yesterday I was in the farmer's cottage. 7. The others will be armed.

(*a*) Conjugate **habeō** and **habitō** in the future tense, active voice.

(*b*) Decline together **hic servus.**

WORD STUDY IV

LATIN PREFIXES AND ENGLISH SPELLING

It is often easier to remember how an English word of Latin derivation is spelled if we know something of how the Latin word was formed. Thus we have many words with doubled consonants, such as *affection, afflict, announce.* These words have *aff-* and *ann-* (not *af-* and *an-*) because one of the doubled consonants represents part of a prefix and the other represents the first letter of the word to which the prefix was attached.

ASSIMILATION

The last letter of a prefix is often changed because of the letter which immediately follows it. Thus **ad** becomes **ap-** before a word beginning with **p.** From **ad**+**propinquō** we get **appropinquō.** The change of a letter because of the influence of another is called *assimilation.*

The verbs **occupō** and **oppugnō** are examples of assimilation. The prefix with which they are formed is **ob,** *against.* Before **c** this has become **oc** (**ob**+**capiō**=**occupō**), before **p** it has become **op-** (**ob**+**pugnō**=**oppugnō**).

ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM COMPOUNDS OF *AD*

The following have *aff-* because they are derived from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **f,** with **d** changed to **f** by assimilation.

affable	affidavit	affix
affect	affiliate	afflict
affection	affirm	affront

The following have *ann-* because they are derived from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **n**, with **d** changed to **n** by assimilation.

annex
annihilate
annotate
announce
annul

We shall see later some examples of assimilation with other prefixes.

PARTIAL ASSIMILATION

Sometimes the final letter of a prefix is not changed to the same letter as that which follows, but to one that can be easily pronounced with it. The prefix **com-**, *together*, or *with*, becomes **con-** before certain letters. Thus **com**+**clāmō** gives **conclāmō** and **com**+**servō** gives **cōnservō.** Before words beginning with *d* or *t* this same change of **com-** to **con-** takes place: **com**+**dūcō** gives **condūcō.**

EXERCISE

Find how many words in your English dictionary begin with *acc-*. (Nearly all these are derived from the combination of **ad** and a word beginning with *c*).

LESSON XLI

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

THE USE OF *SUUS*

307. In the sentences *The boy praises his friends* and *The boys praise their friends* the words *his* and *their* refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are the same persons as the subjects. The Latin word used to translate *his, her, its,* or *their* when

thus used is **suus,** which is an adjective, declined like **meus** and **tuus.** The two sentences just given are, in Latin:

(1) **Puer amīcōs suōs laudat.**

(2) **Puerī amīcōs suōs laudant.**

It is possible to decide whether *his* or *their* will be used to translate **suōs** in these sentences by observing whether the subject is singular or plural.

If the subject is feminine **suus** will be translated *her.* Thus, **Puella amīcōs suōs laudat** means *The girl praises her friends.*

DISTINCTION BETWEEN *SUUS* AND *EJUS*

308. In the sentences *They praise his friends* and *He praises their friends* the words *his* and *their* do not refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are not the same persons as the subjects. When *his, her, its,* are thus used they are translated by **ejus,** the genitive singular of **is,** and *their* similarly used is translated by **eōrum** (or **eārum**), the genitive plural of **is.**

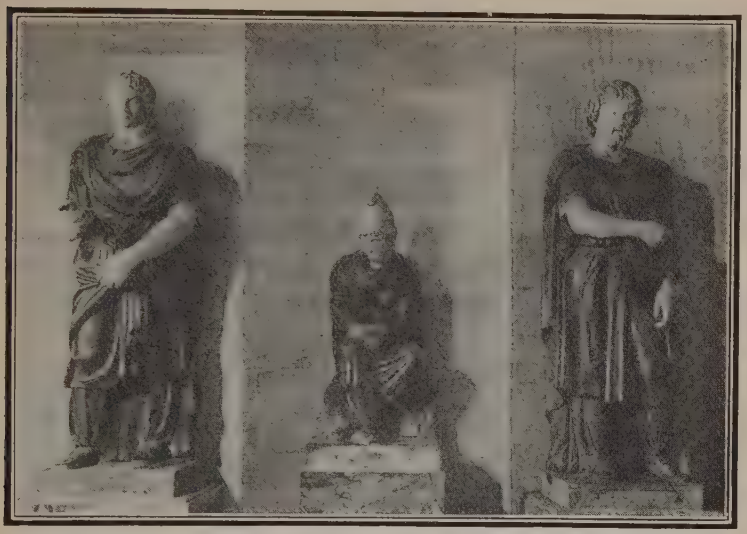
(1) **Amīcōs ejus laudant,** *They praise his friends.*

(2) **Amīcōs eōrum laudat,** *He praises their friends.*

309. It must be remembered that **suus** is an adjective, and takes the same gender, number, and case as the word denoting the thing possessed. Thus in the sentences in **307** **suōs** is masculine accusative plural to agree with **amīcōs.** The words **ejus** and **eōrum** (**eārum**) are pronouns in the genitive case, and their forms are not affected by the nouns which they modify.

a. Sometimes possessive words are omitted in Latin when the meaning is quite clear, even though the corresponding English sentence requires that possessives be used. They are to be supplied in translation whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina fīliam amat, *The woman loves her daughter.*



BARBARIAN PRISONERS

READING EXERCISE

310. 1. Hic vir fīlium suum semper laudat. Sed fīlius ejus nōn est impiger, neque habet multōs amīcōs.

2. Hī virī fīliōs suōs laudant. Sed fīliī eōrum nōn sunt impigrī, neque bene labōrant. Quamquam laudantur, puerī bonī nōn sunt.

3. Cornēlia fīliam suam amat, sed fīliam amīcī meī nōn amat. Fīlia ejus ad tēctum amīcī meī nōn saepe invītātur.

4. Illī barbarī sunt perfidī, et castra nostra oppugnāre parant. Igitur arma nostra parāta sunt.

5. Barbarī castra vestra nōn oppugnābunt, quod arma parāta habētis.

6. Lignum ex silvā ad tabernāculum portō. Amīcī meī ante tabernāculum cēnam parant. Tabernāculum in locō apertō est. Ex hōc locō tabernāculum vidēs.

7. Avunculus tuus imperat; cūr nōn pārēs?
Statim pārēbō.

311. VOCABULARY

igitur, *conj.*, therefore
imperō, -āre, command
lignum, -ī, N., wood
pāreō, -ēre, obey
perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous
statim, *adv.*, at once
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their
vester, -tra, -trum, your (*of more than one person*)

a. The verbs **imperō** and **pāreō** take a dependent dative instead of a direct object. This construction is not used in the exercises of this book, except in the Supplementary Lessons.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

312. Write the Latin equivalent for the italicized words in the following sentences: 1. The farmer is working in *his* (own) field. 2. *His* son is also working in the field. 3. The barbarians were destroying *their* (own) towns. 4. We see *their* camp from this place. 5. The woman stands before the door of *her* cottage.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

313. 1. What is an *imperious* manner? 2. What is an *imperative* necessity? 3. What is a *perfidious* enemy? 4. What is *lignite?*

Optional Drill

314. 1. Suum librum habet; ejus librum habeō; tuum librum habet. 2. Vestrōs librōs habent; suōs librōs habent; librōs eōrum habēmus. 3. Imperābō; statim pārēbis; statim pārēre dēbēs; imperāre dēbeō. 4. Lignum portābit; lignum portābitur. 5. Barbarī perfidī erunt; barbarī perfidī erant. 6. Igitur tūtus es; igitur tūtus eris. 7. Inimīcum timeō quod perfidus est. 8. Quamquam barbarī perfidī sunt, eōs nōn timēmus. 9. Hī barbarī nōn pārent. 10. Arma parant. 11. Tabernācula vestra in locō nōn tūtō stant.

315. 1. The man praises his son. 2. I do not praise his son. 3. They will destroy their (own) towns. 4. Their towns

will be attacked. 5. The woman warns her daughter. 6. We often warn her daughter. 7. The man praises his (own) plan. 8. We do not praise his plan. 9. The boy will invite his friends but he will not invite my friends.

(*a*) Conjugate **sum** in the present and future tenses.

(*b*) What are the different words by which *their* may be translated into Latin?

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXXVII-XLI

avunculus, -ī
barbarus, -ī
bēstia, -ae
inimīcus, -ī
lignum, -ī
servus, -ī

armātus, -a, -um
cēterī, -ae, -a
ferus, -a, -um
perfidus, -a, -um
suus, -a, -um

tōtus, -a, -um
vester, -tra, -trum

nōs

audeō, -ēre
circumspectō, -āre
dēleō, -ēre
errō, -āre
imperō, -āre
moveō, -ēre
necō, -āre
pāreō, -ēre
salūtō, -āre
servō, -āre
vulnerō, -āre

herī
igitur
mox
semper
statim
undique

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

(See section **307**)

FUTURE TENSE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

The tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations is **-bi-**.

FUTURE TENSE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

(See section **288**)

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF *SUM*

(See section **300**)

LESSON XLII

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

316. Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular ending in **-is.** In this declension the nominative singular is formed in a number of ways. But if the genitive singular is learned at the same time as the nominative, these variations in the nominative will cause no difficulty. This declension includes masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

317. There are two general classes of nouns in the third declension. They differ mainly in the ending of the genitive plural. Those which belong to the first class have the genitive plural ending in **-um.** Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

rēx, M., *king* **mīles,** M., *soldier* **frāter,** M., *brother* **homō,** M., *man*

Singular

NOM.	rēx	mī′les	frā′ter	ho′mō
GEN.	rē′gis	mī′litis	frā′tris	ho′minis
DAT.	rē′gī	mī′litī	frā′trī	ho′minī
ACC.	rē′gem	mī′litem	frā′trem	ho′minem
ABL.	rē′ge	mī′lite	frā′tre	ho′mine

Plural

NOM.	rē′gēs	mī′litēs	frā′trēs	ho′minēs
GEN.	rē′gum	mī′litum	frā′trum	ho′minum
DAT.	rē′gibus	mīli′tibus	frā′tribus	homi′nibus
ACC.	rē′gēs	mī′litēs	frā′trēs	ho′minēs
ABL.	rē′gibus	mīli′tibus	frā′tribus	homi′nibus

ENDINGS

318. The case endings, as seen on page 174, are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	—[1]	**-ēs**
GEN.	**-is**	**-um**
DAT.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
ACC.	**-em**	**-ēs**
ABL.	**-e**	**-ibus**

ROMAN ARCH IN FRANCE

READING EXERCISE

319. 1. Gallī ducem bonum habēbant. 2. Tum mīlitēs in castrīs manēbant. 3. Frāter meus hodiē abest. 4. Pater tuus est vir bonus et multōs amīcōs habet. 5. Frāter rēgis ā multīs laudātur. 6. Hic mīles est validus neque perīculum timet. 7. Ille mīles parvum frātrem habet. 8. Dux noster eōs hominēs nōn timet. 9. Librum frātris tuī habeō. 10. Is homō est amīcus patris tuī. 11. Rēx mīlitibus pecūniam dabit. 12. Epistula tua ā frātre tuō laudātur.

[1] The ending of the nominative singular in **rēx** and **mīles** is really **-s**, which gives **-x** when combined with **g** or **c**. But this ending does not appear in all third declension nouns.

GALLIC SOLDIERS

320. VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, M., leader	**mīles, mīlitis,** M., soldier
frāter, frātris, M., brother	**pater, patris,** M., father
homō, hominis, M., man	**rēx, rēgis,** M., king

a. Both **vir** and **homō** are sometimes translated *man;* **vir** may also mean *hero*, while **homō** may refer to any human being. With an adjective of favorable significance, as, for example, **bonus,** we commonly find **vir** rather than **homō.**

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

321. 1. I will give your brother a reward. 2. The king's soldiers have good weapons. 3. You are often praised by your father. 4. We see the leader of the allies with large forces. 5. The leader of these soldiers is the king's brother.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

322. 1. Find in a dictionary the derivation of *duke*. 2. What is a *fraternal* organization? 3. Give the meaning and derivation of *militia*. 4. What is *paternal* affection? 5. How is *regalia* connected in meaning with **rēx?**

Optional Drill

323. 1. Rēgis; rēgum; cum mīlite; cum mīlitibus. 2. Frātris tuī; patris tuī; cum patre tuō. 3. Dux rēgem laudat; rēx ducem laudat. 4. Amīcus ejus hominis; amīcus eōrum hominum. 5. Rēx ā duce laudātur; dux ā rēge laudātur. 6. Quis mīlitem vocat? 7. Ā quō mīles vocātur? 8. Ā quibus mīlitēs timentur? 9. Fīlius hujus rēgis nōn erit rēx.

324. 1. Of the soldier; of the soldiers; with the king. 2. With your brother; with that leader; with those leaders. 3. Gaul does not have a king. 4. The farmhouses were seized by the soldiers.

LESSON XLIII

READING EXERCISE

325. 1. In Galliā est nūllus rēx. In Americā est nūllus rēx. Ōlim in multīs terrīs Eurōpae erant rēgēs. Etiam nunc in Hispāniā est rēx.

2. Frāter meus et pater tuus in bellō erant. Frāter meus erat dux, et multī eum laudābant. Pater tuus nōn erat dux, sed erat bonus mīles, et fortiter pugnābat.

3. Castra Rōmānōrum ā tergō oppugnāre parāmus. Paucī mīlitēs in eō locō sunt, et eōs facile superābimus. Sine morā tōta castra occupābimus.

4. Sociī iterum auxilium nostrum postulant. Patria eōrum in perīculō est, et mīlitēs nōn sunt parātī. Eōs juvābimus,

quamquam bellum nōn dēsīderāmus. Pācem amāmus et semper amābimus.

5. Titus tē invītat, sed sorōrēs et frātrēs tuōs nōn invītat. Titus est tuus amīcus bonus.

326. VOCABULARY

etiam, *adv.*, even, also
facile, *adv.*, easily
mora, -ae, F., delay
paucī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few, a few
pāx, pācis, F., peace
soror, sorōris, F., sister
tē, you (*accusative and ablative singular*)
tergum, -ī, N., back; **ā tergō,** at the rear, from the rear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

VERCINGETORIX

327. 1. The king of the barbarians has large forces. 2. Our allies do not have a king. 3. I see your father and your brother in the street. 4. The soldiers praise their leaders. 5. The barbarians prepare to attack the town.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

328. In times of war or other disasters, nations and also business organizations and private citizens often find it impossible to pay debts as they come due. In these circumstances a *moratorium* is sometimes declared, that is, a period of delay in the payment of all debts. What is the derivation of *moratorium?*

Optional Drill

329. 1. Dux validus; ducis validī; ducēs validī; ducum validōrum. 2. Frātris nostrī; patris nostrī; frātrum nostrōrum; cum frātre nostrō. 3. Paucī rēgēs; paucī mīlitēs; illī mīlitēs; illīus mīlitis. 4. Etiam nunc in illā terrā est rēx. 5. Mora nōn erit longa; mora nōn erat longa. 6. Sine morā oppugnābimus. 7. Ā tergō oppugnāmur; ā tergō oppugnābāmur. 8. Facile ex perīculō servābimur; facile ex perīculō eōs servābimus. 9. Dux noster nōn est rēx; dux eōrum erat rēx; ducēs eōrum erant rēgēs. 10. Cum illō duce; ab hōc mīlite; cum meīs frātribus; ā patre tuō.

330. 1. Of a good soldier; of good soldiers; of a kind father; of an energetic brother. 2. With our leader; with your leaders; by the king of the Germans; by the leaders of the Gauls. 3. Your brothers will be safe. 4. The soldiers of the king will be defeated. 5. The father of the soldier is present.

(*a*) Decline together **pater meus.**

(*b*) Decline together **ille rēx.**

(*c*) Write the third person singular of **pāreō** and **imperō** in the present, imperfect, and future of the active voice.

RUINS OF AN ANCIENT APARTMENT HOUSE

LESSON XLIV

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

331. There are many neuter nouns of the third declension. These, like the masculine and feminine nouns, form the nominative in different ways. Neuter nouns belonging to the same general class of the third declension as the masculine and feminine nouns which have been given in the preceding lessons are declined as follows:

	flūmen, N., *river*	**caput,** N., *head*	**corpus,** N., *body*
		Singular	
NOM.	flū′men	ca′put	cor′pus
GEN.	flū′minis	ca′pitis	cor′poris
DAT.	flū′minī	ca′pitī	cor′porī
ACC.	flū′men	ca′put	cor′pus
ABL.	flū′mine	ca′pite	cor′pore
		Plural	
NOM.	flū′mina	ca′pita	cor′pora
GEN.	flū′minum	ca′pitum	cor′porum
DAT.	flūmi′nibus	capi′tibus	corpo′ribus
ACC.	flū′mina	ca′pita	cor′pora
ABL.	flūmi′nibus	capi′tibus	corpo′ribus

a. These three words illustrate different formations of the nominative, but there is no difference in the manner in which they are declined.

b. As in the neuter noun **templum** of the second declension, the accusative singular of these nouns is the same as the nominative singular, the accusative plural is the same as the nominative plural, and the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a.**

READING EXERCISE: *PUER QUĪ* (WHO) *NATAT*

332. 1. Tēctum nostrum nōn longē ā rīpā flūminis abest. Saepe in eō flūmine natō aut in rīpā stō. Frāter meus quoque interdum in flūmine natat. Natāre amāmus. In mediō flūmine est magnum saxum. Ad saxum natāmus, tum in saxō diū sedēmus et cēterōs puerōs spectāmus. Flūmen nōn altum est, et caput meum vidēs cum in flūmine stō. Corpora valida habēmus quod saepe natāmus et quod in agrīs labōrāmus.

2. Puerī Rōmānī quoque natāre amābant. Rōma est in rīpā magnī flūminis, et in flūmine puerī Rōmānī saepe natābant. Etiam hieme Rōmānī in flūmine natābant. Illī virī corpora valida habēbant, et mīlitēs bonī erant.

RŌMĀNĪ IN FLŪMINE NATĀBANT

333. VOCABULARY

caput, capitis, N., head
corpus, corporis, N., body
flūmen, flūminis, N., river
medius, -a, -um, middle, the middle of
natō, -āre, swim
rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*)
saxum, -ī, N., rock, stone
sedeō, -ēre, sit

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

334. 1. From this place I see the river. 2. The soldiers have strong bodies. 3. The boys sometimes swim in the rivers. 4. There (*see section* **78**) are forests on the banks of the rivers.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

335. 1. What is *capital* punishment? *Corporal* punishment? 2. Find an English word derived from **medius.** 3. What are *riparian* rights? 4. What is a *natatorium?* 5. What is a *sedentary* occupation?

Optional Drill

336. 1. Flūminis lātī; flūminum lātōrum; ex illō flūmine; trāns hoc flūmen. 2. Corpus validum; corporis validī; parvum caput; parva capita. 3. In mediō agrō; in mediā silvā; in rīpā ambulāre; ex rīpā spectāre. 4. Sunt magna flūmina in patriā nostrā. 5. Ille equus parvum caput habet. 6. Hī barbarī magna corpora habent, sed nōn erunt mīlitēs bonī. 7. In hōc flūmine aestāte natāmus.

337. 1. These rivers; of these rivers; in these rivers. 2. Large heads; small bodies; of a large head. 3. We swim in the river or we sit on the bank. 4. In the middle of the island (*not genitive*) is a small cottage. 5. We shall remain in Spain for a long time. 6. There is a large stone in the middle of the street.

COIN WITH TEMPLE OF JUPITER CAPITOLINUS

(*a*) Decline together **hoc flūmen.**

(*b*) Conjugate **sedeō** in the future tense, active voice.

(*c*) Give the accusative singular of **rīpa, equus, rēx, mīles, corpus, flūmen.**

THE GODS OF THE ROMANS

The Romans worshiped a great many gods. In honor of these gods they built splendid temples, the ruins of which are to be seen in Rome and in other parts of the Roman world.

The greatest of the gods was Jupiter, who was sometimes called the father of gods and men. He was represented as ruling the other gods and directing the affairs of heaven and earth. His weapon was the thunderbolt, which he hurled as one might throw a javelin or a dart. The stories of his dealings with mortals do not always represent him as kind or just, though he often punished injustice among men. His most celebrated temple at Rome was on the Capitoline Hill.

JUPITER

Juno was the queen of the gods and the wife of Jupiter. She was believed to give special protection to women. Her statues represent her as tall and stately. A temple in her honor stood on the Aventine Hill.

The god of the sea was Neptune. He is represented as carrying a three-pointed weapon, called a trident. His palace was at the bottom of the sea, but sometimes he came to the surface and rode over the waves in his chariot. He ruled not only the sea but also the rivers, though there were gods of the different rivers, who were under his authority.

Ceres was the goddess of grain. Our word *cereal* is derived from her name. She was said to have taught men how to plow and to cultivate crops. Once when she became angry she forbade the grain to grow in a certain region, and the ground was barren until she gave up her anger.

The goddess who had particular care for the home was Vesta. Both Ceres and Vesta were sisters of Jupiter. At Rome there was a very sacred temple to Vesta, and it was the duty of those in charge to keep a fire always burning in this temple. This duty was assigned to a group of six priestesses, called Vestal Virgins, who had special privileges and who were highly honored in Rome.

The god of war, Mars, was said to have been the father of Romulus, the founder of Rome. The Emperor Augustus built a great temple in his honor, part of which is still standing. Mars is represented as taking pleasure in battles and in the cruel scenes of war. From his name we have the word *martial*, meaning "warlike."

MARS

Still another important deity was the goddess Minerva. She taught mankind useful arts, such as spinning and weaving. She was regarded as the goddess of wisdom, and she had special care for heroes who were shrewd and clever-minded. Rather strangely, as it may seem, she was also a warlike goddess, sometimes taking part in battles. Her statues often represent her with a spear and a helmet.

Venus was the goddess of love and of beauty. She was especially honored by the family to which Caesar belonged, because, according to legend, the founder of that family was a son of Venus. Her most famous statues were made by Greek sculptors or were copies of those originally made by the Greeks.

There were numerous other gods and goddesses, but these which have been described are among the most important.

LESSON XLV

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

338. The second of the two general classes of nouns of the third declension differs from the first class in that the genitive plural ends in **-ium** instead of **-um.** There are also a few other differences. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

	collis, M., *hill*	**nūbēs,** F., *cloud*	**nox,** F., *night*
		Singular	
NOM.	col'lis	nū'bēs	nox
GEN.	col'lis	nū'bis	noc'tis
DAT.	col'lī	nū'bī	noc'tī
ACC.	col'lem	nū'bem	noc'tem
ABL.	col'le	nū'be	noc'te
		Plural	
NOM.	col'lēs	nū'bēs	noc'tēs
GEN.	col'lium	nū'bium	noc'tium
DAT.	col'libus	nū'bibus	noc'tibus
ACC.	col'līs, -ēs	nū'bīs, -ēs	noc'tīs, -ēs
ABL.	col'libus	nū'bibus	noc'tibus

a. The Romans sometimes used **-īs** and sometimes **-ēs** as the ending of the accusative plural of these nouns. The form in **-ēs** is regularly used in this book.

CLASSES OF MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE IN *-IUM*

339. The following two classes include practically all masculine and feminine nouns which have the genitive plural in **-ium:**

(1) Nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs,** and having the same number of syllables in the nominative and in the genitive singular: **avis,** *gen.* **avis**[1]**; nūbēs,** *gen.* **nūbis.**

(2) Nouns with two consonants immediately preceding the ending of the genitive singular and with one more syllable in the genitive than in the nominative singular: **nox,** *gen.* **noctis.**

Other masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension regularly have the genitive plural in **-um.** In this book the genitive plural ending **-ium** is printed in the vocabulary after nouns which have that ending.

READING EXERCISE: *HOMŌ QUĪ LONGĒ Ā TĒCTŌ SUŌ EST*

340. Nox est, et in silvā avēs et bēstiae silent. Lūx obscūra est propter nūbēs, quamquam lūna vidētur. Longē ā tēctō meō sum. Ex summō colle parvum oppidum videō. Appropinquābō et cibum rogābō. Nam dēfessus sum, et nūllam pecūniam habeō. Sī nōn barbarī sunt, cibum mihi dabunt. Pecūniam nōn rogābō.

A WEARY TRAVELER

Cibum eī dabimus, nam dēfessus est. Nōn sumus barbarī. Longē ā tēctō suō est, et nūllam pecūniam habet. Nūllōs amīcōs in hōc locō habet. Sed homō est, et homō hominem juvāre dēbet.

[1]Two exceptions are **canis,** *dog,* and **juvenis,** *young man,* both of which have the genitive plural ending in **-um.**

341. VOCABULARY

appropinquō, -āre, approach
avis, avis, -ium, F., bird
cibus, -ī, M., food
collis, collis, -ium, M., hill
lūx, lūcis, F., light; **prīma lūx,** daybreak
nox, noctis, -ium, F., night
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F., cloud
sileō, -ēre, be silent
summus, -a, -um, highest, highest part of, top of

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

342. 1. This boy is a friend of the birds. 2. The nights are long in winter. 3. I see the light in the window of the cottage. 4. We are hastening from the street because we see the clouds. 5. This man has no food because he has no money.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

343. 1. What is an *aviator?* 2. What is a *translucent* substance? 3. What are *nocturnal* birds? 4. What is meant by the phrase *summum bonum?*

Optional Drill

344. 1. Nox erat, et in silvā avēs et bēstiae silēbant. Lūx obscūra erat propter nūbēs, quamquam paucās stellās vidēbam. Longē ā tēctō meō eram. Dēfessus eram et nūllam pecūniam habēbam. 2. Nūllum cibum habēbāmus. 3. Cūr nūllum cibum habēbātis? 4. Homō appropinquat; hominēs appropinquant. 5. Nox longa erat; hieme noctēs longae sunt; aestāte noctēs nōn sunt longae. 6. In summō colle est parvum oppidum. 7. In summō saxō stō. 8. Hominem juvābimus; hominem juvābāmus. 9. Hominēs in summō colle vidēmus.

345. 1. Of the long night; of many nights; this night. 2. From a high hill; from the top of the hill (*not genitive*); through the cloud; through the clouds. 3. The man sees a light on the hill. 4. We saw many birds in this forest. 5. The men do

not dare to approach. 6. The soldiers have no food. 7. The men were silent on account of the danger.

(*a*) Conjugate **appropinquō** and **sileō** in the imperfect tense, active voice.

(*b*) Decline together **avis pulchra.**

(*c*) Give the genitive singular of all the nouns in the first two lines of section **340.**

LESSON XLVI

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

346. The second class of nouns of the third declension has a number of nouns which are neuter. The nominative of these ends in **-e, -al,** or **-ar.** They are declined as follows:

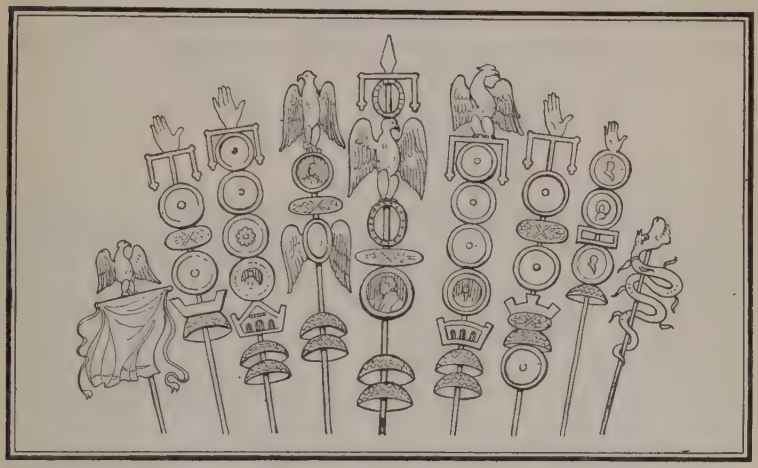
	īnsigne, N., *badge*	**exemplar,** N., *pattern*	**animal,** N., *animal*
		Singular	
NOM.	īnsig′ne	exem′plar	a′nimal
GEN.	īnsig′nis	exemplā′ris	animā′lis
DAT.	īnsig′nī	exemplā′rī	animā′lī
ACC.	īnsig′ne	exem′plar	a′nimal
ABL.	īnsig′nī	exemplā′rī	animā′lī
		Plural	
NOM.	īnsig′nia	exemplā′ria	animā′lia
GEN.	īnsig′nium	exemplā′rium	animā′lium
DAT.	īnsig′nibus	exemplā′ribus	animā′libus
ACC.	īnsig′nia	exemplā′ria	animā′lia
ABL.	īnsig′nibus	exemplā′ribus	animā′libus

a. In addition to having the genitive plural ending in **-ium,** these nouns differ from the neuter nouns of the first class in that the ablative singular ends in **-ī** and the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia.**

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

347. The following rules will help in determining the gender of nouns of the third declension:

(1) Nouns ending in **-tās** and **-tūs** are feminine.
(2) Nouns ending in **-tor** are masculine.
(3) Nouns ending in **-e, -al, -ar, -n,** and **-t** are neuter.



ROMAN STANDARDS

READING EXERCISE: *ĪNSIGNIA MĪLITUM*

348. 1. Ōlim mīlitēs in proeliīs īnsignia habēbant. Sīc hostēs et amīcī nōtī erant. Signa quoque habēbant. Interdum haec signa erant figūrae animālium. In pictūrā exemplāria hōrum signōrum vidētis. Nunc mīlitēs in proeliīs signa nōn habent, et īnsignia saepe cēlantur.

2. Hostēs appropinquant. Ex hōc locō īnsignia eōrum vidēmus. Oppidum nostrum oppugnābunt, sed mīlitēs nostrī parātī sunt, et nōn timēmus. Hostēs superābuntur et oppidum nostrum tūtum erit quod mīlitēs bonōs patria nostra habet.

349. VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, -ium, N., animal
cēlō, -āre, conceal
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N., copy, specimen, pattern
figūra, -ae, F., figure
hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy
īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium, N., decoration, badge
sīc, *adv.*, thus, so
signum, -ī, N., sign, standard

a. The word **hostis** is applied to an enemy of one's country, while **inimīcus** means a personal enemy.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

350. 1. Corpora hōrum animāl— parva sunt. 2. Dux host— (*of the enemies*) gladium habet. 3. Frāter meus īnsignia pulchr— habet. 4. Mīlitēs nostrī sign— (*standards*) in proeliīs nōn portant. 5. Haec pictūra pulchra multīs nōt— est.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

351. 1. What is *exemplary* conduct? 2. Find an adjective and a noun derived from **hostis.** 3. What is meant by the *insignia* of office? 4. What other words beside **figūra** can you recall in which final **a** of the Latin is represented by *e* in the English word?

Optional Drill

352. 1. Illōrum animālium; illōrum flūminum; hōrum hostium; hōrum mīlitum. 2. Exemplāria nōta sunt; īnsignia nōta sunt; flūmina nōta sunt. 3. Signum Gallōrum erat figūra animālis. 4. Signum Rōmānōrum in colle vidēmus. 5. Cūr īnsignia sīc cēlātis? 6. Cūr īnsignia sīc cēlābātis? 7. Hujus proeliī; hujus bellī; haec proelia; haec bella; in proeliō; in bellō. 8. Hostēs in castrīs suīs silēbant. 9. Haec animālia magna corpora et parva capita habent. 10. Sīc semper amīcōs habēbitis.

353. 1. Of this animal; of that badge; of our enemies; of our soldiers. 2. The badges of the enemy (*plural*) are concealed. 3. There are many animals on this island. 4. We do not fear the enemies of our native country. 5. There was a great battle in this place. 6. This place is well known on account of that battle. 7. The battles of that war are well known.

(*a*) Decline together **parvum animal.**

(*b*) Give the genitive plural of **collis, homō, nox, hostis, figūra, proelium.**

(*c*) Rewrite paragraph 2, section **348,** changing all the verbs to the imperfect.

A ROMAN VICTORY

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XLII-XLVI

animal, animālis
avis, avis
caput, capitis
cibus, -ī
collis, collis
corpus, corporis
dux, ducis
exemplar, exemplāris
figūra, -ae
flūmen, flūminis
frāter, frātris
homō, hominis
hostis, hostis
īnsigne, īnsignis
lūx, lūcis
mīles, mīlitis
mora, -ae
nox, noctis
nūbēs, nūbis
pater, patris
pāx, pācis
rēx, rēgis
rīpa, -ae
saxum, -ī
signum, -ī
soror, sorōris
tergum, -ī

medius, -a, -um
paucī, -ae, -a
summus, -a, -um

tē

appropinquō, -āre
cēlō, -āre
natō, -āre
sedeō, -ēre
sileō, -ēre

etiam
facile
sīc

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

(1) Masculine and feminine nouns with genitive plural in **-um** (section **317**).

(2) Neuter nouns with genitive plural in **-um** (section **331**).

(3) Masculine and feminine nouns with genitive plural in **-ium** (section **338**).

(4) Neuter nouns with genitive plural in **-ium** (section **346**).

LESSON XLVII

PERFECT TENSE

MEANING OF THE PERFECT

354. The perfect tense of the Latin verb is sometimes translated by the English present perfect, *I have carried, you have carried*, etc., and sometimes by the simple past tense, *I carried*,

you carried, etc. The meaning of the rest of the sentence will usually make it easy to decide which of these two translations should be used.

FORMS OF THE PERFECT

355. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the perfect active:

Singular

portā'vī, *I carried*, or *I have carried*
portāvis'tī, *you carried*, or *you have carried*
portā'vit, *he carried*, or *he has carried*

Plural

portā'vimus, *we carried*, or *we have carried*
portāvis'tis, *you carried*, or *you have carried*
portāvē'runt, *they carried*, or *they have carried*

Singular	*Plural*
mon'uī, *I warned*, or *I have warned*	monu'imus
monuis'tī	monuis'tis
mo'nuit	monuē'runt

a. The verbs **amō, laudō, superō,** and most other verbs of the first conjugation form their perfects like **portō.** The perfects of **timeō** and **habeō** are like that of **moneō.** The perfect of **maneō** is **mānsī, mānsistī,** etc.

b. The person endings used in the perfect active differ from those used with the other tenses. They are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
-ī	**-imus**
-istī	**-istis**
-it	**-ērunt**

THE PERFECT OF *SUM*

356. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the perfect:

Singular	*Plural*
fuī, *I have been*	fuimus, *we have been*
fuistī, *you have been*	fuistis, *you have been*
fuit, *he has been*	fuērunt, *they have been*

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE PERFECT AND THE IMPERFECT

357. The distinction between the perfect and the imperfect tenses consists in the fact that the imperfect represents an act as going on in past time or denotes a situation in past time, while the perfect either denotes a single past act without reference to its continuance or is equivalent to the English present perfect.

In the sentence *We crossed the river* a single act in past time is denoted, and hence the perfect will be used in Latin. Similarly, in the sentence *We have crossed the river*, the verb is in the present perfect, and the Latin equivalent will require the perfect. On the other hand, *We were crossing the river* represents an act as going on in past time, and *Everyone feared war* denotes a situation in past time. Hence the imperfect will be used in these two sentences.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

358. 1. Parva puella epistulam meam ad patrem suum portāvit. 2. Sextum monuī, sed nōn bene labōrat; nōn est impiger. 3. Patriam nostram semper amāvimus, saepe laudāvimus. 4. Amīcī tuī hodiē in scholā nōn fuērunt. 5. Cibum rogāvī, pecūniam nōn rogāvī. 6. Dux hostium cum multīs mīlitibus appropinquāvit. 7. Ubi meōs librōs cēlāvistī? 8. Librōs tuōs nōn cēlāvī; Mārcus librōs tuōs habet. 9. Cornēlia

cēnam parāvit, et nunc nōs vocat. 10. Cūr, puerī, hodiē domī mānsistis? 11. Illōs hostēs nōn timuimus neque nunc timēmus. 12. Auxilium tuum nōn rogābāmus.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

359. 1. Why have you not invited my brother and my friends? 2. Where have you been? I have been in the farmhouse. 3. We have warned your son, but he does not fear the danger. 4. We have remained at home today with our brothers. 5. I was helping my father in the fields.

Optional Drill

360. 1. Give two translations for each of the following words: imperāvī; servāvistī; clāmāvit; oppugnāvimus; postulāvistis; timuērunt. 2. Monuērunt; mānsērunt; timuimus; timēmus. 3. Probāvistī; vāstāvērunt; occupāvimus; occupābāmus. 4. Habitāvit; habuit; habuistis. 5. Puerōs spectāvimus; puerī nōs spectāvērunt. 6. Haec animālia hominēs nōn timuērunt. 7. Prō patriā Gallī pugnāvērunt; prō patriā hominēs pugnābant.

361. 1. We have called; you (*plural*) have asked; they have approved. 2. He has warned; he has remained; he was warning. 3. I have been happy in this cottage. 4. We often wandered through the whole island.

THE TOMB OF CECILIA METELLA

This famous tomb was at one time made into a fortress.

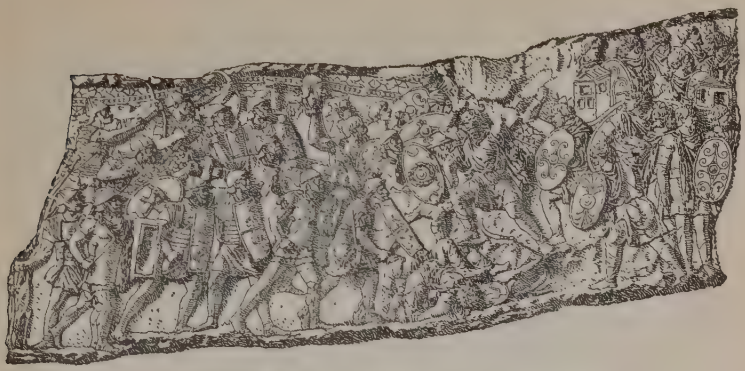
LESSON XLVIII

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

362. Habitāsne in hāc urbe?
Ita; nunc cīvis hujus urbis sum.
Habitāvistīne semper in hōc locō?
Minimē. Ōlim cum patre meō in parvō oppidō habitāvī.
Habēsne frātrēs et sorōrēs?
Frātrēs et sorōrēs habeō.
Habitantne frātrēs et sorōrēs quoque in urbe?
Sorōrēs in urbe habitant. Frātrēs sunt mīlitēs et nunc ab urbe absunt.
Amatne gēns tua bellum?
Bellum nōn amāmus, sed nōn sumus ignāvī.
Quid vōs ad bellum excitāvit?
Hostēs agrōs cīvium nostrōrum vāstāvērunt.
Properantne hūc illī hostēs?
Minimē. Mīlitēs nostrī eōs in proeliō superāvērunt.
Suntne ignāvī hostēs?
Hostēs nōn sunt ignāvī. Sunt mīlitēs bonī.
Amantne bellum illī hostēs?
Rēx eōrum bellum semper amāvit.
Nōnne agrī hostium vāstābuntur?
Agrōs eōrum nōn vāstābimus. Pācem dēsīderāmus.

363. VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M., citizen
excitō, -āre, arouse, stir up, excite
expugnō, -āre, capture, take by storm
gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation
hūc, *adv.*, to this place, hither
ignāvus, -a, -um, cowardly
urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city
vōs, you (*plural, nominative and accusative*)



A BATTLE BETWEEN ROMANS AND BARBARIANS

COMPLETION EXERCISE

364. 1. Mīlitēs hunc ducem semper amāv—. 2. Pater meus saepe frātrem meum monu—. 3. Sociī nostrī auxilium postulāv—. 4. Amīcī nostrī benignī fu—, et eōs amāmus. 5. Hanc gentem timu— (*subject* "*we*").

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

365. 1. What is meant by *civic* virtues? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *civilization* and **cīvis?** 3. Give an English noun which is derived from **excitō.** 4. What is the difference between *urban* and *urbane?*

Optional Drill

366. 1. Postulāvī; postulābam; mānsit; manēbat; excitāvimus; excitābāmus. 2. Cīvēs sunt ignāvī; cīvēs fuērunt ignāvī. 3. Amīcī nostrī hūc properāvērunt; amīcī nostrī hūc properābant. 4. Multae gentēs; multārum gentium; in hāc gente; in hīs gentibus. 5. Vōs in urbe vidēbimus. 6. Nōs in urbe vidēbitis. 7. Oppidum expugnāvimus; oppidum expugnābimus. 8. Dux cīvēs excitāvit; dux cīvēs excitābat. 9. Bellum nōn dēsīderāvimus. 10. Haec gēns semper bellum dēsīderāvit.

11. In nostrā urbe diū mānsistī. 12. Vōs saepe monuī. 13. Nōs saepe monuistis. 14. Frāter tuus semper benignus fuit.

367. 1. He has feared; he will fear; he fears. 2. He has praised; he was praising; he will praise. 3. They have fought; they were fighting; they will fight. 4. We have been safe; we were safe; we shall be safe. 5. The leader has warned the citizens. 6. The citizens have warned the leader. 7. These men have not been cowardly.

(*a*) Conjugate **moneō** and **maneō** in the perfect tense, active voice, and give the meaning of each form.

(*b*) Decline together **cīvis bonus.**

(*c*) Write the third person plural of **portō** and **moneō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect of the active voice.

LESSON XLIX

PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

USE OF PARTICIPLES

368. There are certain verb forms which not only denote action, but also serve to tell something about a person or thing very much as an adjective does. Thus, in the sentence *The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help,* the word *frightened* is a form of the verb *frighten,* but it serves to tell something about the situation or condition of the boy. It is called a *participle,* and it shares something of the character of a verb and of an adjective. It has the character of a verb in that it denotes action and it has the character of an adjective in that it tells something about a noun or pronoun.

THE FORMS OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

369. The perfect passive participle of **portō** is **portātus, -a, -um,** translated either by the compound participle *having*

been carried, or by the simple participle *carried*. The participle of **moneō** is **monitus, -a, -um**, meaning *having been warned*, or simply *warned*. Thus, **Puer, ā patre monitus, ad scholam properābat** may be translated *The boy, having been warned by his father, was hastening to school*, or *The boy, warned by his father, was hastening to school.*

a. The perfect passive participle is declined throughout like **bonus**. A participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

b. The perfect participle of **juvō** is **jūtus, -a, -um**; of **dō** is **datus, -a, -um** (differing from **portātus** in that the **a** is short). All other verbs of the first conjugation which have been given thus far form their perfect participles like **portō**[1]; for example, **laudātus, amātus,** etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

370. 1. Oppidum, ab hostibus oppugnātum, in perīculō est. 2. Pecūnia, ā Sextō postulāta, statim dabitur. 3. Hostēs, ā nostrīs cōpiīs superātī, in patriā suā manēbunt. 4. Puella, ā sorōre suā monita, nōn iterum ā scholā aberit. 5. Puer, saepe vocātus, nōn respondēt. 6. Urbs, ā Gallīs expugnāta, dēlēbitur. 7. In eā calamitāte multī cīvēs necābuntur. 8. Agricolae, ā barbarīs territī, ad oppidum properābant. 9. Saepe animālia, ab hominibus territa, in silvā latēbant. 10. Dē perīculō monitus, in eō locō sōlus nōn manēbam. 11. Sorōrem tuam crās in urbe vidēbō.

371. VOCABULARY

calamitās, -ātis, F., disaster, misfortune

crās, *adv.*, tomorrow

dē, *prep. with ablative*, from, concerning, about

lateō, -ēre, lurk, be concealed

terreō, -ēre, frighten

[1]The verb **stō** has no perfect participle.

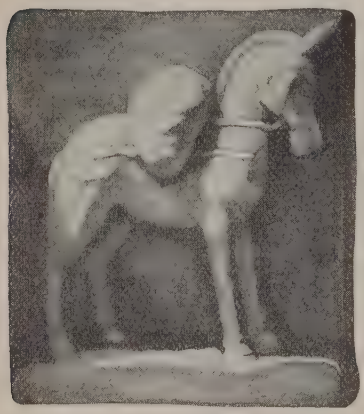
a. The preposition **dē** when meaning *from* has the sense of *down from*, while **ē, ex,** means *out from* and **ā, ab,** means *away from*. But **dē** very frequently means *concerning, regarding, about,* as in section **370.**

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

372. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences: 1. The *towns,* (*having been*) *attacked* by the enemy, are in danger. 2. The *book demanded* by Sextus will be given at once. 3. The *king,* (*having been*) *defeated* by our forces, will remain in his native country. 4. The *girls,* (*having been*) *warned* by their sister concerning the danger, will not again walk in the forest. 5. The *boys, having often been called,* do not reply.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

373. 1. What is *latent* heat? 2. What is the original meaning of *adjutant?* What is its derivation? 3. Find a noun and an adjective from **calamitās.**



A PACK MULE

Optional Drill

374. 1. Necātus; servātus; occupātus. 2. Salūtātus; superātus; expectātus. 3. In urbe nostrā; in oppidō nostrō; ex urbibus; ex oppidīs. 4. Animal excitātum puerōs terruit. 5. Puerī territī ex silvā properābant. 6. Cibus rogātus huic virō dabitur. 7. Servī, saepe laudātī, bene labōrant.

375. 1. Write the declension of the perfect participles of **terreō** and **vāstō.**

2. Give the gender, number, and case of all the participles in section **370.**

WORD STUDY V

FORMS OF THE PREPOSITION *CUM* AS A PREFIX

In the early form of Latin the preposition **cum** was spelled **com,** and it is in this form that it is used as a prefix. But the final **-m** is often changed by assimilation, so that we may have **con-, col-, cor-, co-,** as well as **com-.** The following list of English derivatives will illustrate these different forms:

*com*pose	*cor*rupt
*con*duct	*co*efficient
*col*lect	

MEANING AND USE OF *COM-*

As a prefix **com-** usually means *together.* Thus **conveniō** is *come together,* **comportāre** is *bring together,* **condūcere** is *lead together.* Our English verb *conduct* has lost the force of the prefix as it was felt in Latin.

Sometimes the force of the prefix has disappeared in Latin compounds and the compound word has come to mean the same or nearly the same as the original word to which the prefix was added. Thus **comparō,** *prepare,* scarcely differs in meaning from the simple verb **parō.**

In some words **com-** serves to emphasize the meaning of the word to which it was added. The adjective **cōnsimilis** means *very like,* serving as an emphatic form of **similis; combūrō** is *burn up;* **commūniō** is *fortify thoroughly.*

SUMMARY OF PREPOSITIONS AS PREFIXES

The following list of prepositions, with one compound of each, will illustrate some of the most important prepositional prefixes:

Prefix	*Meaning*	*Compound*
ā, ab	(away) from	absum
ad	to, toward	addūcō
circum	around	circumveniō
com-	together, with	condūcō
dē	(down) from	dēsiliō
ē, ex	(out) from	effugiō
in	into, in	immittō
ob	against	oppugnō
prō	forward	prōspectō
sub	under	succēdō
trāns	across	trānsportō

a. Other important prepositional prefixes are **ante,** *before,* **post,** *behind, after,* **per,** *through, thoroughly.*

b. Other prefixes besides **com-** sometimes serve merely to emphasize or intensify the meaning of the word to which they are joined; in some words their force is almost or entirely lost.

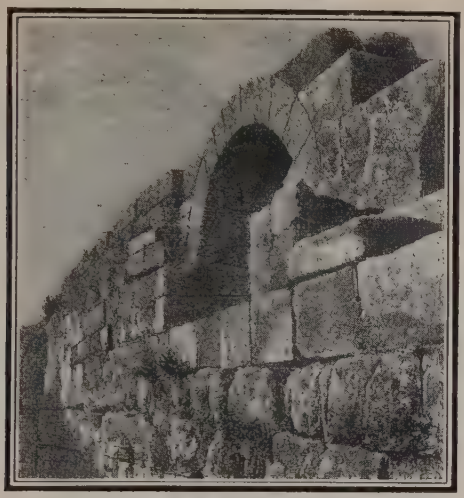
LESSON L

READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS URBEM OPPUGNĀRE PARANT*

376. 1. Vigilēs ex moenibus urbis prōspectant et agmen hostium procul vident. Hostēs appropinquant et urbem oppugnāre parant. Sed portae et moenia urbis sunt valida, et ante moenia est vāllum. Mīlitēs ā duce monitī nunc ad moenia properant. Cīvēs auxilium ā sociīs quoque expectant.

2. Ad urbem appropinquāmus et eam oppugnāre parāmus. Mīlitēs nostrī sunt dēfessī, quod iter hodiē longum fuit. Sed statim oppugnābimus, quod cīvēs urbis auxilium expectant.

3. Auxilium ā cīvibus expectātum nōn adest. Cīvēs et mīlitēs in urbe fortiter pugnant, sed mox erit fīnis proeliī. Urbs expugnāta dēlēbitur. Multī cīvēs erunt servī.



THE SERVIAN WALL

This wall was built in very early times, and the city afterward spread far beyond its limits. Only small portions now remain.

377. VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis, N., column, line

fīnis, fīnis, -ium, M., end, limit; *pl.*, country, territory

iter, itineris, N., road, journey, march

moenia, -ium, N. *pl.*, walls (*of a city*)

porta, -ae, F., gate

procul, *adv.*, at a distance

prōspectō, -āre, look forth, look

vāllum, -ī, N., rampart, wall

vigil, vigilis, M., sentinel

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

378. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences. 1. The *soldier, having been warned,* hastened to the camp. 2. The *enemy, having been defeated,* will be slaves. 3. The *boys, having been praised,* will work well. 4. My *brother, having been invited,* remained in town. 5. The *girl, having often been warned,* fears danger.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

379. 1. Where is *finis* sometimes found in English books? 2. What is an *itinerary?* 3. What is the meaning of the word *portal?* 4. What connection can you see between *vigilant* and **vigil?**

Optional Drill

380. 1. Laudātus; datus; vulnerātus; monitus; jūtus. 2. Agmen nōn procul est; agmen appropinquat. 3. Vigilēs agmen vident; vigilēs prōspectant. 4. Ex portā prōspectāmus; ex moenibus prōspectāmus. 5. Iter est longum; itinera sunt longa; fīnis itineris adest. 6. Vāllum est altum; moenia sunt alta. 7. Tōta urbs est tūta quod moenia sunt alta. 8. Vigilēs prōspectāvērunt. 9. Vāllum fuit altum. 10. Iter fuit longum. 11. Agmen appropinquāvit. 12. Procul lūcem videō. 13. Vigil cēterōs mīlitēs monuit.

381. 1. Give the Latin participles for the following in the nominative case, masculine gender, singular number: having been invited; having been attacked; having been laid waste; having been called; having been approved. 2. The rampart of the camp is high. 3. The sentinel looks from the window. 4. The camp has small gates. 5. We are expecting the end of the war.

MILESTONE

(*a*) Write the complete declension of **portātus** and **monitus.**

(*b*) Give the form of **amātus** which will agree with **patria** as subject; with **fēmina** as direct object.

(*c*) Decline **vigil.**

LESSON LI

PRINCIPAL PARTS: STEMS OF VERBS

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

382. There are certain forms of a verb which show important facts regarding its conjugation. These are called *principal parts.*

The principal parts of a Latin verb are the present indicative active (first person singular), the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active (first person singular), and the perfect passive participle.

The principal parts of **portō** and **moneō** are as follows:

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

a. The neuter form of the perfect participle is given in the principal parts for the reason that the perfect participles of some verbs have no masculine or feminine forms. But for most verbs, the participle is declined in all three genders. Thus, **portātus, -a, -um; monitus, -a, -um,** etc.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

383. All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **juvō, dō,** and **stō,** form their principal parts like **portō.** The principal parts of these three are as follows:

dō, dare, dedī, datum
juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum
stō, stāre, stetī

a. The fourth principal part of **stō** will be explained later; **dō** is irregular in having the **a** short in the infinitive and in the perfect participle, and also in all forms of the indicative except the second person singular of the present active, **dās,** as we have before seen.

THE STEMS OF THE VERB

384. If from the present infinitive **laudāre** we drop **-re** we have left what is known as the *present stem*. The stem of a verb is the body of the verb to which tense signs and endings are added.

A verb regularly has three stems: the present, the perfect, and the participial. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present active infinitive, and the perfect stem by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the perfect participle: **portātum,** stem **portāt-; monitum,** stem **monit-.**

IMPORTANCE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS AND STEMS

385. In order to find the stems of a verb, it is necessary to know its principal parts. These facts which have been stated regarding the formation and use of stems are true of all verbs in the Latin language. It is therefore very important that they be remembered.

USE OF THE STEMS

386. The present, the imperfect, and the future indicative, active and passive, are formed on the present stem.

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice. The perfect active indicative, which has already been given, and the past perfect and future perfect indicative, which will be given later, are formed on this stem.

Only a few forms are made on the participial stem.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

387. The principal parts of six of the second conjugation verbs which have appeared in the preceding lessons are as follows:

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum

A STREET SCENE IN ROME

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī
timeō, timēre, timuī
sileō, silēre, siluī

a. Some verbs do not have a perfect passive participle. This is true of the last three verbs in the list above.

Optional Drill

388. 1. Write the principal parts of **laudō** and indicate the three stems by drawing vertical lines in such a way as to cut off the final **-re** of the infinitive, the person ending **-ī** of the perfect and the case ending **-um** of the participle. In the same way indicate the stems of **habeō.** 2. Write the complete declension of the past participle of **dēbeō.** 3. Conjugate **stō** and **dō** in the perfect active indicative.

RUINS OF THE AMPHITHEATER AT CAPUA

The city of Capua, situated about thirty miles from Naples, had a famous training school for gladiators.

LESSON LII

PRINCIPAL PARTS (Continued)

DIFFERENT ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT STEM

389. All the second conjugation verbs given in the preceding lesson have the perfect ending in **-uī**. But this is not true of all verbs of this conjugation. Other ways of forming the perfect are seen in the following:

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussum
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum
audeō, audēre

a. The perfect of **audeō** is omitted at this time because it is not formed like that of the other verbs above.

390. READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

MOSAIC PICTURE OF A TIGER

Quid in silvā vīdistī?
In silvā magnum animal vīdī.
Nōnne timuistī id animal?
Ita est. Id timuī.
Sōlusne in silvā erās?
Minimē. Comitem habēbam.
Quis erat comes tuus?
Comes meus erat Sextus.

Timēbatne etiam Sextus?
Ita. Sextus magnopere timēbat.
Cūr nōn patrem vocāvistī?
Eum vocāvī, sed longē aberat.
Nōnne habēbātis arma?
Fundās et parvōs lapidēs habēbāmus.
Cūr nōn animal vulnerāvistis aut necāvistis?
Parvī lapidēs magnum animal nōn necābunt.
Quis vōs servāvit?
Frāter Sextī auxilium dedit.
Habēbatne is (*see section* **275**) arma?
Longam hastam habēbat.
Necāvitne illud animal?
Animal necāvit et nōs ex perīculō servāvit.
Erisne mox in silvā iterum cum amīcō tuō?
Minimē. Pater mē in oppidō manēre jussit, et pārēbō.
Manēbitne Sextus quoque in oppidō?
Ita erit. Pater ejus eum monuit, et is quoque pārēbit.

391. VOCABULARY

comes, comitis, M., F., companion
funda, -ae, F., sling
hasta, -ae, F., spear
lapis, lapidis, M., stone
magnopere, *adv.*, greatly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

392. 1. This man's father has remained in Ireland. 2. We have not seen the cities of Spain. 3. The barbarians (have) moved camp because we were approaching. 4. We have not feared these enemies, nor do we fear them now. 5. I have not replied, nor will I reply.

Optional Drill

393. 1. Jussimus; jūvimus; juvāmus. 2. Vīdit; videt; timuit; timet. 3. Mōvimus; movēmus; mōvērunt. 4. Re-

spondimus; respondēmus; respondērunt; respondēbunt. 5. Mānsit; monuit; mōvit. 6. Puer lapidem portāvit. 7. Comitem meum vocāvī. 8. Barbarī fundās et hastās habēbant. 9. Animal magnopere mē timuit.

394. 1. We have seen; we see; we have ordered. 2. They have given; they have stood; they have helped. 3. I warned your companion. 4. The soldiers have seen the spears of the barbarians. 5. The citizens have saved the city.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

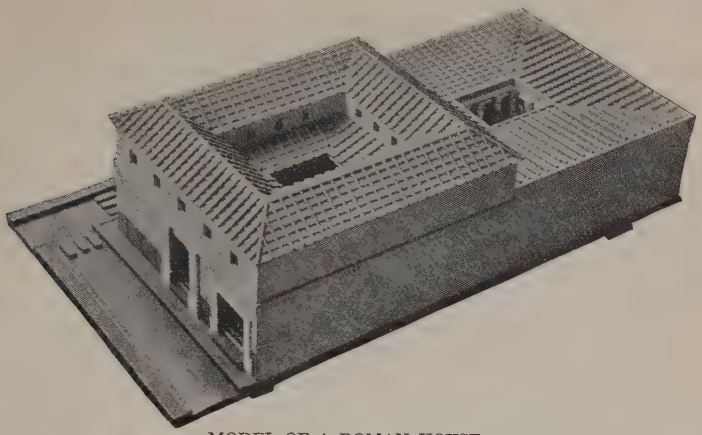
395. The word *count*, as a title of nobility, is derived from **comes.** Originally the count was the *companion* of the king.

THE ROMAN HOUSE

After Rome had come to be a great and wealthy city many of the inhabitants lived in large apartment buildings. But separate houses for families also existed. While these houses were not all alike, they were usually built in accordance with a plan which made them quite different from modern homes.

The main room, which was called the atrium, was high and had an opening in the center of the ceiling like a skylight. This opening was not closed by windows, and the rain which might come in was caught in a basin made in the floor directly below. Instead of sloping toward the outer edges, the roof usually sloped inward toward the opening, so that all the water drained into the basin in the floor. From this it was carried to a cistern or else allowed to flow off through drains into the street.

Around this central room there were usually smaller rooms which might serve as sleeping rooms or for other purposes. Sometimes an upper story was built over the outside rooms, but usually it did not extend over the central part of the house.



MODEL OF A ROMAN HOUSE

At the back of the atrium was a smaller room, called the tablinum, which might serve as a sort of office for the owner in which to keep his business records and his money chest. An open court with rooms all around it was frequently added behind the tablinum. Since this open court afforded more air than the atrium, the rooms about it were sometimes made the chief living rooms of the family. The kitchen and dining room were often located here.

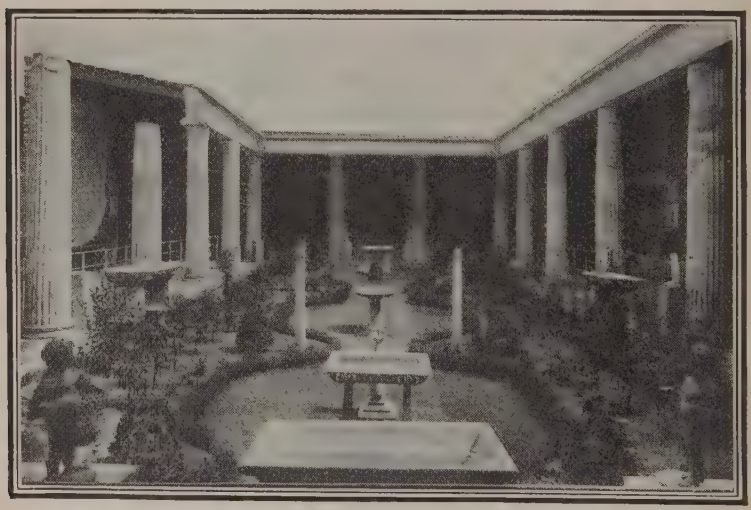
A Roman house had less furniture than most modern houses. There was no piano, and there were fewer comfortable chairs. The living room was not likely to have a bookcase or a library table on which books could be placed. There were no rugs or carpets, but sometimes the floor in a house of the better sort was of marble, ornamented with pictures or decorations made of small pieces of stone or glass or marble.

Frequently there were rooms on either side of the entrance which were used as shops. This might be true even in the houses of wealthy persons. These shops usually had their entrance only from the street and were cut off from the atrium.

They might be used as places for the sale of various kinds of articles. Sometimes, however, one or both of the rooms at the side of the entrance were connected with the atrium and made a part of the family rooms. A small room for the slave who had charge of the door might be located here.

The Roman house would seem to us less comfortable than a modern dwelling, but since the summers in Italy are rather long and hot while the winters are less severe than in our own country, it was probably more satisfactory than we might suppose.

The apartment houses also differed from those of our cities today, but we know less of their arrangement than we do of the separate homes. There were no elevators and no central system of lighting. Probably the general plan was quite different from that of a modern apartment building.



COURT OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LIII

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

396. The perfect indicative passive, unlike the other tenses which have been given, is not formed by adding person endings to a stem. Instead, the perfect passive participle is used with the present tense of the verb **sum.** Two separate words are used to represent each person and number. The perfect indicative passive of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

Singular

portā'tus sum, *I was carried* or *I have been carried*
portā'tus es, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portā'tus est, *he was carried* or *he has been carried*

Plural

portā'tī sumus, *we were carried* or *we have been carried*
portā'tī estis, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portā'tī sunt, *they were carried* or *they have been carried*

Singular

mo'nitus sum, *I was warned* or *I have been warned*
mo'nitus es, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
mo'nitus est, *he was warned* or *he has been warned*

Plural

mo'nitī sumus, *we were warned* or *we have been warned*
mo'nitī estis, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
mo'nitī sunt, *they were warned* or *they have been warned*

a. These forms are translated more frequently by the English past tense, *I was carried*, etc., than by the present perfect.

b. The participle used in forming this tense agrees with the subject in gender and number. Examples are:

Puer laudātus est, *The boy has been praised*
Puella laudāta est, *The girl has been praised*
Puerī laudātī sunt, *The boys have been praised*

READING EXERCISE

397. 1. Agrī nostrī ab hostibus vāstātī sunt, et multa oppida occupāta sunt. Auxilium ā cīvibus nostrīs populō Rōmānō in bellō ōlim datum est, et populus Rōmānus nunc nōs juvāre dēbet. Auxilium vestrum postulāmus.

2. Urbs nostra erit in (*on*) illō parvō monte. Locus idōneus est quod flūmen nōn longē abest, et ex eō flūmine aquam habēbimus. Urbs Rōma appellābitur. Circum urbem erit mūrus. Rīpa ulterior flūminis nunc est in terrā Etrūscōrum, sed illa terra mox erit Rōmāna. Centuriō noster multōs mīlitēs dūcit, et Etrūscōs superābimus. Nōmen urbis nostrae multīs gentibus nōtum erit.

398. VOCABULARY

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call, name
centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion, *a subordinate officer in the Roman army.*
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around
Etrūscī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Etruscans
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable
mōns, montis, -ium, M., mountain
nōmen, nōminis, N., name
Rōma, -ae, F., Rome
ulterior, farther

a. The passive forms of **appellō** and other words of *naming* or *calling* may have a predicate nominative, like the forms of **sum.**

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

399. 1. Our soldiers have often been praised. 2. The cities of our allies have been seized by the enemy (*plural*). 3. Your

son has not been seen. 4. But I have seen your daughter in the street. 5. The money has not been given to this man.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

400. 1. What is an *appellation?* 2. Find two compounds of **circum.** 3. What is the meaning of *nomenclature?* 4. What is an *ulterior* motive? 5. What is a *nominal* price?

VIEW OF THE PALATINE (RESTORATION)

Optional Drill

401. 1. Appellātus est; appellātī sunt; monitī sunt; vulnerātī sunt. 2. Aquam portāvimus; aqua portāta est. 3. Puella monita est; nauta monitus est. 4. Nōmen urbis; nōmina urbium; urbs nōmen clārum habet. 5. Circum montem; circum montēs; circum hōs montēs. 6. In locō idōneō; in locīs idōneīs; locum idōneum vidēmus. 7. Pecūnia data est; castra mōta sunt. 8. Puer jūtus est; oppidum dēlētum est. 9. Ulterior īnsula magnam silvam habet. 10. In summō monte est parvum oppidum. 11. Per hōs montēs saepe errāvimus. 12. Jussus sum; jussī; jūtus sum; jūvī.

402. 1. He has been praised; he has praised; he has been warned; he has warned. 2. He has been ordered; he has

ordered; they have been ordered; they have ordered. 3. They have destroyed the city; the city has been destroyed. 4. I have warned; I have remained; they have warned; they have remained. 5. The city has been called Rome. 6. The men will be called Romans. 7. The name of this mountain has always been famous. 8. This place will not be suitable.

(*a*) Rewrite the first sentence of paragraph 1, section **397**, changing the verbs to the active voice and making such other changes as are necessary.

(*b*) Conjugate **appellō** and **jubeō** in the perfect active and the perfect passive.

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XLVII-LIII

agmen, agminis	nōmen, nōminis	excitō, -āre
calamitās, -ātis	porta, -ae	expugnō, -āre
cīvis, cīvis	urbs, urbis	lateō, -ēre
comes, comitis	vāllum, -ī	prōspectō, -āre
fīnis, fīnis	vigil, vigilis	terreō, -ēre
funda, -ae	idōneus, -a, -um	crās
gēns, gentis	ignāvus, -a, -um	hūc
hasta, -ae	ulterior	magnopere
iter, itineris	vōs	procul
lapis, lapidis		
moenia, -ium	appellō, -āre	circum
mōns, montis		dē

ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT ACTIVE

Singular	*Plural*
1. **-ī,** *I*	**-imus,** *we*
2. **-istī,** *you* (singular)	**-istis,** *you* (plural)
3. **-it,** *he, she, it*	**-ērunt,** *they*

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT PASSIVE

(See section **396**)

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE PERFECT AND IMPERFECT

(See section **357**)

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

(See section **369**)

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

(See section **382**)

STEMS OF VERBS

(See section **384**)

LESSON LIV

THIRD CONJUGATION -Ō VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

403. Verbs of the third conjugation have the ending **-ere** in the present active infinitive. This ending must be distinguished from that of the second conjugation, which is **-ēre** (long **e**). There are two classes of verbs of the third conjugation, one class with the ending **-ō** and the other class with the ending **-iō** in the first person singular of the present active indicative.

Those of the first class are conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

dūcō, *I lead*

ACTIVE

Singular	*Plural*
dū′cō, *I lead*	dū′cimus, *we lead*
dū′cis, *you lead*	dū′citis, *you lead*
dū′cit, *he leads*	dū′cunt, *they lead*

PASSIVE

Singular	*Plural*
dū'cor, *I am led*	dū'cimur, *we are led*
dū'ceris, *you are led*	dūci'minī, *you are led*
dū'citur, *he is led*	dūcun'tur, *they are led*

404. The principal parts of **dūcō** and of five other verbs of this class, one or more forms of which have appeared in the previous lessons, are as follows:

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*
discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn*
edō, -ere[1], ēdī, ēsum, *eat*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *read*
ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum, *show*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write*

405. READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

A CENTURION

1. Quis illōs mīlitēs dūcit?
   Sextus eōs dūcit.
   Quis est Sextus?
   Sextus est centuriō Rōmānus; est dux bonus.
   Ā quō Gallī dūcuntur?
   Gallī ā rēge suō dūcuntur.
   Cūr Rōmānī nōn ā rēge dūcuntur?
   Rōmānī nunc rēgem nōn habent.
2. Quid in scholā discitis?
   Multa (*see section* **179**) in scholā discimus.
   Librōsne in scholā legitis?

[1]There is an irregular form of the infinitive of this verb, **ēsse**, which is more frequently used than the regular form. There are also a few irregular forms in the indicative.

Ita. Multōs librōs in scholā legimus.
Habētisne domī quoque librōs?
Domī quoque librōs habēmus et legimus.
Scrībitisne saepe in scholā?
Interdum in scholā scrībimus.
Scrībuntne semper bene puerī et puellae in scholā vestrā?
Minimē. Multī puerī et puellae male scrībunt.
Cūr eī puerī et puellae male scrībunt?
Male scrībunt quod nōn facile discunt et nōn satis labōrant.

3. Quid edit ille equus?
Ille equus frūmentum edit.
Quis frūmentum equō dat?
Agricola equō frūmentum dat.
Dantne agricolae hieme equīs multum frūmentum?
Ita. Hieme equī multum frūmentum edunt.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

406. 1. The centurions lead the Roman soldiers bravely. 2. This poet writes many books, but we do not read these books. 3. Many letters are written by these women. 4. We often read the letters of your friends. 5. Many books are read in school by these girls.

Optional Drill

407. 1. Legimus; scrībimus; dūcimus; edimus. 2. Haec animālia frūmentum nōn edunt. 3. Cūr epistulam ad patrem tuum hodiē nōn scrībis? 4. Frāter tuus librum dē Galliā et Hispāniā scrībit. 5. Epistulae ex Hiberniā ā fīliō Mārcī scrībuntur. 6. Vesperī puerī domī manent et librōs legunt. 7. Epistula tua ā sorōre meā legitur. 8. Librōs bonōs legere dēbētis. 9. Cūr hunc cibum nōn edis? 10. Verba bonī et magnī virī in hōc librō legō.

408. 1. They write; they read; they eat. 2. We lead; we see; we praise. 3. You have a good book, but you do not read your book. 4. The barbarians are led through the streets of Rome. 5. This man is writing (writes) a book about the wars of the Romans.

LESSON LV

READING EXERCISE: *BONUS DUX*

409. Illa legiō vincit, quod ducem bonum habet. Is bene dūcit, et mīlitēs hostēs nōn timent. Sed pars cōpiārum nostrārum habet alium ducem, et hī mīlitēs in perīculō sunt. Hostēs castra oppugnābunt et occupābunt. Ille dux nunc nūntium mittit, et hic nūntius auxilium postulābit. Auxilium mittere parāmus. Sine bonō duce mīlitēs in perīculō sunt. Bonus dux semper parātus est, et hostēs eum timent. Castra in locō inīquō nōn pōnit, neque mīlitēs ejus sine armīs sunt.

410. VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, another
inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger
pars, partis, -ium, F., part
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat

a. The genitive and dative singular of **alius** (like those of **sōlus** and **nūllus**) are irregular. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

411. 1. We are placing (we place) our camp between the river and the mountain. 2. The citizens send food to (**ad**) the soldiers. 3. Food is sent to the soldiers by the citizens. 4. Who leads that legion? 5. Our legion has a good leader.

ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP (RECONSTRUCTION)

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

412. 1. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *alias*[1] as an English word. 2. Give two English words from the present stem of **dūcō** and two from the participial stem. 3. What is the literal meaning of *particle?* 4. What is the difference in meaning between the verbs *convince* and *convict*, both of which are derived from **vincō?**

Optional Drill

413. 1. Mittimus; mittimur; dūcit; dūcitur; pōnunt; pōnuntur. 2. Vincō; vincor; vincitis; vinciminī; vincis; vinceris. 3. Nūntium mittimus; nūntius mittitur; nūntiī mittuntur. 4. Haec legiō; hae legiōnēs; hujus legiōnis; pars legiōnis; cum parte legiōnis. 5. In aliā parte; ex aliā parte; in locō inīquō;

[1]The form **aliās** is really a Latin adverb which is derived from the adjective **alius.**

ad locum inīquum. 6. Illa legiō vincitur quod dux ejus nōn est dux bonus. 7. Haec legiō bene dūcitur, neque hostēs ā mīlitibus timentur. 8. Mīlitēs arma post vāllum pōnunt. 9. Sociī nostrī hostēs vincunt quod arma bona habent. 10. Legiō per montēs dūcitur.

414. 1. We lead; we are led; we place; we are placed. 2. He sends; he is sent; they conquer; they are conquered. 3. The leader has another legion. 4. The king sends another messenger. 5. We send part of the soldiers from the camp. 6. The soldiers are fighting (*section* **108** *a*) in an unfavorable place. 7. The boy places his books in the cottage.

(*a*) Conjugate **pōnō, jubeō,** and **postulō** in the present tense, active voice.

(*b*) Give the third person plural of **vincō, habeō,** and **expectō** in the present tense, active and passive.

LESSON LVI

THIRD CONJUGATION *-IŌ* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

415. The present indicative of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is as follows:

capiō, *I take*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	*Singular*
ca′piō, *I take*	ca′pior, *I am taken*
ca′pis, *you take*	ca′peris, *you are taken*
ca′pit, *he takes*	ca′pitur, *he is taken*
Plural	*Plural*
ca′pimus, *we take*	ca′pimur, *we are taken*
ca′pitis, *you take*	capi′minī, *you are taken*
ca′piunt, *they take*	capiun′tur, *they are taken*

a. The only forms in which the verbs of this class differ from those of the first class in the present tense are the first person singular and the third person plural (**-iō** instead of **-ō**, and **-iunt** instead of **-unt** in the active; **-ior** instead of **-or**, and **-iuntur** instead of **-untur** in the passive).

READING EXERCISE: *CENTURIŌ CUM DUCE BARBARŌRUM PUGNAT*

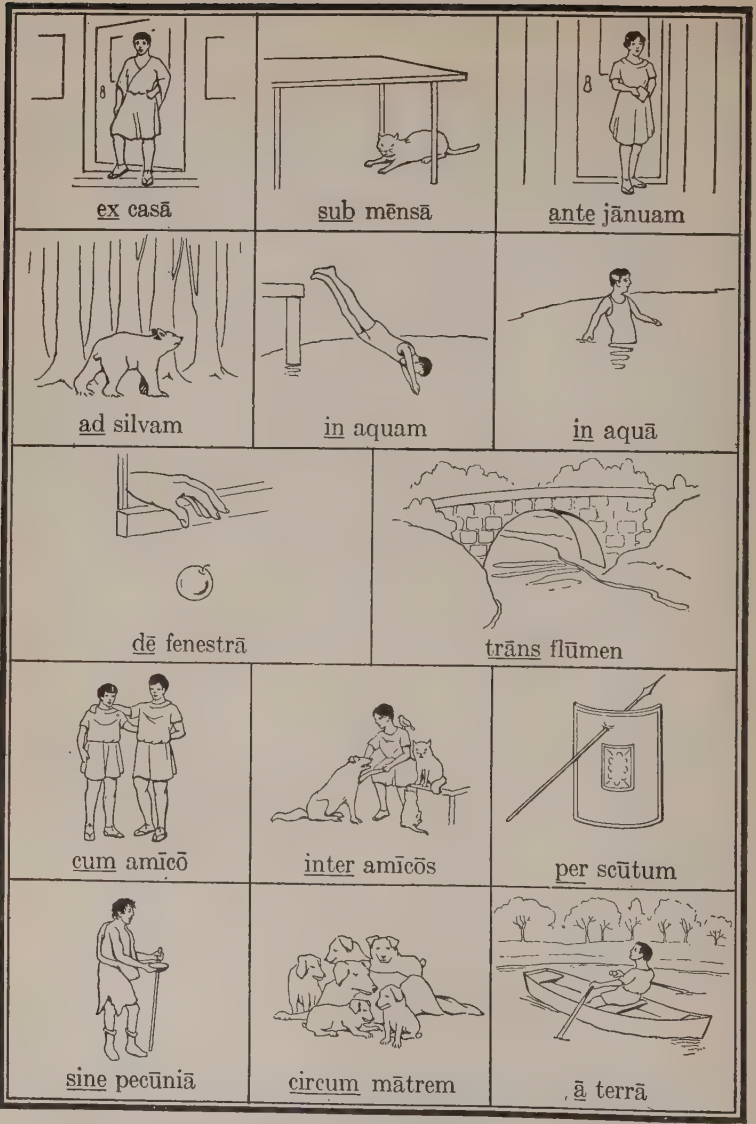
416. Centuriō Rōmānus gladium et scūtum capit et prō castrīs prōcēdit. Dux barbarōrum quoque prōcēdit. Hī duo pugnant, et centuriō ducem barbarōrum interficit. Tum mīlitēs Rōmānī centuriōnem in castra excipiunt cum magnīs clāmōribus, et imperātor eī praemium dat.

Gladium et scūtum capiō et prō castrīs prōcēdō. Cum duce barbarōrum pugnō, et eum interficiō. Tum mīlitēs et imperātor mē laudant et mihi praemium datur. Comitēs meī laetī sunt quod ita laudor. Pater meus quoque laetus erit quod bonus mīles et bonus centuriō sum.

417. VOCABULARY

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture
clāmor, -ōris, M., shout
duo, duae, duo, two
excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive
imperātor, -ōris, M., general
in, *prep. with acc.*, into, in
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, proceed, advance

a. The ablative with **in** (meaning *in* or *on*) denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. The accusative with **in** (meaning *into* or *in*) denotes the place to which motion is directed.



A PAGE OF PREPOSITIONS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

418. 1. The soldiers take swords and shields. 2. The Romans kill many barbarians. 3. We receive our leader with loud (great) shouts. 4. The centurion is received by the soldiers with loud shouts. 5. Help is not sent by the Romans.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

419. 1. What is a *clamorous* throng? 2. What is a *dual* empire? 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *emperor*. 4. Give one English word from the present stem and one from the participial stem of **prōcēdō**. What special point is to be noted in the spelling of the derivative from the present stem?

Optional Drill

420. 1. Capiunt; dūcunt; capiuntur; dūcuntur; capitur; dūcitur. 2. Centuriō capitur; centuriō interficitur. 3. Comes centuriōnis nōn capitur. 4. Mīlitēs cum clāmōribus excipiuntur. 5. Propter clāmōrēs multī timent. 6. In silvā; in silvam; in castra; in castrīs. 7. Ducēs hostium prōcēdunt. 8. Duo mīlitēs capiuntur; duo mīlitēs interficiuntur. 9. In oppidō maneō; in oppidum properō. 10. Centuriō interdum in proeliō legiōnem dūcit. 11. Propter locum inīquum legiō nōn prōcēdit.

421. 1. They kill; they receive; they are killed. 2. They take; they place; they see; they demand. 3. I receive; I conquer; I remain. 4. The centurion fights bravely. 5. The two companions are received. 6. We had good companions.

(*a*) Conjugate **interficiō** and **mittō** in the present tense, active and passive.

(*b*) Decline together **imperātor vester**.

LESSON LVII

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

422. In the preceding lessons the ablative has been used as the object of certain Latin prepositions. Sometimes, however, the ablative is used without a preposition. In the sentence **Puer saxō vulnerātus est,** *The boy was wounded by the stone,* the phrase *by the stone* is translated by the ablative **saxō,** without any preposition. In like manner, in the sentence **Gallī gladiīs pugnant,** *The Gauls fight with swords,* the ablative **gladiīs** is used without a preposition.

THE THING BY WHICH, AND THE PERSON BY WHOM OR WITH WHOM

423. The phrases *by the stone* and *with swords* in the sentences above denote the means by which or with which an act is done. In the sentences *The boy was helped by the man* and *He walks with a friend* the phrases *by the man* and *with a friend* are quite different from the preceding phrases. In the first of these sentences *by the man* denotes the person by whom the act was done, and will be translated **ā virō;** in the second *with a friend* denotes the person in company with whom an act is done and will be translated **cum amīcō.**

MEANS, AGENT, AND ACCOMPANIMENT COMPARED

424. A word used to express the means with which an act is done, as **saxō** and **gladiīs** above, is said to be in the *ablative of means.* A word denoting the person by whom an act is done is said to be in the *ablative of agent,* and a word denoting the person with whom one is associated in doing an act is said to be in the *ablative of accompaniment.* In the Latin phrases in section **423 virō** is an ablative of agent and **amīcō** is an ablative of accompaniment.

SUMMARY OF DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN MEANS, AGENT, AND ACCOMPANIMENT

425.

1. The ablative of means never has a preposition.
2. The ablative of agent always has **ā** or **ab.**
3. The ablative of accompaniment usually has **cum.**
4. The ablative of agent is used only with the passive voice.
5. The ablative of means may be used either with the active or the passive.

READING EXERCISE

426. 1. Gladiō mē dēfendō et scūtō mē tegō. Jaculum quoque habeō. Jaculum in (*at*) hostēs jaciō cum hī nōn longē absunt. Hostēs interdum jaculīs graviter vulnerantur aut interficiuntur. In capite meō est galea. Hostēs quoque gladiōs et scūta et galeās habent. Gladiī eōrum sunt longī, sed gladius meus nōn longus est. Barbarī saepe longīs hastīs pugnant. Rōmānī hastās nōn habent.

2. Barbarī nunc agrōs Etrūscōrum vāstant et Etrūscōs ē patriā expellere cupiunt. Etrūscī prō patriā pugnant. Rōma ā terrā Etrūscōrum nōn longē abest, sed Etrūscī sunt hostēs Rōmānōrum, et saepe cum eīs bellum gerunt.

3. Hī hominēs ē patriā suā expulsī sunt. Omnem pecūniam suam āmīsērunt et nunc miserī sunt.

427. VOCABULARY

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, lose
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, wish
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, defend
expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, bear, carry, carry on, wage
graviter, *adv.*, seriously, heavily
jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

428. 1. The soldier wounds the barbarian with a sword. 2. The leader of the soldiers was killed by a javelin. 3. The Gauls and Germans fought with spears. 4. The centurion protects his friend with a shield. 5. The soldier's head is protected by a helmet.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

429. 1. What is an *indefensible* attitude? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *reject* and **jaciō?** 3. What is the meaning of *cupidity?* What connection can you see between the meaning of this word and **cupiō?** 4. Find a noun derived from **expellō.**

Optional Drill

430. 1. Gladiō vulnerātus sum; ab inimīcō vulnerātus sum. 2. Mīles frātrem gladiō dēfendit; mīles cum frātre ambulat. 3. Barbarī hastīs pugnant; barbarī cum Rōmānīs pugnant. 4. Cum Etrūscīs bellum gerimus; bonīs armīs pugnāmus. 5. Hōc vāllō dēfendimur; ā mīlitibus dēfendimur. 6. Hostēs expellere cupimus; hostēs nōs expellere cupiunt. 7. Saxa ā puerō jaciuntur. 8. Vir saxīs vulnerātur. 9. Frāter tuus saxō graviter vulnerātus est. 10. Cupiunt; capiunt; cupimus; capimus; cupere; capere. 11. Jacimus; tegimus; dēfendimus; expellimus.

431. 1. He was wounded by a javelin. 2. He was wounded by a soldier. 3. The animal was killed (**necāre**) by my companion. 4. The animal was killed with a spear. 5. The general advances with the soldier. 6. The leader is protected by a large shield. 7. These barbarians carry long swords.

(*a*) Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* which if translated into Latin would require prepositions.

(*b*) Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* or *with* which would be translated into Latin without prepositions.

ROMAN BOOKS

Roman books were made in a very different way from modern books and did not look at all like them. Instead of having leaves which were fastened together so that they could be turned one after the other, the Roman book was a long roll. If we should take loose sheets of paper and paste them together side by side we should have the sort of book the Romans had.

The Latin word meaning "to roll" is *volvere*, and a book of the kind which has just been described was called a *volūmen*. Our word "volume" is from *volūmen*. While our books no longer have the form of rolls, we still keep the word which originally meant a book of that kind. When one read a Roman book he held it with both hands and kept unrolling one side as he went on reading, while he rolled up with the other hand the part he had read.

Since there were no printing presses in ancient times, all books were written by hand. When a new book was to be prepared for sale a large number of writers were set to work making the copies which were to be sold. We should expect books made in this way to be very expensive, but since the copyists were slaves the price usually was not very high. These copyists were trained to write rapidly, and they could prepare a large number of pages in a day.

The material on which Roman books were written was called *papȳrus*, a word from which we have derived "paper." This was like a heavy, coarse sort of paper, made from the inside of the stem of a plant which grew in Egypt and also in some parts of Italy. Later a kind of very thin leather called parchment came into use instead of papyrus. After the introduction of parchment the roll form of books was largely given up and a form adopted which was much like that of our modern books.

LESSON LVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *AUDIŌ*

432. The present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **-īre: audiō,** *I hear*, **audīre,** *to hear*. The present indicative is as follows:

audiō, *I hear*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	
au'diō, *I hear*	au'dior, *I am heard*
au'dīs, *you hear*	audī'ris, *you are heard*
au'dit, *he hears*	audī'tur, *he is heard*
Plural	
audī'mus, *we hear*	audī'mur, *we are heard*
audī'tis, *you hear*	audī'minī, *you are heard*
au'diunt, *they hear*	audiun'tur, *they are heard*

a. In the present indicative of the fourth conjugation, as seen above, the characteristic vowel (**ī**) is long, except in the first person singular, active and passive, the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, active and passive. The third conjugation has the corresponding vowel short.

READING EXERCISE

433. 1. Sonum multōrum pedum audiō. Hostēs appropinquant. Scūta et galeās eōrum per tenebrās videō. Castra nostra expugnāre cupiunt, sed arma parāta habēmus. Nōn sōlum prō patriā sed etiam prō vītā pugnābimus, et nōn facile superābimur. Dux noster cum multīs mīlitibus mox aderit.

et hī nōs juvābunt. Aliī mīlitēs nunc castra ā tergō mūniunt, et ea pars mox tūta erit.

2. Sonus multōrum pedum audītur. Sed castra mūniuntur, et mīlitēs Rōmānī parātī sunt. Mīlitēs sciunt numerum hostium esse magnum.

3. Hostēs sonum pedum nostrōrum audiunt. Scūta et galeās nostrās per tenebrās vident. Castra eōrum expugnāre cupimus, sed arma parāta habent, et aliī mīlitēs cum lēgātō veniunt.

434. VOCABULARY

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear
lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify
nōn sōlum . . sed etiam, not only . . but also
pēs, pedis, M., foot
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know
sonus, -ī, M., sound
tenebrae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, darkness
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

435. 1. We fortify the camp, and we prepare arms. 2. Loud (great) shouts are heard in the forest. 3. The sound of battle is heard in the streets. 4. Your brother comes alone from the house. 5. We come from a city of your allies.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

436. 1. What is an *auditorium?* 2. Give an adjective which is derived from **audiō.** 3. What are *munitions?* 4. What is a *pedestal?* Give another word from **pēs.** 5. What is the original meaning of *science?* 6. What is a *sonorous* voice?

Optional Drill

437. 1. Mūnīmus; monēmus; amāmus; mittimus. 2. Sonum audīmus; sonus audītur. 3. Sciunt; silent; stant; scrībunt. 4. In tenebrīs; ex tenebrīs; propter tenebrās. 5. Nōn sōlum

audīmus sed etiam vidēmus. 6. Quis venit? Quī veniunt? 7. Mīlitēs sonum audiunt. 8. Cūr nōn statim venītis? 9. Sciō hunc hominem esse perfidum. 10. Per tenebrās lūcem in casā videō. 11. Imperātor legiōnem oppidum mūnīre jubet.

438. 1. We hear; we know; we stand. 2. We wish to know; we wish to come. 3. This animal has small feet. 4. We invited not only your friend but also his son. 5. We are fortifying the camp with a rampart. 6. The general comes with the legion.

(*a*) Conjugate **mūniō** and **cupiō** in the present tense, active voice.

(*b*) Decline **pēs.**

(*c*) Decline **sonus.**

GIRLS PLAYING "JACKS"

LESSON LIX

THE PERFECT TENSE (Completed)

THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT ACTIVE

439. In the perfect active tense of **portō** and **moneō,** section **355,** we saw that the forms were made up of the perfect stem with special endings which were used in no other tense. The formation of this tense is the same for all verbs of the Latin language, in all conjugations, and for irregular as well as regular verbs.

There is, therefore, nothing new to learn for the perfect active of the third and fourth conjugations. We simply add the perfect endings to the perfect stem as shown in the principal parts: **dūxī,** *I led* (*I have led*), **dūxistī,** *you led* (*you have led*), etc.; **cēpī,** *I took* (*I have taken*), **cēpistī,** *you took* (*you have taken*), etc.; **audīvī,** *I heard* (*I have heard*), **audīvistī,** *you heard* (*you have heard*), etc.

THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT PASSIVE

440. The perfect passive, like the perfect active, is the same in its method of formation for all Latin verbs. As has been seen in section **396,** it consists of the perfect passive participle with the present tense forms of **sum.** It must be remembered that the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number.

The perfect passive of third and fourth conjugation verbs, therefore, is formed like that of first and second conjugation verbs: **ductus sum,** *I was led* (*I have been led*), **ductus es,** *you were led* (*you have been led*), etc.; **captus sum,** *I was taken* (*I have been taken*), **captus es,** *you were taken* (*you have been taken*), etc.; **audītus sum,** *I was heard* (*I have been heard*), **audītus es,** *you were heard* (*you have been heard*), etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

441. 1. Officium tuum neglēxistī, et praemium tibi nōn dabitur. 2. Nōmen hujus urbis clārae saepe audīvistī. 3. Ille homō ē suā patriā expulsus est, et nunc est exul. 4. Cīvēs eum in urbe manēre nōn sinunt. 5. Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī; haec erant verba clārī imperātōris Rōmānī. 6. Dux noster cōpiās usque ad mūrum urbis dūxit. 7. Ōlim haec gēns magnam potentiam inter gentēs Galliae habēbat, sed nunc potentia ejus est parva. 8. Hae nāvēs ā sociīs nostrīs missae sunt. 9. Hic annus longus vidētur quod ā patriā meā absum.

442. VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, M., year
exul, exulis, M., exile
nāvis, nāvis, F., ship
neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum, neglect
officium, -ī, N., duty
potentia, -ae, F., power
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, allow
usque, *adv.*, all the way, as far as

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

443. 1. I have not neglected my friends, but they sometimes neglect me. 2. You will remain because this is your duty. 3. The exiles have sent letters to (**ad**) their friends. 4. The general has come, and the city has been fortified. 5. The legion was led to the mountains.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

444. We say that a meeting which is held every year is an *annual* meeting. In early times the writing of history was merely the recording of the events of each year and so the word *annals* was given to such records. Later the word came to mean historical accounts of any sort. An *annuity* is a sum of money which is paid each year. The abbreviation *A.D.* which is used with dates is for **annō Dominī,** *in the year of our Lord.*

Optional Drill

445. 1. Hujus annī; illīus annī; illōrum annōrum. 2. Cēpit; captus est; captī sunt. 3. Bellum gessimus; bellum gestum est; bella gesta sunt. 4. Vēnimus; venīmus; vēnit; venit. 5. Rōmānī sociōs nōn neglēxērunt. 6. Rōmānī ā sociīs nōn neglēctī sunt. 7. Sonum audīvimus; sonus audītus est. 8. Imperātor epistulam mīsit. 9. Nōn sōlum audītis, sed etiam audīvistis. 10. Oppidum mūnītum est; castra mūnīta sunt.

446. 1. The ships of the enemy have been captured. 2. We have captured the ships of the enemy. 3. The citizens have defended the city. 4. The city has been defended by the citizens. 5. The shouts of the soldiers have been heard.

(*a*) Conjugate **neglegō** in the perfect active.

(*b*) Conjugate **mittō** in the perfect passive.

(*c*) Give the third person singular of **vincō** in the present and the perfect, active and passive.

A ROMAN AMPHITHEATER IN FRANCE

ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LIV - LIX

annus, -ī
centuriō, -ōnis
clāmor, clāmōris
exul, exulis
imperātor, -ōris
lēgātus, -ī
legiō, -ōnis
nāvis, nāvis
nūntius, -ī
officium, -ī
pars, partis
pēs, pedis
potentia, -ae
sonus, -ī
tenebrae, -ārum

alius, -a, -ud
inīquus, -a, -um

duo

āmittō, -mittere
audiō, -īre
capiō, -ere
cupiō, -ere
dēfendō, -ere
dūcō, -ere
excipiō, -ere
expellō, -ere
gerō, -ere
interficiō, -ere

jaciō, -ere
mittō, -ere
mūniō, -īre
neglegō, -ere
pōnō, -ere
prōcēdō, -ere
sciō, scīre
sinō, -ere
tegō, -ere
veniō, -īre
vincō, -ere

graviter
usque

THIRD CONJUGATION

Present active infinitive termination, **-ere**
(Present indicative, **-ō** verbs, see section **403**)
(Present indicative, **-iō** verbs, see section **415**)

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Present active infinitive termination, **-īre**
(Present indicative, see section **432**)

PERFECT TENSE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

(See sections **439, 440**)

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

(See section **424**)

LESSON LX

IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

447. The tense sign of the imperfect indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **-bā-**, as in the first and second conjugations. The imperfect indicative of **dūcō** is formed exactly like the same tense of **moneō**, with (long) **ē** before **-bā.** Verbs of the fourth conjugation have **-iē-** before the tense sign.

dūcēbam, *I was leading* audiēbam, *I was hearing*
dūcēbar, *I was being led* audiēbar, *I was being heard*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
		Singular	
dūcē′bam	dūcē′bar	audiē′bam	audiē′bar
dūcē′bās	dūcēbā′ris	audiē′bās	audiēbā′ris
dūcē′bat	dūcēbā′tur	audiē′bat	audiēbā′tur
		Plural	
dūcēbā′mus	dūcēbā′mur	audiēbā′mus	audiēbā′mur
dūcēbā′tis	dūcēbā′minī	audiēbā′tis	audiēbā′minī
dūcē′bant	dūcēban′tur	audiē′bant	audiēban′tur

a. The imperfect of **capiō** and other **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is formed exactly like the imperfect of the fourth conjugation: **capiēbam, capiēbās,** etc.

READING EXERCISE

448. 1. In rīpā flūminis jacēbam et aquam spectābam. Flūmen celeriter fluēbat. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbat. Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore cēnam parābant.

2. In rīpā flūminis jaceō et aquam spectō. Flūmen celeriter fluit. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormit.

Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore cēnam parant. Cēna mox parāta erit, et māter mea mē vocābit. Tum frātrem ex somnō excitābō, et ad cēnam properābimus.

3. Frāter meus in rīpā flūminis jacēbat et aquam spectābat. Aqua celeriter fluēbat. Nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbam. Cēna ā mātre nostrā et sorōribus nostrīs sub arbore parābātur.

449. VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, F., tree
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flow
grāmen, grāminis, N., grass
jaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie
māter, mātris, F., mother
somnus, -ī, M., sleep
sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under

a. When used in expressions which denote motion **sub** takes the accusative; when used in expressions which denote rest or existence it takes the ablative.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

450. 1. The boy was sleeping on the bank of the river. 2. Sounds were (being) heard from the forest. 3. The Romans were fortifying their camp with a wall. 4. We were defending our country by arms. 5. The centurion was leading the legion in battle. 6. The Etruscans were waging war with the Germans.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

451. 1. What is meant by *arboreal* animals? 2. What is a *dormant* condition? 3. Give a noun which is derived from **dormiō.** 4. What is the relation in meaning between *fluid* and **fluō?** 5. What is the literal meaning of *subscribe?*

Optional Drill

452. 1. Dūcēbat; audiēbat; veniēbat; dēfendēbat; mittēbat. 2. Dormiunt; dormiēbant; mittunt; mittēbant; cupiunt; cupiēbant. 3. Cōpiae mittēbantur. 4. Arma ex eō locō celeriter movēbantur. 5. Parvum animal in grāmine jacēbat. 6. Sub arbore stābam. 7. Hoc flūmen per magnam silvam fluit. 8. Legiō ex castrīs prōcēdēbat. 9. Barbarī oppida Rōmānōrum capiēbant. 10. Mīlitēs nostrī in Eurōpā bellum gerēbant. 11. Hostēs tum incolās ejus terrae expellēbant. 12. Multa tēla jaciēbantur.

453. 1. We were leading; we were being led; we were hearing; we were being heard. 2. The town was being defended bravely. 3. The centurion was coming swiftly. 4. The sentinel arouses the soldiers from sleep. 5. The weapons were lying in the grass. 6. Your brothers are sleeping under the trees. 7. The river flows from that mountain.

(*a*) Conjugate **vocō, jubeō, capiō,** and **mūniō** in the imperfect tense, passive voice.

(*b*) Decline **arbor.**

(*c*) Decline **grāmen.**

THE COLOSSEUM

LESSON LXI

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

454. Quod aedificium hīc vidētis?

Colossēum Rōmānum vidēmus.

Quō nōmine Rōmānī ferē hoc aedificium appellābant?

Rōmānī ferē hoc aedificium amphitheātrum Flāvium appellābant.

Cūr id nōmen huic aedificiō est datum?

Ab imperātōre (*emperor*) Rōmānō, Flāviō Vespāsiānō, et fīliīs ejus aedificātum est.

Eratne Vespāsiānus imperātor clārus?

Ita erat. Multa bella gessit et hostēs Rōmānōrum superāvit. Etiam in Britanniā bellum gessit.

Quid in Colossēō factum est?

Ibi hominēs cum hominibus aut cum animālibus pugnābant.

Suntne interfectī hominēs in hīs pugnīs?

Multī hominēs in hīs pugnīs vulnerātī sunt, multī interfectī sunt.

Sed cūr hominēs ita pugnābant?

Multī Rōmānī hās pugnās spectāre cupiēbant.

Erantne in aliīs urbibus quoque amphitheātra?

Ita. Amphitheātra in urbibus Italiae et Galliae et aliārum terrārum aedificāta sunt.

Pugnābantne hominēs cum hominibus etiam in hīs amphitheātrīs?

Etiam in hīs amphitheātrīs hominēs pugnābant cum hominibus.

Quō nōmine illī hominēs appellātī sunt?

Illī hominēs erant *gladiātōrēs*.

Erantne gladiātōrēs cīvēs Rōmānī?

Minimē. Erant barbarī aut servī. Interdum in bellō captī erant.

455. VOCABULARY

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build

amphitheātrum, -ī, N., amphitheater

Colossēum, -ī, N., the Colosseum

faciō,[1] **-ere, fēcī, factum,** do, make

ferē, *adv.*, generally; almost

Flāvius, -a, -um, Flavian

Flāvius Vespāsiānus, *the name of a Roman emperor commonly known as* Vespasian

gladiātor, -ōris, M., a gladiator

pugna, -ae, F., fight, combat

OPTIONAL DRILL

456. Write Latin sentences in answer to the following:

1. Quis Colossēum aedificāvit? 2. In quā īnsulā Vespāsiānus bellum gessit? 3. Quī in Colossēō cum animālibus pugnābant? 4. In quā terrā est Colossēum? 5. Statne etiam hodiē Colossēum?

[1]The passive of **faciō** is wanting in the present, imperfect, and future. These missing tenses are replaced by an irregular verb, the forms of which are not used in this book. The other tenses of **faciō** are regularly formed in the passive.

LESSON LXII

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE

457. In the sentence *He defends himself*, the object, *himself*, denotes the same person as the subject of the sentence. A pronoun which is thus used is called a *reflexive pronoun*. The reflexive pronoun is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative case to denote the same person as the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

REFLEXIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

458. The reflexive pronoun meaning *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves* is as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
GEN.	suī	suī
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē
ABL.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē

a. The reflexives for *myself, yourself* (*yourselves*), *ourselves*, are the same as the words meaning *me, you, us*, in the different cases given above. **Mē nōn laudō,** *I do not praise myself;* **Tē nōn laudās,** *You do not praise yourself.* The accusative forms of these words have been given in previous vocabularies, and the other forms will be seen later.

READING EXERCISE

459. 1. Mīlitēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendunt, sed hostēs eōs premunt. Nisi auxilium dabitur, mox hostēs eōs superābunt. Mīlitēs putant sē in magnō perīculō esse. Sed cōnsul perīculum videt et duās[1] aliās legiōnēs mittit. Cōnsul dux bonus est, neque officium suum umquam neglegit.

[1]Duās is the feminine accusative of duo.

2. Mīlitēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendēbant sed hostēs eōs premēbant. Cōnsul dux bonus erat, neque officium neglegēbat. Mīlitēs perīculum vidēbant, sed putābant sē tūtōs esse quod duae aliae legiōnēs veniēbant.

3. Numerus noster nōn est magnus, sed fortiter pugnābimus. Tūtī sumus quod ducem bonum habēmus. Aliae legiōnēs jam appropinquant, et hostēs superābimus.

460. VOCABULARY

cōnsul, cōnsulis, M., consul
jam, *adv.*, now, already
nisi, *conj.*, unless
numerus, -ī, M., number
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press, press hard
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think
suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves
umquam, *adv.*, ever

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

461. 1. Our allies were defending themselves, but they were demanding our aid. 2. My friend thinks himself to be in danger. 3. The leader of the enemy kills himself. 4. The boy wounds himself with a sword. 5. The boy defends himself bravely, but he is in great danger.

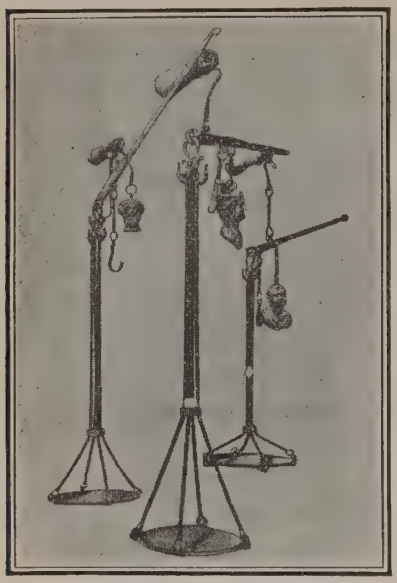
ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

462. 1. What is a *consul*, as a modern government official? What was the nature of the duties of a Roman consul? 2. From which stem of **premō** do we have English derivatives? 3. What is a *numeral?* 4. What is the meaning of the phrase *ex officio*[1]*?*

Optional Drill

463. 1. Sē laudat; sē laudant; mē laudō. 2. Sē cēlābant; sē cēlābat; tē cēlābās. 3. Quid putās? Quid putant? 4.

[1]This phrase when used in English is pronounced *ex offishio.*



ROMAN SCALES

Putant sē tūtōs esse. 5. Putat sē tūtum esse. 6. Officium meum nōn neglegō; officium nostrum nōn neglegimus. 7. Neque cōnsul officium suum (*section* **307**) umquam neglegit. 8. Cōnsul magnum numerum mīlitum habet. 9. Nisi auxilium dabis, superābimur. 10. Amīcōs tuōs neglegēbās. 11. Mīlitēs Rōmānī ab hostibus premēbantur. 12. Comitēs meī sē dēfendēbant. 13. Multae epistulae mittēbantur. 14. Castra tum mūniēbantur.

464. 1. He wounds himself; they wound themselves; you (*singular*) wound yourself. 2. He wishes to defend himself. 3. We do not wish to defend him. 4. He saves himself; they save themselves. 5. This man loves himself. 6. He conceals himself; you conceal yourselves. 7. We conceal ourselves. 8. We saw a large number of small animals. 9. This man neglects his son. 10. Rome then had brave consuls.

(*a*) Conjugate **premō** in the imperfect and the perfect tenses, active voice.

(*b*) Decline together the words for *this duty*.

(*c*) Write the third person singular of **neglegō** in the present, imperfect, and perfect of the active voice.

LESSON LXIII

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

465. Verbs of the third and fourth conjugations are conjugated as follows in the future:

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	*Singular*
dū′cam, *I shall lead*	dū′car, *I shall be led*
dū′cēs, *you will lead*	dūcē′ris, *you will be led*
dū′cet, *he will lead*	dūcē′tur, *he will be led*
Plural	*Plural*
dūcē′mus, *we shall lead*	dūcē′mur, *we shall be led*
dūcē′tis, *you will lead*	dūcē′minī, *you will be led*
dū′cent, *they will lead*	dūcen′tur, *they will be led*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
ca′piam	capiē′mus	ca′piar	capiē′mur
ca′piēs	capiē′tis	capiē′ris	capiē′minī
ca′piet	ca′pient	capiē′tur	capien′tur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
au′diam	audiē′mus	au′diar	audiē′mur
au′diēs	audiē′tis	audiē′ris	audiē′minī
au′diet	au′dient	audiē′tur	audien′tur

TENSE SIGN OF THE FUTURE

466. We have seen that in the first and second conjugations the tense sign of the future is **-bi-**. In the third and fourth conjugations the future tense sign is **-ē-**, which is replaced by **-a-** in the first person singular. The **ē** becomes short before the person endings **-t, -nt,** and **-ntur.**

READING EXERCISE: *LOCUS CASTRŌRUM*

467. Castra nostra nōn longē ab illō monte pōnēmus. Castra vāllō mūniēmus, quod hostēs nōn longē absunt. Castella erunt, et vigilēs ex castellīs spectābunt. Arma parāta habēbimus, et sī hostēs ad castra venient, eōs repellēmus. Rēx hostium cōpiās suās dūcit et magnum numerum sociōrum habet. Hī sociī sunt barbarī.

Explōrātōrēs nostrī in silvā latent et iter hostium spectant. Inter castra nostra et hostēs est flūmen altum, et hostēs nūllās nāvēs habent. Sed nōn longē ab hōc locō est pōns in flūmine. Mīlitēs nostrī hunc pontem fēcērunt, sed posteā ex eō locō repulsī sunt, et hostēs nunc ad rīpam nostram appropinquant.

468. VOCABULARY

castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt
explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout
pōns, pontis, -ium, M., bridge
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repel
sī, *conj.*, if

COMPLETION EXERCISE

469. 1. Explōrātōrēs cōpiās nostrās per silvam dūc— (*will lead*). 2. Multī mīlitēs in proeliō interfici— (*will be killed*). 3. Sonum proeliī ex hōc locō audi— (*we shall hear*). 4. Nūntius ad oppidum statim mittē—. 5. Cōnsul perīculum vidē— (*will see*), sed officium suum nōn negleg— (*will not neglect*).

FORTIFYING A ROMAN CAMP

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

470. 1. What is a *castle?* What do you suppose was originally the chief characteristic of such a building? 2. What is the difference between the meaning of *repellent* and *repulsive?*

Optional Drill

471. 1. Dūcēmus; audiēmus; capiēmus; faciēmus; repellēmus. 2. Putābit; vidēbit; dūcet; capiet; audiet. 3. Facit; faciet; fēcit; faciunt; facient; fēcērunt. 4. Explōrātōrēs veniunt; explōrātōrēs venient. 5. Hostēs repelluntur; hostēs repellentur. 6. Castellum mūniēmus; castellum dēfendēmus. 7. Posteā nāvēs faciēmus. 8. Posteā pontem faciēmus. 9. Explōrātōrēs inter arborēs sē cēlant. 10. Hostēs in silvā latent. 11. Barbarī repellēbantur; barbarī repulsī sunt. 12. Legiō per hōs montēs dūcētur. 13. Explōrātōrēs missī sunt; explōrātōrēs mittentur. 14. Hic pōns ā mīlitibus nostrīs factus est.

472. 1. They will lead; they will take; he will hear. 2. He will be led; he will be taken; they will be heard. 3. You (*singular*) make; you will make; you hear; you will hear. 4. The fort is defended; the fort will be defended. 5. We send scouts; we shall send scouts. 6. They will make ships; they are making ships. 7. They were making large ships.

(*a*) Give the third person singular of **habeō, faciō,** and **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the active voice.

(*b*) Give the present active infinitives of **laudō, moveō, mittō, mūniō,** with their meanings.

WORD STUDY VI

USE OF SUFFIXES

A suffix is a word element standing at the end of the word or at the end of the original element of the word. Thus in *conqueror* the syllable *-or* is a suffix.

It is not always easy to give definite meanings to suffixes. Usually they are not found as separate words but are only employed to give special meaning to the words of which they are a part.

THE SUFFIX *-TĀS*

From **cīvis,** *citizen,* there was formed another noun, **cīvitās.** This derived noun denoted the condition of a citizen, that is, *citizenship.* It was also used to denote the group of persons possessing citizenship and so came to mean *state.* In changed form it has come down to us as *city.* Similarly from **līber,** *free,* the noun **lībertās,** *freedom,* was formed. The suffix **-tās** usually denoted *quality* or *condition.* The condition of being *free* (**līber**) was *freedom* (**lībertās**). This suffix appears in English as *-ty.* It is to be seen in such words as *liberty,*

nobility, calamity, facility, opportunity, stability, humility, and many others.

THE SUFFIX *-ĀLIS*

The suffix **-ālis,** which usually gave the meaning *belonging to* or *connected with,* was often employed to form adjectives, and sometimes to form nouns. In English derivatives it appears as *-al.* Examples of English words with this suffix are *annual, national, equal, liberal, mortal.* The noun *animal* also has this suffix.

THE SUFFIX *-BILIS*

We have many words ending in *-able, -ible,* or *-ble* in which the suffix has the general sense of *able to be,* or *that may be* or *fit to be.* These come from Latin **-bilis.** Since this was often used in Latin words which had **a** or **i** before the suffix it developed in later use the forms *-able* and *-ible* as well as *-ble.* The Latin adjective **amābilis,** which has been seen in Word Study I, page 56, was formed from **amō** with this prefix. Other examples of English words are *culpable,* deserving to be blamed (**culpāre,** *to blame*), *credible,* that may be believed (**crēdere,** *to believe*), *tangible,* that can be touched (**tangere,** *to touch*).

THE SUFFIX *-ŌSUS*

The adjective **perīculōsus,** *dangerous, abounding in danger,* belongs to a rather important group. The suffix **-ōsus,** denoting fullness, is seen as *-ous* or *-ose* in many English words. Such are *copious, bellicose, seditious, sumptuous.*

THE SUFFIX *-TOR*

Words ending in **-tor** denote a person who does an act. Thus *victor,* one who conquers, *captor,* one who captures.

Often these words appear in the same form in Latin and in English. Examples are *orator* and *dictator.*

There are numerous other suffixes used in the formation of

Latin words, many of which appear in English. Some of these English suffixes have changed greatly from their Latin form because they have come through French, and in careless pronunciation they had been greatly changed from their earlier form.

LESSON LXIV

REVIEW OF PRESENT INFINITIVES

PRESENT INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

473. The present infinitives of the four conjugations of the regular verbs are formed as follows:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	portāre, *to carry*	portārī, *to be carried*
II.	monēre, *to warn*	monērī, *to be warned*
III.	dūcere, *to lead*	dūcī, *to be led*
	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
IV.	audīre, *to hear*	audīrī, *to be heard*

a. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final **-e** of the active endings (**-āre, -ēre, -īre**) is replaced by **-ī** in the passive; in the third conjugation the entire ending (**-ere**) is replaced by **-ī.**

READING EXERCISE: POMPEII

474. In hāc pictūrā viam parvae urbis Italiae vidēs. Ea urbs est Pompeiī. Ōlim ea urbs flōrēbat et multōs incolās habēbat, sed nunc dēserta est. Omnia aedificia in magnā calamitāte dīrūta sunt. Tēcta et templa concidērunt, et multī ex incolīs vītam āmīsērunt. Nunc hominēs ex nostrā terrā et ex aliīs terrīs ad hunc locum veniunt quod ruīnās ejus urbis vidēre cupiunt. Ex hīs ruīnīs multa (*see section* **179**) dē vītā Rōmānōrum discimus.

Dē hāc urbe multī librī in nostrā linguā scrīptī sunt. Ūnus

ex hīs librīs fābulam fictam habet dē hominibus et fēminīs hujus urbis. Quis nōmen ejus librī dabit? Quis eum librum scrīpsit?

A STREET OF POMPEII

475. VOCABULARY

concidō, -ere, concidī, collapse, fall in ruins

dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted

dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rūtum, destroy

fictus, -a, -um, fictitious

flōreō, -ēre, -uī, flourish, be prosperous

Pompeiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, Pompeii, *a city of ancient Italy*

ruīna, -ae, F. (*often in the plural*), ruins

ūnus, -a, -um, one

a. The genitive and dative of **ūnus,** like the same cases of **sōlus,** are irregular and are not used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

476. 1. To move; to be moved; I have moved. 2. To lose; to be lost; I have lost. 3. To be called; to be ordered; to be thrown. 4. The men will lose money. 5. The soldiers will place the camp between the forest and the river.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

477. From **ūnus** we have *unify*, *unite*, *unity*, *union*, and a few other words. The motto of the United States, **Ē plūribus ūnum,** means literally *One from many*—that is, one (nation) made up of many parts. The American colonies were originally independent of one another, and when they combined to form the United States they adopted this motto as indicating the manner in which the new nation had been formed.

Optional Drill

478. 1. Capient; capiunt; capientur; capiuntur. 2. Laudārī; timērī; mūnīrī. 3. Mittī; mīsī; mittere. 4. Gerere; gerī; gessī. 5. Neglegī; neglēxī; neglegere. 6. Vincere; vincī; vīcī. 7. Expellere; expulī; expellī. 8. Dux noster ex castrīs prōcēdet. 9. Bellum cum hāc gente gerētur. 10. Gallī Rōmānōs ex hāc terrā nōn expellent.

A ROMAN TOMB IN FRANCE

479. 1. I shall send this book to you at once. 2. We shall often hear about (**dē**) this city. 3. The danger will be great, and many citizens will lose their lives (*singular*). 4. You will learn much (**multa**) about the life of the Romans in this book. 5. The enemy will destroy the wall of the city.

TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LX-LXIV

amphitheātrum, -ī
arbor, arboris
castellum, -ī
cōnsul, cōnsulis
explōrātor, -ōris
gladiātor, -ōris
grāmen, grāminis
māter, mātris
numerus, -ī
pōns, pontis
pugna, -ae
ruīna, -ae
somnus, -ī

suī

dēsertus, -a, -um
fictus, -a, -um
ūnus, -a, -um

aedificō, -āre
concidō, -ere
dīruō, -ere
dormiō, -īre
faciō, -ere
flōreō, -ēre
fluō, -ere
jaceō, -ēre
premō, -ere
putō, -āre
repellō, -ere

celeriter
ferē
jam
umquam
posteā
sub

nisi
sī

INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

(See section **473**)

IMPERFECT TENSE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

(See section **447**)

FUTURE TENSE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

(See section **465**)

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

(See section **458**)

LESSON LXV

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

MEANING AND USE OF THE RELATIVE

480. In the sentence *The man who lives in that house is a lawyer*, there are two clauses, *The man is a lawyer* and *who lives in that house*. The clause with *who* is not a question, but is almost equivalent to the statement *He lives in that house*. The word *who* serves to connect the two clauses and it is also a pronoun with *man* as its antecedent. A pronoun thus used is a relative pronoun.

THE ENGLISH RELATIVE

481. The English relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, and *that*. We use *who* to refer to persons, as in the sentence given in the preceding paragraph, and *which* to refer to things. Thus, *The building which you see is a theater*. We may use *that* for either persons or things. Thus, *The man that lives there is a lawyer; The building that you see is a theater*. We have previously seen *that* used as a pronoun of a different kind, but it is a relative when it can be replaced by *who* or *which*.

482. The forms of the Latin relative pronoun are as follows:

	Singular			
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	*who, which*
Gen.	cujus	cujus	cujus	*whose, of whom, of which*
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	*to whom, to which, whom* (as indir. obj.)
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	*whom, which*
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	(*from, by, in, with*) *whom, which*, etc.

	Plural			
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	*who, which*
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	*whose, of whom, of which*
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to whom, to which, whom* (as indir. obj.)
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	*whom, which*
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	(*from, by, in, with*) *whom, which*

a. As explained in section **481,** *that* will frequently be used in translation instead of *who, whom,* or *which.*

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

483. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō quem vidēs amīcus meus est, *The man whom you see is my friend.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

484. 1. Dux quī nunc est in castrīs est dux bonus; ducēs quī nunc sunt in castrīs sunt ducēs bonī. 2. Puer cujus patrem vidēs est amīcus meus; puerī quōrum patrem vidēs sunt amīcī meī. 3. Oppidum in quō habitō est parvum; urbs in quā habitās est magna. 4. Legiō quae missa est urbem dēfendet; legiō quam dux mīsit urbem dēfendet. 5. Explōrātor ā quō sonus audītus est mīlitēs monuit; explōrātōrēs ā quibus sonus audītus est mīlitēs monuērunt. 6. Nūntius cui epistula data est appropinquat; nūntiī quibus epistulae datae sunt appropinquant.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

485. Write the Latin for the italicized words in the following sentences: 1. The *boy who* has the letter is your brother. 2. The *boy whom* I saw is your brother. 3. The *boy by whom* the

stone was thrown stands in the street. 4. The *woman who* warned the boy is your mother. 5. The *woman by whom* the boy was warned is your mother. 6. The *woman whom* you see is the girl's mother. 7. The *fort which* we took was on a hill. 8. The *fort which* was taken was on a hill.

Optional Drill

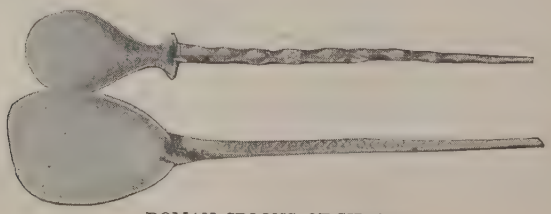
486. 1. Īnsula quam vidēs est Sicilia. 2. Is vir cujus pictūram habeō erat magnus imperātor. 3. Montēs per quōs iter fēcimus sunt altī. 4. Eae puellae quārum frātrēs sunt mīlitēs in castra venient. 5. Mīlitēs quī bellum in Galliā gessērunt eam terram iterum vidēre cupiunt. 6. Flūmen in quō natāmus est lātum sed nōn altum. 7. Hominēs ā quibus haec nāvis aedificāta est sunt servī. 8. Urbēs ex quibus patrēs nostrī vēnērunt sunt in Eurōpā.

487. In the following sentences give the gender and number in which the relative pronouns would stand in Latin: 1. The consul who has been elected is an honest man. 2. The tree which stands by the river is very old. 3. The spear with which I was wounded is sharp. 4. The legion which was sent to Africa is composed of veterans. 5. The ship in which we crossed the ocean is new. 6. The bird which was caught is an eagle.

(*a*) Decline the interrogative pronoun in the singular.

(*b*) Give the genitive singular of **is** and **quī**.

(*c*) Explain the case of the relative pronouns in the first four sentences of section **484**.



ROMAN SPOONS OF SILVER

LESSON LXVI

READING EXERCISE: *URBS RŌMA*

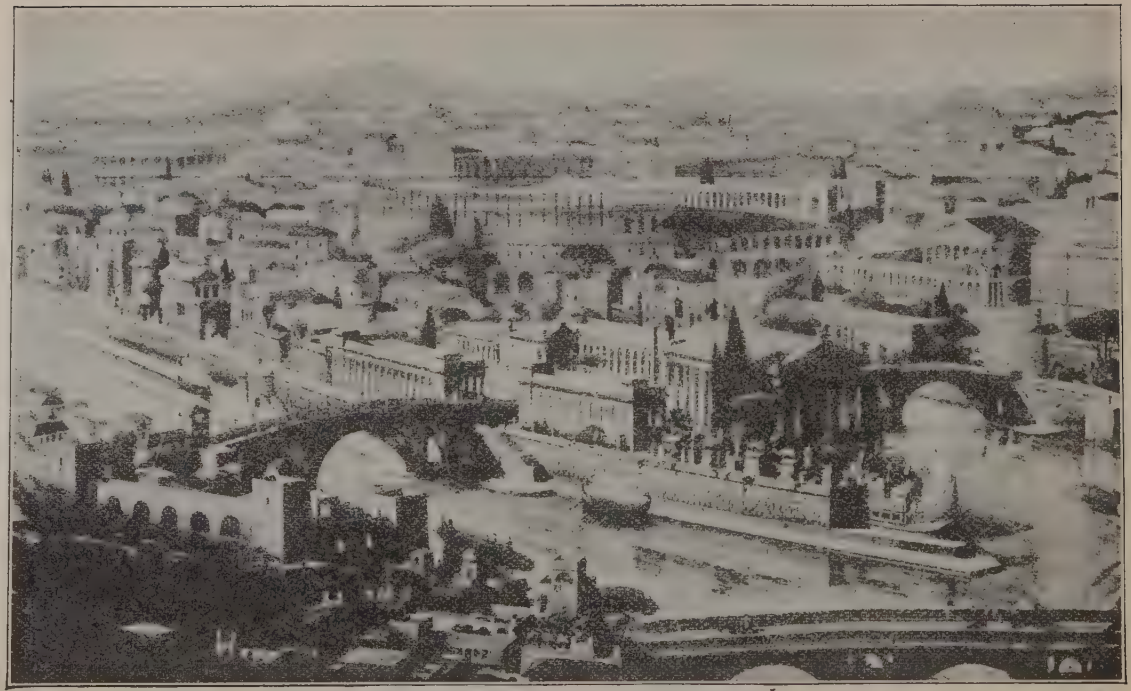
488. Rōma est magna urbs Italiae. Flūmen Tiberis urbem in duās partēs dīvidit. Antīquitus tōta urbs erat in ūnā rīpā flūminis, et trāns flūmen erant agrī et tēcta agricolārum. Sed nunc aedificia in utrīsque partibus vidēmus. Intrā mūrōs sunt septem collēs. Ōlim Rōma erat parvum oppidum, et ūnum collem habēbat. Is collis, in quō prīma urbs erat, nōmen Palātium habet. In Palātiō erant tēcta in quibus rēgēs et multī virī clārī habitābant.

Magna urbs quam vidēs est Rōma. Eī quī in eā urbe habitant sunt Rōmānī. Flūmen quod urbem in duās partēs dīvidit est Tiberis. Collis in quō rēgēs et virī clārī tēcta habēbant est Palātium. Hominēs quōrum agrī et casae antīquitus trāns flūmen erant interdum cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant. Ille rēx cujus mīlitēs prīmī Rōmam cēpērunt erat barbarus. Sed posteā barbarī superātī sunt ā Rōmānīs.

489. VOCABULARY

antīquitus, *adv.*, long ago, in former times
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide
intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within
Palātium, -ī, N., the Palatine Hill
prīmus, -a, -um, first
septem, seven
Tiberis, Tiberis, M., the Tiber (*river*)
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (*of two*), both

a. The genitive and dative of **uterque,** like the corresponding forms of **ūnus,** are not formed in accordance with the regular declension of adjectives. They do not appear in the exercises of this book.



VIEW OF ANCIENT ROME (RESTORATION)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

490. Give the form of the Latin relative pronoun for the italicized words in the following exercise, then translate the sentences into Latin: 1. That city *which* you see is Rome. 2. The river *which* divides Rome into two parts is the Tiber. 3. The town *to which* Romulus gave a name was small. 4. The man *whose* house you see is my brother. 5. The messengers *whom* the general sent have been captured.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

491. 1. What is meant by *antiquity?* 2. Give three English derivatives from the participial stem of **dīvidō.** 3. What are *intramural* athletics? 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *palace.*

Optional Drill

492. 1. Is quī (*he who*) prīmus ex nāve venit est frāter Sextī. 2. Flūmen in quō Rōmānī saepe natābant est Tiberis. 3. Ille imperātor quī hoc templum aedificāvit bellum in Britanniā gessit. 4. Vigilēs ā quibus hostēs vīsī sunt statim aliōs mīlitēs excitāvērunt. 5. Locus in quō castra posuistis nōn est idōneus. 6. Oppida ex quibus vēnimus longē absunt. 7. Hominēs quōrum clāmōrēs audīvimus magnopere territī sunt. 8. Urbs in quā habitō multōs cīvēs bonōs habet.

493. 1. We shall place the camp on the hill which you see. 2. My sister has the book which you gave me. 3. The soldiers whom you saw on the hill are not Gauls. 4. The legions which are now in Gaul will be sent into Italy.

(*a*) Point out the relative pronouns in the second paragraph of section **488.**

(*b*) Write the present and future of **dīvidō** in the active voice.

(*c*) Give the present passive infinitives of **dīvidō, terreō,** and **appellō.**

LESSON LXVII

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

494.

1. Ubi est urbs Rōma?
   Urbs Rōma est in Italiā.
2. Quod flūmen per Rōmam fluit?
   Flūmen Tiberis per Rōmam fluit.
3. Quāle flūmen est Tiberis?
   Tiberis est flūmen altum et lātum.
4. Quot collēs sunt intrā mūrōs?
   Sunt septem collēs intrā mūrōs.
5. In quō colle erat urbs antīquitus?
   Antīquitus urbs erat in Palātiō.
6. Quī posteā in Palātiō habitābant?
   Multī virī clārī in Palātiō habitābant.

VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

7. In quot partēs urbs dīvīsa est?
Urbs in duās partēs dīvīsa est.
8. Quī antīquitus agrōs et casās trāns flūmen habēbant?
Etrūscī agrōs et casās trāns flūmen habēbant.
9. Erantne (*see section* **118**) Etrūscī amīcī et sociī populī Rōmānī?
Minimē; Etrūscī erant hostēs populī Rōmānī.
10. Quālis pōns antīquitus in flūmine Tibere erat?
Antīquitus erat pōns sublicius in flūmine Tibere.
11. Quī ōlim Rōmam cēpērunt?
Barbarī ōlim Rōmam cēpērunt et magnam partem urbis dēlēvērunt.
12. Quī erant eī barbarī quī urbem cēpērunt?
Barbarī quī urbem cēpērunt erant Gallī.
13. Cūr Rōmānī urbem nōn dēfendērunt?
Rōmānī tum nōn satis magnum numerum mīlitum habēbant.
14. Quī posteā Gallōs superāvērunt?
Rōmānī Gallōs posteā superāvērunt et multa oppida eōrum occupāvērunt.
15. Quālis urbs hodiē est Rōma?
Hodiē Rōma est urbs magna et pulchra.

495. VOCABULARY

quālis, *neuter* **quāle,** what kind of
quot, how many?
sublicius, -a, -um, resting on piles; **pōns sublicius,** a pile bridge

a. **Quot** has the same form for all genders and all cases.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

496. 1. The cities which we saw were beautiful. 2. The towns which the Gauls captured were small. 3. The soldiers to whom we gave money are now in the fort. 4. These kings, whose names you have heard, were famous. 5. The scout

whom the general sent was captured. 6. To whom did you give money? 7. Whom did the general send?

Optional Drill

497. 1. Mīles cui arma dedimus sē dēfendet; mīlitēs quibus arma dedimus sē dēfendent. 2. Silva ex quā vēnistī est magna. 3. Oppidum ex quō vēnī est in montibus. 4. Hominēs cum quibus centuriō ambulābat sunt explōrātōrēs. 5. Oppida ex quibus hī servī vēnērunt in Galliā sunt. 6. Hōrum uterque est vir clārus. 7. Duo Gallī vēnērunt, quōrum uterque erat vir clārus. 8. Mīles cujus scūtum vidēs captus est. 9. Barbarī, quōrum dux interfectus est, superābuntur. 10. Intrā eum locum; intrā vāllum castrōrum; intrā illās silvās. 11. Dīvidunt; dīvident; dīvīsērunt.

498. 1. The hill on which we stand is the Palatine. 2. I saw many animals in the forest in which I was walking. 3. The mountains on which the barbarians live are high. 4. The messenger that (whom) I sent is a Gaul. 5. The messengers that (whom) I sent are Gauls. 6. The boy that (who) was lying in the grass was not sleeping.

(*a*) Write the principal parts of **capiō, cupiō, neglegō, gerō, pōnō.**

(*b*) Write the present active and passive infinitives, with their meanings, of **mittō, capiō,** and **mūniō.**

LESSON LXVIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

499. We have previously seen that many adjectives are declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. There is also a large group of adjectives which are declined like

nouns of the third declension. It is, of course, to be understood that an adjective is not necessarily of the same declension as the noun that it modifies.

500. There are three classes of third declension adjectives. Those with two endings in the nominative singular are declined as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	om′nis	om′ne	om′nēs	om′nia
GEN.	om′nis	om′nis	om′nium	om′nium
DAT.	om′nī	om′nī	om′nibus	om′nibus
ACC.	om′nem	om′ne	om′nīs, -ēs	om′nia
ABL.	om′nī	om′nī	om′nibus	om′nibus

a. In the masculine and feminine these adjectives are declined like **collis** (*see section* **338**), except that the ablative singular ends in **-ī**. The neuter is declined like **īnsigne** (*see section* **346**).

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES WITH THREE ENDINGS

There are a few third declension adjectives which have separate forms for the three genders in the nominative singular. In all the other forms the masculine and feminine are alike. They are declined as follows:

501.

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ā′cre
	Masc. and Fem.		
GEN.	ā′cris		ā′cris
DAT.	ā′crī		ā′crī
ACC.	ā′crem		ā′cre
ABL.	ā′crī		ā′crī

	Plural	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
Nom.	ā′crēs	ā′cria
Gen.	ā′crium	ā′crium
Dat.	ā′cribus	ā′cribus
Acc.	ā′crīs, -ēs	ā′cria
Abl.	ā′cribus	ā′cribus

READING EXERCISE

502. 1. Illī mīlitēs Rōmānī sunt virī fortēs. Arma eōrum sunt gravia et iter nōn est facile, sed celeriter prōcēdunt. Hostēs repellent et oppidum eōrum oppugnābunt. Omnēs hostēs fugient, sed multī in fugā capientur.

2. Oppidum nostrum ā fortibus Rōmānīs expugnābitur. Arma gravia habent sed celeriter veniunt, et mox aderunt. Fuga nōn erit facilis, sed cum omnibus cōpiīs nostrīs fugere dēbēmus. Illōs ācrēs Rōmānōs timēmus, quī saepe nōs in proeliō vīcērunt. Auxilium ab (*from*) aliīs gentibus postulāre dēbēmus, quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēmus. Oppida nostra et omnis patria nostra in periculō sunt.

503. VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, eager
facilis, -e, easy
fortis, -e, brave
fuga, -ae, F., flight
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, flee
gravis, -e, heavy
omnis, -e, all

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

504. 1. We saw an easy road through the mountains. 2. The spears of the barbarians were heavy. 3. All the enemy (*plural*) who remained in the town were captured. 4. These fierce barbarians will soon flee. 5. The leader of the brave Gauls was killed in battle.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

505. 1. Find a noun derived from **facilis.** 2. What is meant by *fortitude?* 3. Give the meanings of *omnipotent, omniscient,* and *omnipresent.* 4. Find from a dictionary what case of **omnis** is represented by the English word *omnibus.*

Optional Drill

506. 1. In omnibus perīculīs; ex omnī perīculō; omnium perīculōrum. 2. Gravēs gladiī; gravia scūta; gravēs hastae. 3. Facilis fuga; facile iter; facilia itinera. 4. Ducēs Gallōrum et Germānōrum erant virī fortēs. 5. Haec saxa quae portāmus sunt gravia. 6. Ācrēs barbarī castra nostra oppugnābunt. 7. Mīlitēs nostrī ācrem ducem hostium cēpērunt. 8. In omnī perīculō fortēs esse dēbēmus.

507. 1. I gave all the money to my brother. 2. These boys are the sons of brave soldiers. 3. The slave was carrying a heavy book. 4. We saw the fierce barbarians who were attacking the city. 5. These men are brave, but they are not strong.

LESSON LXIX

READING EXERCISE

508. 1. Hī barbarī sunt ācrēs, sed nōn mīlitēs bonī sunt, quod imperāta non faciunt. Mīles bonus nōn sōlum fortis est, sed etiam imperāta facit. Victōria facilis erit, quod mīlitēs nostrī ducem bonum habent, cujus imperāta facient.

2. Omnēs quī bene labōrant praemia accipient. Pecūnia eīs dabitur, et laudābuntur. Eī quī male labōrant nūlla praemia accipient, neque laudābuntur.

3. Hostēs portās urbis frangere cupiunt. Secūrēs habent et dūra verbera dant. Sed portae sunt validae et cīvēs fortiter urbem dēfendunt. Cōpiae sociōrum appropinquant, et mox in urbem pervenient. Hostēs fugient.

509. VOCABULARY

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, accept, receive
dūrus, -a, -um, hard
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, break down
imperātum, -ī, N., command; **imperāta facere,** obey commands, carry out orders
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive
secūris, -is, -ium, F., ax
verbera, -um, N. *pl.*, blows (*found also in a few singular forms*)
victōria, -ae, F., victory

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

510. 1. The brave lieutenant will lead the legion to the enemy's camp. 2. All the boys are working in the fields today. 3. Those victories were not easy. 4. My brother, who came from Europe, gave me a reward. 5. The book which you have is mine.

ARCH OVER A ROMAN ROAD

Optional Drill

511. 1. Victōria facilis; victōriae facilēs. 2. Vir fortis; virī fortēs; virōrum fortium. 3. Mīlitēs fortēs sunt; mīlitēs ācrēs sunt. 4. Praemium jam accēpimus; praemia mox accipiēmus. 5. Omnēs amīcī nostrī in urbem pervēnērunt. 6. Hī virī clārī mox in Italiam pervenient. 7. Imperāta tua audīvimus. 8. Haec imperāta nōn facilia sunt. 9. Cūr in nostram urbem vēnistī? 10. Centuriō quī mīlitēs dūcit vir fortis est. 11. Puer cujus librum habēs frāter meus est. 12. Vir cui praemium dedī prīmus in castra pervēnit.

512. 1. With the fierce soldier; with the fierce soldiers; of the fierce soldiers. 2. Of an easy flight; of an easy road; of a brave friend. 3. With all the citizens; of all the citizens; by all the citizens. 4. You will receive all the rewards. 5. The mountain on which I was standing was high. 6. The city from which I come does not fear your legions. 7. The companions with whom I arrived in the town (*accusative*) were tired. 8. All the tents are in the forest.

(*a*) Decline together **lēgātus fortis.**

(*b*) Decline together **victōria facilis.**

(*c*) Give the Latin for the italicized words in the following sentences: (1) This is the boy *whose* sister is ill. (2) I live on the island *which* you see. (3) The men *by whom* the work was done are skillful.

LESSON LXX

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

513. Some adjectives of the third declension have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders.

fēlīx, *fortunate* **potēns,** *powerful*

Singular

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	fē′līx	fē′līx	po′tēns	po′tēns
Gen.	fēlī′cis	fēlī′cis	poten′tis	poten′tis
Dat.	fēlī′cī	fēlī′cī	poten′tī	poten′tī
Acc.	fēlī′cem	fē′līx	poten′tem	po′tēns
Abl.	fēlī′cī	fēlī′cī	poten′tī, -e	poten′tī, -e

Plural

Nom.	fēlī′cēs	fēlī′cia	poten′tēs	poten′tia
Gen.	fēlī′cium	fēlī′cium	poten′tium	poten′tium
Dat.	fēlī′cibus	fēlī′cibus	poten′tibus	poten′tibus
Acc.	fēlī′cīs, -ēs	fēlī′cia	poten′tīs, -ēs	poten′tia
Abl.	fēlī′cibus	fēlī′cibus	poten′tibus	poten′tibus

a. The neuter is given separately because it differs from the masculine and feminine in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The adjective **vetus,** *old,* genitive **veteris,** has the ending **-e** in the ablative singular, **-um** in the genitive plural, and **-a** (not **-ia**) in the nominative and accusative plural.

READING EXERCISE

514. Is homō erat rēx potēns. Nunc exul est, et paucōs amīcōs habet. Longē ā patriā suā habitat. Cīvēs eum in patriā esse nōn sinunt, et fīliī ejus in vincula conjectī sunt. Rēx nōn erat sapiēns, et cīvēs sunt fēlīcēs quod exul est. Comitēs ejus eum rēgem appellant, sed rēx sine potentiā est.

Multī eōrum quī ōlim rēgēs in Eurōpā erant nunc sunt exulēs. At in patriā nostrā fuit nūllus rēx. In hāc terrā populus regit. Gentēs Americae fēlīcēs sunt quod rēgēs neque habent neque dēsīderant.

515. VOCABULARY

at, *conj.*, but
conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw
fēlīx, *gen.* **fēlīcis,** happy
potēns, *gen.* **potentis,** powerful
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule
sapiēns, *gen.* **sapientis,** wise
vinculum, -ī, N., chain

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

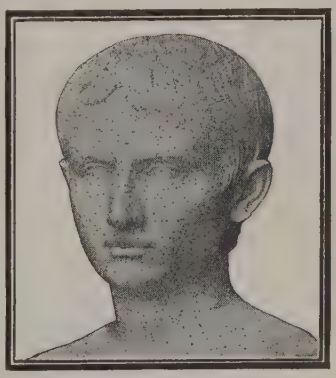
516. 1. Your friend is wise, and he gives you good advice (**cōnsilium**). 2. We have powerful allies, who will soon give help. 3. We are happy because we have many friends. 4. Wise men did not expect an easy victory. 5. The consul is the friend of all the citizens who love their (native) country. 6. The boy was brave, but he was not strong.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

517. 1. Find from a dictionary the source of *conjecture.* 2. What is meant by *felicity?* 3. What is a *potent* argument? 4. What is a *regent?*

Optional Drill

518. 1. Ducis sapientis; virī sapientis; virī sapientēs; virōrum sapientium. 2. Amīcus potēns; amīcī potentis; amīcī potentēs; amīcōrum potentium. 3. Terra fēlīx; terrae fēlīcis; terrae fēlīcēs. 4. Exulēs nōn saepe fēlīcēs sunt. 5. In vincula eum conjiciēmus. 6. Amīcī ejus in vincula nōn conjectī sunt. 7. Populus eum in patriā manēre nōn sinit. 8. Populus eum regere nōn sinit. 9. Comes meus est fortis, sed



THE YOUNG AUGUSTUS

nōn est potēns. 10. Hic rēx quī nunc exul est ōlim erat potēns. 11. Potentia quam habēs nōn est magna. 12. Mīlitēs ā quibus urbs capta est fortēs virī sunt.

519. 1. Of a powerful king; of a happy people; of a wise citizen. 2. Of wise citizens; of an unhappy exile; with an unhappy exile. 3. He will be thrown into chains; he has been thrown into chains. 4. They rule; they will rule; they have ruled. 5. He will be powerful in the city which they have taken. 6. Not all leaders are wise.

(*a*) Rewrite the first two sentences of section **514,** changing the subjects to the plural.

(*b*) Give all the forms of the ablative singular of the following adjectives: **bonus, miser, fortis, omnis.**

(*c*) Decline together **terra fēlīx.**

PATRIOTISM AND HONOR AMONG THE ROMANS

Many stories are told of Romans of early times who were famous for their patriotism, their honesty, and their bravery. Even at a time when selfishness and neglect of duty had become common, these heroes of a better time were still remembered. Perhaps some of these stories were only partly true, but at any rate they showed what sort of actions and character the Romans thought worth honoring.

One of those who were thus remembered was Cincinnatus the Dictator. A Roman army had been surrounded by the enemy, and the general in command seemed unable to find a way of escape. Cincinnatus was selected by the Roman senate to take charge and try to save the army. When the messengers came to tell him he had been chosen for this duty they found him plowing on his little farm. He at once left his work and took up the duty assigned to him. Within

THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORATION)

sixteen days he had relieved the army, and then instead of continuing to hold his position as general, he went back to his farm and to his work.

At the end of the Revolutionary War in America the officers formed an organization which took its name from Cincinnatus, and from this organization the city of Cincinnati derived its name.

Another celebrated Roman of early times was Fabricius. Once when he had been sent on public business to a certain king, this king tried to bribe him to become his associate. Fabricius rejected the offer, saying, "If you think I am an honorable man, why do you try to corrupt me? If you think I am a scoundrel, why do you desire my friendship?"

At another time the physician of this same king, who was then at war with the Romans, came secretly to Fabricius and offered to poison the king if Fabricius would give him money for having done so. Fabricius arrested the physician and sent him back to the king with a report of what he had offered to do.

On still another occasion envoys from a foreign country came to his house and offered him money with the expectation of winning his favor. They found him dining on the plainest sort of food, such as a very poor man might have. Fabricius refused their offer, saying "As long as I can control my desire for pleasure I shall not be in need. Give your money to those who need it."

When Fabricius died he did not leave enough money to provide for the needs of his family, but the senate in appreciation of his character furnished enough to make up for what was lacking.

Many other stories might be told to show that the Romans recognized the dignity of honest work and that they set a high value on honor and patriotism.

LESSON LXXI

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS

520. In the fourth declension the genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. The nominative singular ends in **-us** for the masculine and feminine and in **-ū** for the neuter. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

	exercitus, M., *army*		**cornū**, N., *horn*	
	Singular	*Endings*	*Singular*	*Endings*
NOM.	exer'citus	**-us**	cor'nū	**-ū**
GEN.	exer'citūs	**-ūs**	cor'nūs	**-ūs**
DAT.	exerci'tuī, -ū	**-uī, -ū**	cor'nū	**-ū**
ACC.	exer'citum	**-um**	cor'nū	**-ū**
ABL.	exer'citū	**-ū**	cor'nū	**-ū**
	Plural		*Plural*	
NOM.	exer'citūs	**-ūs**	cor'nua	**-ua**
GEN.	exerci'tuum	**-uum**	cor'nuum	**-uum**
DAT.	exerci'tibus	**-ibus**	cor'nibus	**-ibus**
ACC.	exer'citūs	**-ūs**	cor'nua	**-ua**
ABL.	exerci'tibus	**-ibus**	cor'nibus	**-ibus**

a. The dative and ablative plurals of a few masculine and feminine nouns end in **-ubus.**

READING EXERCISE: *RŌMA DĒFENDITUR*

521. Rēx quī ex urbe expulsus est cum exercitū hostium hūc venit (*is coming*). Urbem capere et multōs occīdere cupit. Multōs in vincula conjicere etiam cupit. Impetum facere nunc parat. Nōbilēs quī eum ex urbe expulērunt perīculum suum magnum esse sciunt, sed nōn ignāvī sunt, et sē dēfendere parant. Nūntiī in omnēs partēs missī sunt, et

vigilēs in mūrō sunt. Rēx cum sociīs suīs nunc in cōnspectū est. Hī mox usque ad rīpam ulteriōrem flūminis venient. Omnēs cīvēs cum armīs convenīre incipiunt. Cōnsulēs adsunt, et omnēs prō patriā pugnāre parātī sunt. Fortis Horātius inter cīvēs pugnat. Posteā dē fortī Horātiō audiēmus.

A ROMAN TEMPLE IN FRANCE

522. VOCABULARY

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, assemble
exercitus, -ūs, M., army
Horātius, -ī, M., Horatius
impetus, -ūs, M., attack
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin
nōbilis, -e, noble; M. *pl.*, the nobles
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

523. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences: 1. The consul was the leader *of the army* which captured the city. 2. The centurion was killed *in sight* of the legion. 3. The

barbarians made many *attacks* on our camp, but they were repulsed. 4. Our (native) country has always been safe without large *armies*. 5. The fort was taken by the first *attack*.

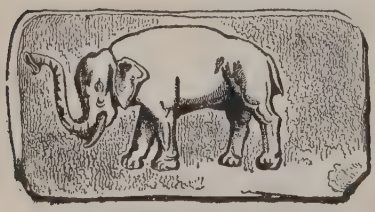
ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

524. 1. What is a *convention?* 2. What is the meaning of *impetus* as an English word? 3. What is the *incipient* stage of a fever? 4. What is the meaning of *inception?*

Optional Drill

525. 1. In cōnspectū meō; in cōnspectū exercitūs; in exercitū. 2. Cum exercitū nostrō; cum exercitū Rōmānō; cum exercitibus Rōmānīs. 3. Impetus factus est; impetūs factī sunt; impetum faciēmus. 4. Cīvēs convenient; cīvēs convenīre incipiunt; cīvēs convenīre incipient. 5. Nōbilēs rēgem expulērunt; rēx ā nōbilibus expulsus est; rēgēs expulsī sunt. 6. Multōs occīdet; multī occīdentur; multī occīsī sunt. 7. Usque ad mūrōs vēnērunt; usque ad urbem venient. 8. Patria vestra exercitum potentem habet.

526. 1. Of the army; from (**ex**) the army; from my sight. 2. They will make an attack; they will begin to make an attack; they are beginning (*see section* **108** *a*) to make an attack. 3. The army assembles; the army has assembled; the army was assembling. 4. The nobles have killed the king; the king has been killed by the nobles. 5. Many nobles have been killed.



ANCIENT ROMAN MONEY

(*a*) Decline together **exercitus noster.**

(*b*) Decline together **cornū longum.**

(*c*) Give the ablative singular of **mūrus, cōnspectus, flūmen, īnsigne.**

THIRTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXV-LXXI

cōnspectus, -ūs	fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis	accipiō, -ere
exercitus, -ūs	fortis, -e	conjiciō, -ere
fuga, -ae	gravis, -e	conveniō, -īre
imperātum, -ī	nōbilis, -e	dīvidō, -ere
impetus, -ūs	omnis, -e	frangō, -ere
secūris, secūris	potēns, *gen.* potentis	fugiō, -ere
verbera, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	incipiō, -ere
victōria, -ae	quālis, -e	occīdō, -ere
vinculum, -ī	sublicius, -a, -um	perveniō, -īre
quī, quae, quod	quot	regō, -ere
ācer, ācris, ācre	sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis	antīquitus
dūrus, -a, -um	uterque, -traque, -trumque	intrā
facilis, -e	septem	at

ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Masc. and Fem.		*Neuter*	
-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua
-ūs	-uum	-ūs	-uum
-uī, -ū	-ibus	-ū	-ibus
-um	-ūs	-ū	-ua
-ū	-ibus	-ū	-ibus

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

(Declension of the Relative, see section **482**)
(Agreement of the Relative, see section **483**)

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

(1) Of Two Endings, see section **500**
(2) Of Three Endings, see section **501**
(3) Of One Ending, see section **513**

LESSON LXXII

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

PRESENT SYSTEM OF *EŌ*

527. The irregular verb **eō,** *go,* is conjugated in the present system in the indicative as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
e′ō	ī′bam	ī′bō
īs	ī′bās	ī′bis
it	ī′bat	ī′bit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
ī′mus	ībā′mus	ī′bimus
ī′tis	ībā′tis	ī′bitis
e′unt	ī′bant	ī′bunt

a. The principal parts are **eō, īre, iī**[1] or **īvī, itum.** The perfect is formed as in regular verbs: **iī** (**īvī**), etc. The second person of the perfect, however, is **īstī** in the singular and **īstis** in the plural. The third person singular is **iit.**

b. Compounds of **eō** (**redeō,** etc.) regularly form their perfects with **iī,** not **īvī.**

COMPOUNDS OF *EŌ*

528. There are many compounds of **eō,** such as **exeō,** *go out,* **redeō,** *go back,* **trānseō,** *go across.* They are conjugated like **eō,** with the syllable **ex-, red-, trāns-,** etc., prefixed. Thus, **exeō, exīs, exit,** etc.

[1]Pronounced in two syllables, i′ī.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

529. 1. Hī virī mare trānseunt et per multās terrās eunt. 2. Nōs (*we*) quoque mare trānsībimus. 3. Aestāte ad montēs īmus, ubi casam habēmus. 4. Frāter meus aestāte saepe ad mare it. 5. Mox in urbem redībimus et in scholā erimus. 6. Multī ex patriā suā exeunt quod aliās terrās vidēre cupiunt. 7. Ille exul per multās urbēs ībat et auxilium postulābat. 8. Impetus in (*on*) hostēs factus est quī flūmen trānsībant. 9. In Americam nōn redībitis sed cum frātre tuō in Britanniā manēbitis. 10. Per illōs montēs īre cupimus quod nūllam viam aliam habēmus.

530. VOCABULARY

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, go
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go forth, go out
mare, maris, N., sea
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, return
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, cross

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

531. 1. The army is now returning from Gaul into Italy. 2. The boys were going through the streets of the city with their fathers. 3. Our friends have returned from Spain and are now in the city. 4. The soldiers have gone out from the camp without weapons. 5. The citizens go out from the town because the enemy are approaching.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

532. 1. What is the meaning of *exit* as an English noun? 2. What is meant by goods in *transit?* 3. What are *marine* animals?

Optional Drill

533. 1. Ībit; ībat; ībis; ībās. 2. Īs; īre; īre cupit. 3. Redībant; trānsībant; conveniēbant. 4. Redībunt; trānsībunt; convenient. 5. Nostrī mīlitēs per multa perīcula iērunt.

6. Centuriō cum mīlitibus ex castrīs exit. 7. Centuriō nōn sōlus exiit. 8. Illōs collēs trānsībimus et ad flūmen veniēmus.

534. 1. They go; they will go; they were going. 2. I go; I shall go; I was going. 3. He was crossing; he was returning; we were returning. 4. We crossed those mountains in winter. 5. Many returned with the messenger.

ROMAN MILLS
In such mills as these the grain was ground to make flour for bread.

LESSON LXXIII

READING EXERCISE

535. 1. Puer sērō ad tēctum redībat, et sōlus per silvam ībat. In omnēs partēs spectābat, quod perīculum timēbat. Erat nūllum perīculum in silvā, sed puer erat parvus, et nōn

saepe longē ā tēctō ībat sine patre aut mātre aut frātribus. Tandem lūcem vīdit, et currere coepit. Lūx in fenestrā erat, et māter puerum expectābat. Māter laeta erat quod puer tūtus redībat.

2. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum iter vertērunt, et nunc flūmen trānseunt quod inter agrōs sociōrum et hostēs fluit. Sed tamen paucī mīlitēs in hōc locō relictī sunt, quī oppida sociōrum dēfendunt. Post proelium tōtus exercitus hūc redībit.

536. VOCABULARY

coepī, coepisse, began
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run
relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave
sērō, *adv.*, late, too late
tamen, *adv.*, still, nevertheless
tandem, *adv.*, at length
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn

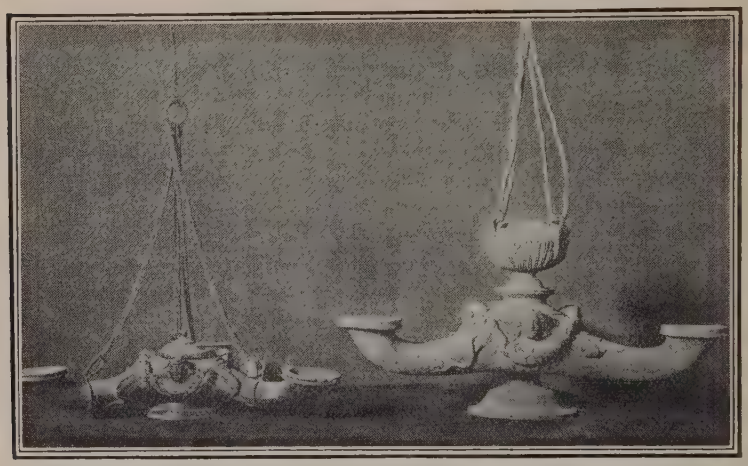
a. The verb **coepī** is commonly used instead of the perfect of **incipiō**.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

537. 1. I go because my (native) country calls me. 2. We have turned our course (march), and we shall cross the river. 3. All the soldiers who have returned are now in camp. 4. We were going through the forest in the evening with your father. 5. The small boy began to run, because he was afraid (he feared). 6. A few will cross the river which is behind the camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

538. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **currō** and the noun *current* (i.e. the *current* of the river)? 2. What is the meaning of *relinquish?* 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *relic.* 4. What is a *tandem* team? 5. What is a new *version* of a story?



ROMAN LAMPS

Optional Drill

539. 1. Currere coepī; trānsīre coepī; redīre coepī. 2. Tandem trānsīre coepērunt; tamen trānsiērunt; tandem tamen trānsiērunt. 3. Iter nostrum vertēmus; iter vestrum vertētis? 4. Relinquit; relīquit; relinquimus; relīquimus; relinquunt; relīquērunt. 5. Sērō redīre coepī.

540. 1. He runs; he will run; he has run; he began to run. 2. He will return late; he will return at length; nevertheless he will return. 3. I have left; I have been left; I leave; I shall leave. 4. They turn their course (**iter**); they have turned their course.

(*a*) Conjugate **veniō** and **redeō** in the future tense.

(*b*) Name the tense of each verb found in paragraph 2, section **535.**

(*c*) Rewrite the last two sentences of paragraph 1, section **535,** changing the verbs to the future.

LESSON LXXIV

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME AT WHICH

541. The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

***Eō annō* pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit,** *My father built a new house that year.*

a. Commonly these expressions of time have the preposition *in* or *on* or *at* in English: *in that year; on the same day; at the appointed hour.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

542. In English we sometimes use a noun without a preposition to tell how long an act or a situation continues. Thus, *We stayed in the country three days.* We may also say *We stayed in the country for three days.* The expressions *three days* in the first sentence and *for three days* in the second mean exactly the same thing. In Latin a word which is thus used to denote duration of time is put in the accusative without a preposition. ***Multās hōrās* in īnsulā mānsī,** *I remained on the island many hours* (or *for many hours*).

a. The ablative of time answers the question *When?* The accusative of duration answers the question *How long?*

READING EXERCISE: *VIGILIAE CASTRŌRUM*

543. Apud Rōmānōs in bellō nox in quattuor vigiliās dīvidēbātur. Duae vigiliae ante mediam noctem erant et duae post mediam noctem. Prīmā vigiliā mīlitēs, quī vigilēs appellābantur, circum vāllum castrōrum dispōnēbantur. Hī in suīs locīs usque ad fīnem prīmae vigiliae manēbant, tum

ad tabernācula discēdēbant, et aliī vigilēs veniēbant. Ita castra tōtam noctem ā vigiliibus custōdiēbantur. Prīmā lūce mīlitēs ē somnō excitābantur. Hostēs nōn facile castra Rōmāna nocte expugnābant, quae nūllō tempore erant sine vigilibus. Barbarī castra sua ita nōn custōdiēbant, et castra eōrum interdum ab hostibus noctū oppugnāta sunt et capta (sunt).

544. VOCABULARY

apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, with
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, guard
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, go away
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, arrange, station
quattuor, four
tempus, temporis, N., time
vigilia, -ae, F., watch (*one fourth of the night*)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

545. 1. In the first watch the enemy made an attack on the fort. 2. Your sister remained in Europe four years. 3. At daybreak we returned to the town with the army. 4. We walked all night, and we are tired.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

546. 1. What is a *temporary* appointment? 2. What is a *custodian?* Find another noun which is derived from **custōdiō.** 3. What is the meaning of the English word *vigil?*

Optional Drill

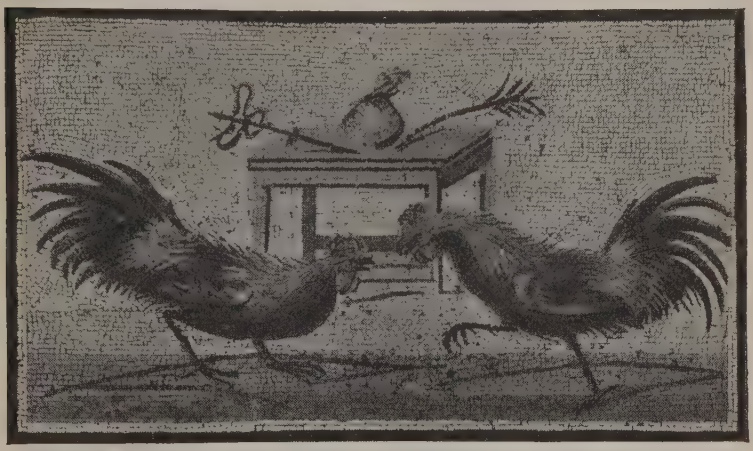
547. 1. Ūnam hōram dormīvit; multās hōrās dormīvērunt. 2. Multōs annōs patriam dēfendērunt; tōtam noctem castra dēfendērunt. 3. Eō annō hostēs vēnērunt; eīs annīs perīculum erat magnum. 4. Mīlitēs multās hōrās pugnāvērunt.. 5. Eā

hōrā ex castrīs discessī. 6. Urbem tōtam noctem custōdiēmus; urbs tōtam noctem custōdiētur. 7. Vigilēs dispōnentur; vigilēs dispositī sunt. 8. Eō tempore apud exercitum eram; eīs temporibus exercitus erat parvus. 9. Quattuor vigiliae erant; vigiliae longae erant. 10. Aliī vigilēs venient; aliī vigilēs vēnērunt.

548. 1. At daybreak; in the first watch; in the first hour; in the first year. 2. They guarded the cottage the whole night. 3. The enemy did not come that night. 4. We waited many hours. 5. He lived in Italy four years. 6. At no time was the town without soldiers.

(*a*) Point out the ablatives and the accusatives in section **543** which express ideas of time.

(*b*) Write an English sentence containing an expression of time at which, and a sentence containing an expression of duration of time.



A FIERCE COMBAT
This mosaic picture is from Pompeii

LESSON LXXV

THE IMPERATIVE

USE OF THE IMPERATIVE

549. The imperative mood is used to express commands. Thus, *Close the door; Wait till I come.* The verbs *close* and *wait* are in the imperative mood.

THE IMPERATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

550. The present active imperative of regular verbs of the four conjugations in Latin is as follows:

	I	II
SING.	portā, *carry* (said to one person)	monē
PLUR.	portāte, *carry* (said to more than one)	monēte

	III		IV
SING.	mitte	cape	audī
PLUR.	mittite	capite	audīte

a. The verbs **dīcō, dūcō,** and **faciō** have the irregular forms **dīc, dūc,** and **fac** in the singular of the present active imperative. In the plural they are regular.

b. The verb **dō** differs from other first conjugation verbs in that the **a** is short in the plural imperative, **date.** The singular, **dā,** is regular.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

551. A command not to do an act is expressed by **nōlī** for the singular and **nōlīte** for the plural, followed by the infinitive of the act forbidden: **Nōlī** (**nōlīte**) **redīre,** *Do not return.*

THE IMPERATIVES OF *EŌ* AND *SUM*

552. The imperatives of **eō** are **ī** (*singular*), and **īte** (*plural*).

Compounds of **eō** form their imperatives like the simple verb. Thus **trānsī, trānsīte,** etc.

The imperatives of **sum** are **es** (*singular*) and **este** (*plural*): **Es fortis** (**este fortēs**), *Be brave.*

READING EXERCISE: *ETRŪSCĪ RŌMAM CAPERE TEMPTANT*

553. "Gladiōs, mīlitēs, sūmite, et in (*on*) Rōmānōs impetum facite. Nam pontem sublicium frangere temptant, quī est inter nōs et urbem eōrum. Secūrēs habent et hīs secūribus lignum caedunt. Dux eōrum est fortis Horātius, quī inter prīmōs verbera dūra dat. Eum et comitēs ejus ex ponte pellite. Nōlīte sinere Rōmānōs pontem ita frangere." Ita dux Etrūscōrum dīxit, quī Rōmam capere et rēgem Rōmānum restituere cupiēbat. Is rēx Rōmānus erat exul. Rōmānī tum cōnsulēs habēbant, quī exercitum dūcēbant et urbem regēbant. Ūnus ex hīs cōnsulibus tum erat ignāvus, neque auxilium dabat. Sed omnēs cīvēs fortiter urbem dēfendērunt. Pōns frāctus est, et urbs ita servāta est.

554. VOCABULARY

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say
nōlī, nōlīte, be unwilling, do not
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive, rout
restituō, -ere, restituī, restitūtum, restore
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, assume
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

555. 1. Give your book to the boy. 2. Send money at once. 3. Soldiers, break down the bridge with axes. 4. Citizens, defend your houses bravely. 5. Warn those men. 6. Boys, come at once to the river.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

556. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **dīcō** and *dictionary?* 2. What is meant by *diction?* 3. What is the difference between *repel* and *propel?* 4. What Latin preposition is combined with **sūmō** to form the word from which *assume* is derived? 5. What is meant by the expression "to make *restitution*"?

Optional Drill

557. 1. Laudā; vidē; sūme; venī; appropinquāte; dēlēte; frangite; dormīte. 2. Urbem dēfendite; nōlīte urbem dēfendere. 3. Gladium sūme; nōlī gladium sūmere. 4. Statim redīte; nōlīte statim redīre. 5. Lignum caede; nōlī lignum caedere. 6. Incipe; properā; silē; mūnī; nōlī incipere; nōlī properāre; nōlī silēre; nōlī mūnīre. 7. Secūrēs sūmite et verbera date. 8. Verbera dūra nōlīte dare. 9. Dīcite; dīcitis; dīcētis; nōlīte dīcere. 10. Pelle; pellere; pellēs; pellēris.

558. 1. Soldiers, guard the camp. 2. Soldier, guard the bridge. 3. Citizens, take weapons. 4. Citizen, take a sword. 5. Boys, do not neglect your brother. 6. Boy, do not neglect your brothers. 7. Slaves, obey. 8. Slave (*see section* **162**), obey. 9. Approach, friends. 10. Approach, friend.

ROMAN ROAD NEAR VEII

Veii was an important town of the Etruscans.

(*a*) Give the present active imperatives, singular and plural, of **ambulō, jubeō, frangō, cupiō, veniō.**

(*b*) Conjugate **sūmō** in the present and future indicative, active and passive.

LESSON LXXVI

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

559. The verb **possum,** *I am able* or *I can,* is irregular. It is a compound of **sum** and the adjective **potis,** *able.* The present system in the indicative mood is as follows:

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
pos'sum, *I am able,* or *I can*	pos'sumus, *we are able,* etc.
po'tes, *you are able, you can*	potes'tis, *you are able,* etc.
po'test, *he is able, he can*	pos'sunt, *they are able,* etc.

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
po'teram, *I was able, I could*	poterā'mus, *we were able,* etc.
po'terās, *you were able,* etc.	poterā'tis, *you were able,* etc.
po'terat, *he was able,* etc.	po'terant, *they were able,* etc.

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
po'terō, *I shall be able*	pote'rimus, *we shall be able*
po'teris, *you will be able*	pote'ritis, *you will be able*
po'terit, *he will be able*	po'terunt, *they will be able*

a. The principal parts are **possum, posse, potuī.** The perfect is formed like that of regular verbs: **potuī,** *I have been able,* **potuistī,** *you have been able,* etc.

b. It must be remembered that *can* is equivalent to *am able* (*is able, are able*) and *could* is equivalent to *was able* (*were able*):

The men are able to see / *The men can see* } **Hominēs vidēre possunt.**

The men were able to see / *The men could see* } **Hominēs vidēre poterant.**

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

560. 1. Pecūniam quam postulās ad tē mittere nōn possum. 2. Epistulam tuam legere nōn poteram, quod male scrīpta est. 3. Cum frātribus tuīs redīre nōn poteris. 4. Pōns ab hostibus frangī nōn potest. 5. Ex illō colle parvum oppidum vidēre poterimus. 6. Omnēs cōpiās hostium ex vāllō pepulimus, sed vāllum trānsīre nōn potuimus. 7. Haec castra dēfendī nōn possunt, et statim discēdēmus. 8. Etrūscī flūmen trānsīre nōn potuērunt quod nūllae nāvēs in eō locō sunt.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

561. 1. We cannot carry these heavy books. 2. Our companions have not been able to return today. 3. Horatius could not defend the bridge without help. 4. This river cannot be crossed without boats. 5. The general will not be able to leave soldiers in the town.

Optional Drill

562. 1. Potest; possunt; potuit. 2. Poterō; potuī; possum. 3. Poterant; poterunt; potuērunt. 4. Labōrāre nōn potes. 5. Audīre nōn poterat. 6. Juvārī nōn potest. 7. Magnae cōpiae mittī nōn possunt. 8. Parva puella epistulās scrībere nōn poterat. 9. Potestis; poterātis; poteritis; potuistis.

563. 1. I cannot remain; I could not remain. 2. He will be able to reply; he has been able to reply. 3. They cannot have friends in this place. 4. The camp cannot be placed here. 5. We cannot see the river.

ROMAN RINGS

LESSON LXXVII

READING EXERCISE: *CASTRA RŌMĀNA OPPUGNANTUR*

564. Hostēs castra Rōmāna paene circumvēnērunt. Rōmānī ex castrīs effugere nōn possunt, sed fortiter sē dēfendent. Herī duo centuriōnēs ex portā exiērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Ūnus vulnerātus in castra sine auxiliō sē recipere nōn poterat. Sed alter hostēs reppulit et comitem suum servāvit. Signifer, vir fortis, quī erat in vāllō, interfectus est. Sociī auxilium mīsērunt, et Rōmānī eās cōpiās expectant. Sī mox venient, hostēs castra nōn capient. Rōmānī enim ex castrīs impetum in hostēs facient, et sociī ā tergō eōs oppugnābunt. Hostēs pellentur, et castra servābuntur.

565. VOCABULARY

alter, altera, alterum, the other
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround
effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, escape
enim, *conj.*, for (*never stands first in its clause*)
paene, *adv.*, almost
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; **sē recipere,** withdraw, retreat
signifer, signiferī, M., standard-bearer

a. The genitive and dative of **alter** are not formed in accordance with the declension of regular adjectives of the first and second declensions. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

566. 1. I cannot hear you from this place. 2. We were able to cross the river, but we were not able to capture the camp. 3. The army of the enemy could not escape. 4. The citizens who have arms will be able to defend themselves. 5. Why do

you not go? Answer me (*indirect object*) at once. 6. The sound of the horses' feet in the street can be heard from (**ex**) this place.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

567. 1. What is an *alternative* route? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *circumvent*. 3. What is the meaning of the statement "He was the *recipient* of much praise"?

OPTIONAL DRILL

568. 1. Effugere possum; effugere poteram; effugere poterō. 2. Exīre potest; exīre poterat; exīre poterit. 3. Circumvenīre possunt; circumvenīre poterant; circumvenīre poterunt. 4. Signifer sē recipit; signiferī sē recipiunt; signifer sē recipere potest. 5. Paene circumventī sumus; paene circumventī sunt. 6. Alter exit; alter exīre potest. 7. Quis effugit? Quis effūgit? 8. Discēdere potuī; discēdere potuistī. 9. Trānsīre potes; trānsīre possunt; trānsīre poterās.

A STANDARD BEARER

569. 1. They can see; they could see; they will be able to see. 2. He can escape; he could escape; he will be able to escape. 3. He was withdrawing; they were withdrawing; they will be able to withdraw. 4. We can capture the camp; we shall capture the camp. 5. They can break down the bridge; they will be able to break down the bridge. 6. They have been able to cross.

(*a*) Conjugate **possum** in the perfect, giving the meanings.

(*b*) Give the third person singular and plural of **possum** in all the tenses which have been studied.

(*c*) Conjugate **exeō** in the future tense.

FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXII-LXXVII

mare, maris
signifer, -ī
tempus, temporis
vigilia, -ae

alter, altera, alterum
quattuor

caedō, -ere
circumveniō, -īre
coepī, coepisse
currō, -ere
custōdiō, -īre
dīcō, -ere
discēdō, -ere
dispōnō, -ere
effugiō, -ere
eō, īre
exeō, exīre
nōlī, nōlīte
pellō, -ere
possum, posse
recipiō, -ere
redeō, redīre
relinquō, -ere
restituō, -ere
sūmō, -ere
temptō, -āre
trānseō, -īre
vertō, -ere

paene
sērō
tamen
tandem

apud

enim

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ*

(See section **527**)

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

(See section **559**)

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

(See sections **549, 550**)

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME WITH THE ABLATIVE AND THE ACCUSATIVE

(See sections **541, 542**)

LESSON LXXVIII

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

570. Thus far the personal pronouns *I*, *you*, *he*, etc., as subjects of the verb, have been indicated in Latin by the

person endings of the verb, **-ō, -s, -t,** etc. But when the importance of the subject is emphasized or a contrast is brought out between subjects which are not in the same person, a personal pronoun in the nominative is used in Latin as in English.

571. The other cases than the nominative are used as we should expect, except that the genitive of the pronouns of the first and second persons is not used to denote possession. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster, vester,** take the place of the genitive in expressions of possession. The forms of the genitive are not employed in the exercises of this book.[1]

572. DECLENSION OF *EGO* AND *TŪ*

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	ego, *I*	nōs, *we*
GEN.	meī, *of me*	nostrum *or* nostrī, *of us*
DAT.	mihi, *to me, me* (as indirect object)	nōbīs, *to us, us* (as indirect object)
ACC.	mē, *me*	nōs, *us*
ABL.	mē, (*from, by, with*) *me*	nōbīs, (*from, by, with*) *us*

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	tū, *you*	vōs, *you*
GEN.	tuī, *of you*	vestrum *or* vestrī, *of you*
DAT.	tibi, *to you, you* (as indirect object)	vōbīs, *to you, you* (as indirect object)
ACC.	tē, *you* (as direct object)	vōs, *you* (as direct object)
ABL.	tē, (*from, by, with*) *you*	vōbīs, (*from, by, with*) *you*

[1] The use of these genitives and the distinction between **nostrum** and **nostrī** and between **vestrum** and **vestrī** will be seen at a later point in the Latin course.

GATE IN THE WALL OF MODERN ROME

ENCLITIC FORMS

573. When the ablative forms **mē, tē, nōbīs, vōbīs,** and also **sē** (*section* **458**), are used as objects of the preposition **cum,** they have **cum** attached as a final syllable: thus, **mēcum,** *with me,* **tēcum,** *with you,* **nōbīscum,** *with us,* etc.

PERSONAL PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON

574. As has been previously seen, the demonstrative **is, ea, id,** serves as a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, it, they,* etc. The nominative may be used for emphasis or when it is needed to make the meaning clear. Sometimes the forms of **hic** and **ille** are used instead of **is** as the pronoun of the third person.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

575. 1. Ego in urbe habitō, tū in parvō oppidō habitās. 2. Ego mīles fuī, frāter meus domī mānsit. 3. Pater tuus multōs librōs habet, sed tū nōn saepe librōs legis. 4. Comitēs tuōs vīdī quī tēcum ex Eurōpā rediērunt. 5. Homō quī nōbīscum in rīpā flūminis stābat avunculus meus est. 6. Amīcus tuus mēcum in scholā erat. 7. Mē nōn laudō, sed tū mē laudās. 8. Ex illō locō tēctum nostrum tibi mōnstrāre poterō. 9. Saepe ā tē invītātus sum, et venīre cupiō. 10. Nōlī librum tuum in hōc locō relinquere.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

576. 1. I am alone today; you are with friends in the city. 2. Your father will remain in town with you. 3. My sister has the letter which was sent by you. 4. Come with us and you will be safe. 5. Many of your friends have not seen these mountains.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

577. An *egotist* is one who thinks and talks much about himself. A person of this sort is said to have an *egotistical* manner. The quality which he displays is *egotism*.

Optional Drill

578. 1. Ego et tū semper amīcī erimus. 2. Tū pecūniam habēs, soror tua nūllam pecūniam habet. 3. Ego in Eurōpā fuī, sed frāter meus Eurōpam nōn vīdit. 4. Illī barbarī bellum nōbīscum gerere nōn audēbunt. 5. Auxilium ā tē nōn datum est, et nunc auxilium tibi nōn dabitur. 6. Vōs in patriā nostrā habitāre nōn sinimus quod cīvēs bonī nōn eritis. 7. Urbs ā vōbīs fortiter dēfēnsa est.

579. 1. I am a citizen; you cannot be a citizen. 2. We cannot return to (**in**) Ireland with you. 3. These books

were given to your son by me. 4. The town cannot (is not able to) be captured by us.

(*a*) Decline the reflexive pronoun, **suī**.

(*b*) Conjugate **possum** in the present tense.

(*c*) Conjugate **eō** in the future tense.

LESSON LXXIX

READING EXERCISE: *RŌMĀNUS ET GALLUS*

580. 1. (*The Roman speaks.*) Ego Rōmānus sum, tū Gallus es. Rōmānī cum Gallīs bellum gerunt, et exercitus noster agrōs Galliae vāstat. Sed ego numquam ā tē injūriam accēpī, et nunc mēcum in urbe nostrā tūtō manēre potes. Post bellum in patriam tuam redīre poteris, et tēcum ībō.

2. (*The Gaul speaks.*) Sed uter patriam suam magis amat, is quī in terrā hostium tūtus manet, an is quī in bellō pugnat et tēcta et agrōs cīvium suōrum dēfendit? Ego tēcum tūtus esse possum, sed amīcī meī in perīculō sunt, et in terrā hostium cum honōre manēre nōn possum. Statim redīre et prō patriā pugnāre cupiō. Amīcī meī mē ignāvum esse putābunt sī in urbe tuā manēbō. Cum pāx inter Galliam et Rōmam erit, iterum ego et tū amīcī erimus.

581. VOCABULARY

an, *conj.*, or
honor, -ōris, M., honor
injūria, -ae, F., injury, injustice
magis, *adv.*, more
numquam, *adv.*, never
tūtō, *adv.*, safely
uter, -tra, -trum, which (*of two*)?

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

582. 1. I shall go to (**in**) Europe; you will remain in America. 2. We are good citizens; you are enemies of the country (*not*

terra). 3. Come with me, and I will show you a beautiful picture. 4. Many go to the mountains in summer. 5. We have not been helped by you (*plural*), and we shall not help you. 6. Who can carry these books?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

583. 1. Find some other words besides *honor* which have the same spelling in Latin and in English. 2. Give an adjective which is connected in derivation with **honor.** 3. Give an adjective which is connected in derivation with **injūria.**

Optional Drill

584. 1. Ego exībō, frāter meus manēbit. 2. Tū labōrās, amīcus tuus nōn labōrat. 3. Mēcum manē; tēcum manēbō; nōbīscum manēbit; vōbīscum manēbimus. 4. Ego et tū pācem amāmus. Amīcī nostrī pācem nōn amant. 5. Injūriās timeō; injūriās timēmus; injūriās timētis. 6. Uter est amīcus meus? 7. Honor nōbīs (*see section* **68**) cārus est. 8. Honor vōbīs quoque cārus est. 9. Pācem amāmus; patriam magis amāmus. 10. Tūtō trānsīre potes. 11. Numquam tūtō redīre poteris.

DRAWING ON THE OUTER WALL OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII

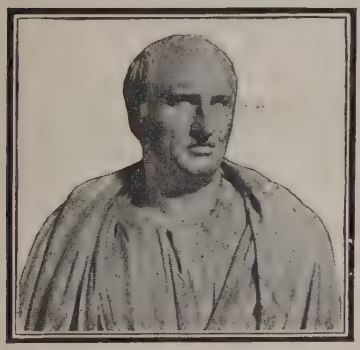
585. 1. I shall remain, you will go forth. 2. My brother walks with me. 3. My brothers walk with you (*singular*). 4. Your brother walks with us. 5. We shall cross safely. 6. They were crossing safely. 7. They will never be able to cross safely.

ROME'S GREAT NAMES

From the great number of famous Romans we may select the names of four who are of especial importance. They are Caesar, Cicero, Vergil, and Augustus. These are not only famous men of Rome, but they are among the great men of the world.

CAESAR

Caesar first won fame as a general. He conquered for Rome the country which is now occupied by France, Belgium, Holland, and Switzerland. As a result of his conquest the Latin language was established in this region, and it has continued ever since to be the language of the greater part of the inhabitants of these countries. We have already learned that French is merely a modern form of Latin. In Holland and parts of Switzerland and Belgium, Latin was replaced by other languages.



CICERO

But Caesar was not merely a great general. He was also a statesman, and his plans for the improvement of Rome were of great importance. He was assassinated, however, before he had succeeded in carrying out all these plans. The month of July has its name from Julius, a part of Caesar's name.

Cicero was one of the most celebrated orators of the world.

His speeches have been read through all the centuries since the time when he lived, and they have had an influence on the oratory of modern nations. He wrote works on philosophy which have been important. We have also a great number of letters which Cicero wrote to his friends, and from these we learn much of the life and history of his times. The Romans long considered that the best form of Latin was that which was most like the writings of Cicero.

Among the famous poets of the world Vergil has a prominent place. His great poem, the *Aeneid*, has been translated into many languages and has served as a model for poets of other countries. The *Aeneid* tells the story of a hero who, according to legend, was the ancestor of Caesar and also of the founder of Rome. Besides the *Aeneid* Vergil wrote a group of poems describing country life and farm work.

The fame of Augustus has come from what he did as a ruler of Rome. He put an end to the civil wars which had been going on in Italy for many years, and he established peace with foreign nations. He improved the appearance of the city by the erection of many temples and other fine buildings. We are told that he declared he had found Rome a city of brick and had left it a city of marble.

Important changes in the government were made as a result of the work of Augustus. We have a record of the honor paid to him by the Romans in the name of the month of August, which was named for Augustus, just as July had been named in honor of Julius Caesar.

LESSON LXXX

PAST PERFECT

MEANING OF THE PAST PERFECT

586. The past perfect tense represents an act as completed at some specified or suggested time in the past. The English past perfect has the English auxiliary verb *had*. Thus, *I had carried, you had carried,* etc.

FORMATION OF THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

587. The past perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-erā-,** which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are used as in the imperfect. The **ā** of the tense sign is short before the endings **-m, -t,** and **-nt.**

Singular

portā′veram, *I had carried*
portā′verās, *you had carried*
portā′verat, *he had carried*

monu′eram, *I had warned*
monu′erās, *you had warned*
monu′erat, *he had warned*

Plural

portāverā′mus, *we had carried*
portāverā′tis, *you had carried*
portā′verant, *they had carried*

monuerā′mus, *we had warned*
monuerā′tis, *you had warned*
monu′erant, *they had warned*

THE PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

588. The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle with the imperfect tense of **sum.**

Singular	*Singular*
portā′tus eram, *I had been carried*	mo′nitus eram
portā′tus erās, *you had been carried*	mo′nitus erās
portā′tus erat, *he had been carried*	mo′nitus erat

Plural	*Plural*
portā'tī erāmus, *we had been carried*	mo'nitī erāmus
portā'tī erātis, *you had been carried*	mo'nitī erātis
portā'tī erant, *they had been carried*	mo'nitī erant

READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS REPELLUNTUR*

589. Ipse imperātor hostium illum locum cum multīs mīlitibus tenēbat. Parvum agmen circum montem mīserat, et hoc agmen ad castra nostra appropinquābat. Sōl surgere incipiēbat, sed vigilēs loca sua nōndum relīquerant. Mīlitēs nostrī, quī excitātī erant, signa et arma hostium vīdērunt, et multī celeriter ad vāllum cucurrērunt. Aliī portās aperuērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Hostēs nōn diū restitērunt, quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Castra sua petiērunt, sed multī in fugā interfectī sunt.

590. VOCABULARY

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum, open	**resistō, -sistere, -stitī,** resist
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self	**sōl, sōlis,** M., sun
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet	**surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum,** rise
petō, -ere, petīvī *or* **petiī, petītum,** seek, ask for	**teneō, -ēre, -uī,** hold

a. **Ipse** is declined exactly like **ille** (*see section* **236**) except that the neuter singular ends in **-um** in the nominative and accusative.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

591. Make the uncompleted verbs in the following sentences past perfects by supplying the tense sign and the person endings required by the sense of the sentence: 1. Saepe in eō locō sine perīculō ambulāv—(*subject "we"*). 2. Cūr puerōs nōn monu—(*subject "you"*) quī tēcum erant? 3. Legiō diū restit—, et multī interfectī erant. 4. Quis librum vīdit quem

in hōc locō relīqu—(*subject "I"*)? 5. Imperātor cum exercitū vēn—, et urbs tūta erat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

592. 1. What is a *petition?* What is a *partition?* 2. What is a *solar* eclipse? 3. What are *surging* waves? 4. What is a *tenacious* memory?

Optional Drill

593. 1. Petīveram; surrēxerās; tenuerat; aperuerant; restiterātis; petīverāmus. 2. Monitus erat; audītus erat; relictus erat; monitī erant; audītī erant; relictī erant. 3. Portam nōndum aperuerant; porta nōndum aperta erat; porta nōndum aperta est. 4. Resistit; restitit; restiterat; resistunt; restitērunt; restiterant. 5. Sōlem vīdimus; sōlem vīderāmus; in fugā interfectī sunt; in fugā interfectī erant. 6. Ipse rēx in fugā interfectus est. 7. Frāter ipsīus rēgis interfectus erat. 8. Fuī, fueram, fuit, fuerat.

594. 1. We resist; we have resisted; we had resisted; he has risen; he had risen. 2. They have held; they had held; they had sought the camp; they had not yet sought the camp. 3. The sun had risen; the sun had not yet risen. 4. The soldiers had been killed in flight. 5. The consul himself had opened the gate. 6. The gate had been opened by the consul himself.

ROMAN BUCKET

(*a*) Conjugate **possum** in the past perfect indicative.

(*b*) Decline together **ipse dux.**

(*c*) Conjugate **mittō** in the past perfect indicative passive.

LESSON LXXXI

DECLENSION OF *ĪDEM*

595. The declension of **īdem,** *same,* is as follows:

	Singular		
	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ī'dem	e'adem	i'dem
Gen.	ejus'dem	ejus'dem	ejus'dem
Dat.	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem
Acc.	eun'dem	ean'dem	i'dem
Abl.	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem
	Plural		
Nom.	ī'dem *or* eī'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
Gen.	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
Dat.	eīs'dem *or* īs'dem	eīs'dem *or* īs'dem	eīs'dem *or* īs'dem
Acc.	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
Abl.	eīs'dem *or* īs'dem	eīs'dem *or* īs'dem	eīs'dem *or* īs'dem

a. The forms of **īdem** are seen to be for the most part identical with those of **is** with the syllable **-dem** added. Before **d** the final **-m** is changed to **-n.**

b. Occasionally **īdem** is used as a pronoun meaning *the same person* (neuter, **idem,** *the same thing*). But it is commonly used as an adjective in agreement with a noun.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

596. 1. Īdem amīcus; ejusdem amīcī; ejusdem exercitūs. 2. Cum eōdem mīlite; cum eīsdem mīlitibus; cum eīsdem nūntiīs. 3. Eundem ducem habēmus; eōsdem ducēs habēmus. 4. In eādem urbe; in eīsdem urbibus; in eīsdem oppidīs. 5. In eō colle est oppidum; in eōdem colle est oppidum. 6. Frātrem ejus puerī videō; frātrem ejusdem puerī videō. 7. Eam legiō-

A ROMAN HARBOR

nem mittēmus; eandem legiōnem mittēmus. 8. Amīcī eōrum hominum sumus; amīcī eōrundem hominum sumus. 9. Patrēs nostrī ex eādem terrā vēnērunt. 10. Eās epistulās eīdem servō dedī.

597. 1. Of the same leader; by the same leader; by the same leaders. 2. From the same place; from the same places. 3. I told the story to the same messenger. 4. I told the story to the same messengers.

Optional Drill

598. 1. Frātrēs tuī nōn eōsdem librōs amant. 2. Titus et Sextus in eādem urbe habitant. 3. Vigilēs eundem sonum iterum audīvērunt. 4. Epistulam et librum eīdem puerō dedimus. 5. Nōn diū in eōdem locō manēs. 6. Patrēs nostrī ex eādem parte Eurōpae vēnērunt. 7. Rōmānī et Gallī ad idem oppidum properābant. 8. Librōs eōrundem poētārum legimus. 9. Hae legiōnēs ab eōdem imperātōre dūcentur.

599. 1. The Gauls and Romans did not have the same weapons. 2. We often walk with the same friends. 3. This is the same country to which we have sent soldiers. 4. We now fear the same dangers. 5. These boys are inhabitants of the same country.

(*a*) Decline together **īdem lēgātus.**

(*b*) Decline together **eadem urbs.**

(*c*) Give the accusative singular of **is** and **īdem** in all genders.

LESSON LXXXII

READING EXERCISE: *RŌMULUS ET REMUS*

600. 1. Animum attendite, puerī et puellae; fābulam vōbīs nārrābō. Ōlim duo frātrēs urbem condere incipiēbant. Ūnus ex hīs frātribus erat Rōmulus. Frāter ejus erat Remus. Uterque nōmen suum urbī dare cupiēbat, et inter eōs erat

contrōversia, quod duo nōmina eīdem urbī darī nōn poterant. Dēnique nōmen Rōma ex Rōmulō urbī datum est. Sed Remus erat īrātus et mūrōs urbis irrīsit, quod parvī erant. Tum ūnus ex comitibus Rōmulī Remum interfēcit.

2. Dux meus est Rōmulus, et nōmen ejus huic urbī dabitur. Nunc urbs est parva, sed posteā magna et clāra erit, et omnēs nōmen ejus audient. Cum urbs magna erit, magnōs mūrōs habēbit; hominēs tum eōs mūrōs nōn irrīdēbunt.

601. VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, M., mind, spirit
attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, turn toward; **animum attendere,** give attention
condō, -ere, condidī, conditum, found, establish
contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy
dēnique, *adv.*, finally
īrātus, -a, -um, angry
irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at, ridicule
Remus, -ī, M., Remus
Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

602. 1. We are citizens of the same town, but we are not friends. 2. These two boys were running to the same place. 3. Letters were given to the same messenger by the lieutenant and the centurion. 4. The fields of Gaul were often laid waste by the same enemies. 5. We shall send the same soldiers again to the enemy's camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

603. 1. What is an *animated* manner? 2. What is a *controversial* manner? 3. What is meant by an *irate* parent?

Optional Drill

604. 1. Hae urbēs ab eōdem duce conditae sunt. 2. Rōmulus et Remus nōn eundem numerum avium vīdērunt.

THE WALL OF AURELIAN

3. Animum attendēmus et audiēmus ea quae dīcis. 4. Inter eōs frātrēs erat magna contrōversia. 5. Comitēs Remī īrātī sunt quod nōmen suī ducis urbī nōn datum est. 6. Nōn iterum meōs mūrōs irrīdēbis. 7. Dēnique locum idōneum vīdērunt et in eō locō urbem condidērunt. 8. Hodiē magnam urbem vidēmus in eōdem locō in quō tum erat silva.

605. 1. I shall not send the same messenger again. 2. Wars were waged in Spain and in Italy by the same general. 3. There have been many controversies between these nations. 4. Finally peace was made and the army returned to (**in**) Italy. 5. These towns were captured by the same soldiers.

(*a*) Decline together **idem flūmen.**

(*b*) Decline together **īdem impetus.**

(*c*) Give the genitive plural of **is** and **īdem** in all genders.

LESSON LXXXIII

FUTURE PERFECT: THE PERFECT SYSTEM

MEANING OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

606. The future perfect tense represents an act as to be completed at some specified or suggested time in the future. Thus, *I shall have finished the work in two weeks.* In English the future perfect is used less frequently than the other tenses. In Latin it is used somewhat more frequently than in English.

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

607. The future perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-eri-,** which is added to the perfect stem. The person endings are used as in the present tense. The **i** of the tense sign disappears before **-ō** in the first person singular.

Singular	*Singular*
portā′verō, *I shall have carried*	monu′erō
portā′veris, *you will have carried*	monu′eris
portā′verit, *he will have carried*	monu′erit
Plural	*Plural*
portāve′rimus, *we shall have carried*	monue′rimus
portāve′ritis, *you will have carried*	monue′ritis
portā′verint, *they will have carried*	monu′erint

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

608. The future perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle of a verb with the future indicative of **sum.**

Singular	*Singular*
portā′tus erō, *I shall have been carried*	mo′nitus erō
portā′tus eris, *you will have been carried*	mo′nitus eris
portā′tus erit, *he will have been carried*	mo′nitus erit

Plural	*Plural*
portā'tī erimus, *we shall have been carried*	mo'nitī erimus
portā'tī eritis, *you will have been carried*	mo'nitī eritis
portā'tī erunt, *they will have been carried*	mo'nitī erunt

THE PERFECT SYSTEM

609. The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses make up the perfect system in the indicative mood. In the active these tenses have the following elements:

Perfect = perfect stem + special person endings (**-ī, -istī,** etc.)
Past perfect = perfect stem + **erā** + regular person endings.
Future perfect = perfect stem + **eri** + regular person endings.

In the passive they are as follows:

Perfect = perfect passive participle used with present tense of **sum.**
Past perfect = perfect passive participle used with imperfect tense of **sum.**
Future perfect = perfect passive participle used with future tense of **sum.**

READING EXERCISE: *VERBA MĪLITUM ANTE PROELIUM*

610. Ab omnibus partibus est silentium. Nox est obscūra, quod lūna nōn fulget. Hostēs adventum nostrum nōn vidēbunt, et in castra eōrum perveniēmus antequam arma parāverint. Deinde impetum faciēmus et multōs capiēmus. Hostēs fugere nōn poterunt, quod castra circumveniēmus. Cum captīvīs quōs cēperimus, urbem nostram in triumphō intrābimus, et omnēs cīvēs nōs propter victōriam nostram salūtābunt et laudābunt. Laetī urbem et amīcōs iterum vidēbimus. Longē ā patriā absumus et paene exulēs sumus.

Haec ante proelium erant verba mīlitum.

611. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M., approach, arrival
antequam, *conj.*, before
captīvus, -ī, M., prisoner
deinde, *adv.*, next
fulgeŏ, -ēre, fulsī, shine
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter
silentium, -ī, N., silence
triumphus, -ī, M., triumph

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

612. 1. We shall be happy, because we shall have seen our native country again. 2. I shall have walked for a long time, and I shall be tired out. 3. When you (shall) have returned, you will be unhappy. 4. The legion will have driven back the enemy, but the danger will remain.

A BARBARIAN

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

613. 1. Give a noun which is derived from **adventus.** 2. Complete the following outline of derivation by replacing the dash with a Latin verb: *captive*, **captīvus,** ——. 3. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *refulgent.* 4. What is a *triumphal* procession?

OPTIONAL DRILL

614. 1. Fūgerō; intrāverō; fūgerit; intrāverit. 2. Lūna surget; lūna surrēxerit. 3. Sōl fulget; sōl fulgēre incipit. 4. Verba tua audīvimus; verba tua audīverimus. 5. Deinde explōrātor captus est. 6. Dēni-

que mīlitēs captī sunt. 7. Impetum fēcerimus; impetus factus erit. 8. Mox stellae fulgēre coeperint (*see section* **536** *a*). 9. Castra circumveniēmus; castra circumvēnerimus.

615. 1. They will have fled; they will have arrived; they will have entered. 2. They will have taken; they had taken; they have taken. 3. We have been; we had been; we shall have been. 4. They will have founded a city; a city will have been founded. 5. They expect our arrival; our arrival is expected. 6. We shall make an attack before they arrive (shall have arrived). 7. There is silence in the city. 8. We hear the words of the leader. 9. We entered the city in triumph.

(*a*) Give the third person plural of **laudō** in the active voice in the six tenses which have been studied.

(*b*) Give the third person singular of **mittō** in the passive voice of the six tenses which have been studied.

(*c*) Conjugate **maneō** in the past perfect and future perfect, active voice.

FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXVIII-LXXXIII

adventus, -ūs
animus, -ī
captīvus, -ī
contrōversia, -ae
honor, -ōris
injūria, -ae
silentium, -ī
sōl, sōlis
triumphus, -ī

īrātus, -a, -um
uter, -tra, -trum

ego
tū

īdem, eadem, idem
ipse, ipsa, ipsum

aperiō, -īre
attendō, -ere
condō, -ere
fulgeō, -ēre
intrō, -āre
irrīdeō, -ēre
petō, -ere
resistō, -ere
surgō, -ere
teneō, -ēre

deinde
dēnique
magis
nōndum
numquam
tūtō

an
antequam

DECLENSION OF *EGO* AND *TŪ*

(See sections **572, 573**)

DECLENSION OF *ĪDEM*

(See section **595**)

THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

(See sections **587, 588**)

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

(See sections **607, 608**)

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF VERBS

(See section **609**)

LESSON LXXXIV

SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

FORMATION OF SYNOPSIS

616. A group of verb forms made up by taking any one person of a verb in all the tenses of one voice and number is called a *synopsis*. A synopsis may be in any person, in either number, and in either voice.

SYNOPSIS OF *PORTŌ* AND *DŪCŌ*

617. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular, active voice, and the synopsis of **dūcō** in the third person plural, passive voice are as follows:

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum		**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum**
PRES.	portō	dūcuntur
IMPF.	portābam	dūcēbantur
FUT.	portābō	dūcentur

PERF.	portāvī	ductī sunt
P. PERF.	portāveram	ductī erant
F. PERF.	portāverō	ductī erunt

READING EXERCISE

618. Gallia antīqua erat dīvīsa in partēs trēs. Hae trēs partēs neque eandem linguam neque eāsdem lēgēs habēbant. Nūllum commūne imperium erat, sed multae gentēs erant, quae rēgēs aut ducēs habēbant. Interdum hae gentēs inter sē bellum gerēbant. Ōlim ūna gēns quae ab hostibus victa erat sociōs arcessīvit. Hī sociī erant Germānī, quōrum fīnēs erant trāns flūmen Rhēnum. Germānī auxilium dedērunt, sed agrōs Gallōrum occupāvērunt ā quibus arcessītī erant. Dēnique ex Galliā ā Rōmānīs expulsī sunt, sed Rōmānī in Galliā mānsērunt et Gallōs superāvērunt. Dē hīs bellīs in librīs Latīnīs legimus.

MAP OF GAUL

619. VOCABULARY

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, summon, call in
commūnis, -e, common
imperium, -ī, N., power, government
lēx, lēgis, F., law
Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

620. 1. What are *antiques?* 2. What relation in meaning do you see between **lēx** and *legislature?* 3. What is an *imperious* manner? 4. Find in a dictionary the derivation of *empire.* 5. What relation in meaning do you see between **commūnis** and *community?*

Optional Drill

621. 1. In Italiā antīquā; propter multās lēgēs; dē hāc lēge. 2. Vīta commūnis; magnum imperium; lēx et rēx et pāx. 3. Expulī; expellī; arcessīvī; arcessī. 4. Bellum gestum est. 5. Saepe dē hōc templō fāmam audīvī. 6. Imperium vestrum nōn probātur. 7. Imperium nostrum nōn probābātur.

622. 1. Give a synopsis of **laudō** in the third person singular, active voice. 2. Give a synopsis of **terreō** in the third person plural, passive voice. 3. Give a synopsis of **pōnō** in the third person singular, passive voice. 4. Give a synopsis of **veniō** in the first person plural, active voice.

LESSON LXXXV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON

623. Of the three adjective forms, *brave, braver, bravest,* we say *brave* is in the positive degree, *braver* in the comparative degree, and *bravest* in the superlative degree.

Most English adjectives end in *-er* for the comparative and

-est for the superlative, as in the comparison of *brave* just given. But some adjectives prefix *more* for the comparative and *most* for the superlative, instead of adding *-er* and *-est*. Thus, *powerful, more powerful, most powerful.*

LATIN ADJECTIVES IN THE THREE DEGREES OF COMPARISON

624. The forms of the Latin adjectives **altus, fortis,** and **fēlīx** in the three degrees of comparison are as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, -a, -um *high*	altior, altius *higher*	altissimus, -a, -um *highest*
fortis, -e *brave*	fortior, fortius *braver*	fortissimus, -a, um *bravest*
fēlīx (*gen.* fēlīcis) *happy*	fēlīcior, fēlīcius *happier*	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um *happiest*

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE

625. The comparative of Latin adjectives regularly ends in **-ior** for the masculine and feminine and **-ius** for the neuter. These endings are added to the base. Thus of **fēlīx,** genitive **fēlīcis,** the base is **fēlīc-,** and to it the comparative endings are joined. Comparatives are third declension adjectives. Their declension will be explained in the next lesson. Only positive and superlative forms are used in the translation exercises of this lesson.

FORMATION OF THE SUPERLATIVE

626. The superlative is formed regularly by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum** to the base. Thus we have seen that from **fēlīx,** base **fēlīc-,** the superlative is **fēlīcissimus, -a, -um.** In like manner the superlative of **potēns** (genitive **potentis,** base **potent-**) is **potentissimus, -a, -um.**

The superlative of any adjective is declined like **bonus** (*see section* **170**).

READING EXERCISE

627. Sociīs nostrīs grātiās agimus quod auxilium nōbīs dedērunt. Ex magnō bellō servātī sumus, et iterum in terrā nostrā est pāx. Nūper patria nostra in perīculō erat, sed nunc tūtī sumus. Ab omnibus partibus vōcēs eōrum audīmus quī propter fīnem bellī sunt laetī. Nunc ipsum nōmen bellī ōdimus. Ea terra est fēlīcissima quae pācem habet.

628. VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, do, drive

grātia, -ae, F., favor; **grātiās agere,** to thank, to give thanks to

nūper, *adv.*, recently

ōdī, ōdisse, hate

vōx, vōcis, F., voice, word

a. The verb **ōdī** has only the forms of the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses. But the perfect is translated as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

629. 1. This plan is safest. 2. This centurion is the bravest, but he is not the wisest leader. 3. We saw the highest mountains of Europe. 4. The longest route (**iter**) is not the safest. 5. Who has the longest sword? 6. We have crossed the widest river of America.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

630. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **agō** and *action?* 2. What is the meaning of *odium?* 3. What is *vocal* music?

Optional Drill

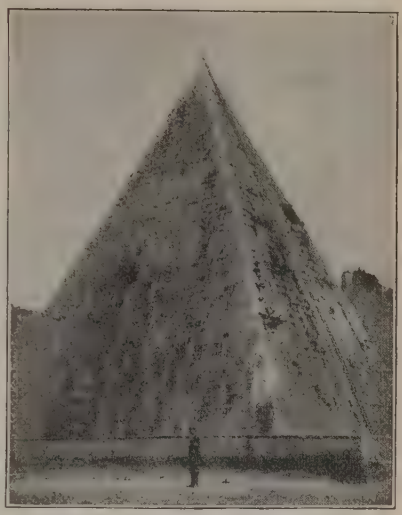
631. 1. Vir benignissimus; bellum longissimum; collēs altissimī. 2. Arbor altissima; rēx potentissimus. 3. Hic puer est amīcus meus cārissimus. 4. Fortissimī mīlitēs castra dēfendēbant. 5. Vir sapientissimus erit dux. 6. Grātiās tibi agō. 7. Grātiās mihi agis.

632: 1. We have seen the most famous cities of Europe. 2. The town is on the highest hill. 3. We have sent our bravest soldiers. 4. This man was formerly the most powerful king in that land. 5. Our friends thanked us.

(*a*) Write the comparison of **cārus, lātus, longus, potēns, sapiēns.**

(*b*) Decline **altus** in the positive and in the superlative.

(*c*) Decline **gravis** in the positive and in the superlative



THE PYRAMID OF CESTIUS

LESSON LXXXVI

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES: TRANSLATION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

THE DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

633. Adjectives in the comparative degree are declined as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	lā′tior	lā′tius	lātiō′rēs	lātiō′ra
Gen.	lātiō′ris	lātiō′ris	lātiō′rum	lātiō′rum
Dat.	lātiō′rī	lātiō′rī	lātiō′ribus	lātiō′ribus
Acc.	lātiō′rem	lā′tius	lātiō′rēs	lātiō′ra
Abl.	lātiō′re	lātiō′re	lātiō′ribus	lātiō′ribus

TRANSLATION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

634. Sometimes a comparative is translated with *too* or *rather* instead of an English comparative, and a superlative with *very* instead of an English superlative:

flūmen lātius, *a rather wide river.*
mōns altissimus, *a very high mountain.*

READING EXERCISE: *PUER IN FLŪMEN CADIT*

635. 1. Parvus puer in flūmen cecidit. In perīculō est quod flūmen est altissimum.

Potestne natāre puer?

Nōn potest. Fūnem dēmittite.

Ego in flūmen dēsiliam et eum juvābō.

Potesne tū natāre?

Ita. Saepe in flūmine et lacū natō. Dā mihi fūnem et puerum servābō.

Hic fūnis est brevis. Dēmittite fūnem longiōrem.

Nunc puer fūnem prehendit. Trahite, amīcī, puerum juvāte.

2. Omnēs natāre scīre dēbent. Sīc aut vītam suam servā-

bunt aut aliōs juvāre poterunt. Is quī bene natat nōn timet cum in flūmen cadit.

Sciuntne amīcī tuī natāre?

Ita. Nōnne nōs vīdistis in flūmine quod nōn longē ab oppidō nostrō abest? Ibi saepe natāmus.

636. VOCABULARY

brevis, -e, short
cadō, -ere, cecidī, fall
dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, let down
dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum, jump down
fūnis, fūnis, -ium, M., rope
lacus, -ūs, M., lake
prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, take hold of
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, drag, draw, pull

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

637. 1. This lake is very wide, but it is not deep. 2. This consul is wiser, but he is not braver. 3. This route is longer and safer. 4. You are happier now because you have friends. 5. We shall seek a safer place.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

638. 1. What is *brevity?* 2. What does a *tractor* do? 3. What is the meaning of *distract?* 4. What is a *prehensile*-tailed monkey?

Optional Drill

639. 1. Hasta est longior quam gladius. 2. Nunc tūtiōrēs sumus quod sociōs habēmus. 3. Numquam collēs altiōrēs vīdī. 4. Aestāte noctēs sunt breviōrēs quam hieme. 5. Cum fortiōribus mīlitibus; in colle altissimō; rēgēs potentiōrēs.

640. 1. I am now safer because I have more powerful friends. 2. My brother is happier in America than in Europe. 3. This rope is too short. 4. Your city is very famous.

(*a*) Write the declension of the comparatives of **longus** and **sapiēns.**

(*b*) Compare **benignus, brevis,** and **clārus.**

ROMAN DRESS

There are in existence many statues which show us the general appearance of the clothing worn by the Romans. We have also references in Roman books from which we can learn much of the manner of Roman dress.

The most important outer garment worn by men was not at all like a coat or any other article of dress ordinarily seen in modern times. It was called a toga and was a kind of wrap with no sleeves. Its shape and size varied somewhat at different periods, but in general it was rounded at the lower edge, while the upper edge was straight, and somewhat shorter than the lower. The sides sloped, and were rounded off at the bottom.

For a tall man the toga was perhaps about twelve feet long, possibly more. This made a rather bulky wrap when it was worn, and its arrangement was somewhat difficult. A slave who knew just how the folds were arranged would help the master in putting the toga on. The picture given here shows the Emperor Augustus wearing a toga which was probably a little larger than the one described above.

AUGUSTUS WEARING THE TOGA

Under the toga was worn the tunic, a garment which had some resemblance to a very long, loose-fitting sweater. It was made of woolen cloth, however, and hence was not so heavy as a sweater. Usually the tunic had short sleeves. It was worn

with a belt through which it was pulled up at the waist so that it came about to the knees. Occasionally long-sleeved tunics which came down to the feet were worn, but these were not regarded as a dignified form of dress.

The toga was a formal article of dress and was not worn about the house on ordinary occasions or by those engaged in work. Probably a workingman of the poorer class would not own a toga. In the house the tunic alone was worn, and this was the dress of a man engaged in work.

Both the tunic and the toga were usually of wool and their color was the natural color of the wool. But the toga worn by the high officials of the government had a purple border, and the tunic worn by the senators and by a class of wealthy citizens known as knights had a stripe or perhaps two stripes down the front and back. Young boys also wore the toga with a border until they were about fifteen years old, when they laid this aside for the plain toga worn by men who were not officials. Generals who had won important victories and were given the honor of a special celebration at Rome wore on the occasion of this celebration a bright-colored toga.

A ROMAN WOMAN WEARING THE STOLA AND THE PALLA

The dress of women resembled that of modern times more nearly than did the garments worn by men. There were two tunics, the outer of which, the stola, resembled a dress with a long skirt coming to the feet. Either the inner or the outer tunic had long sleeves. A wrap called a palla was often worn, but it was smaller than the toga and may be compared to a large shawl of light weight draped about the upper part of the body. The material of the gar-

ments worn by women was lighter and finer than for men's clothing. Sometimes they were of silk.

When in the city Roman men who were not engaged in outdoor work did not ordinarily wear hats. Part of the toga could be pulled up over the head as a protection when necessary. A broad-brimmed felt hat was worn when traveling, and the workingman wore a woolen cap.

Shoes were of two classes. The first were merely a protection for the sole of the foot held in place by straps or thongs across the foot and about the ankle. These were ordinarily worn in the house and to some extent in the street. Shoes of the other class furnished protection for the entire foot and had the general character of a modern shoe, but they came up on the foot higher than an oxford.

LESSON LXXXVII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

641. Adjectives ending in **-er** form their superlative by adding **-rimus** (**-a, -um**) to the nominative singular of the masculine. Their comparative is formed like that of other adjectives.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser, -era, -erum	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrum	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um

SPECIAL ADJECTIVES IN *-LIS*

642. The following adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus** to the base:

facilis, *easy*	similis, *like*	humilis, *low*
difficilis, *difficult*	dissimilis, *unlike*	

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um

Other adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative regularly with **-issimus.**

READING EXERCISE: *ULTIMUS RĒX RŌMĀNUS*

643. Ōlim Rōma rēgēs habēbat, sed ultimus hōrum rēgum, Tarquinius nōmine, propter superbiam suam et propter scelus fīliī ex urbe expulsus est. Tum cōnsulēs creātī sunt, neque posteā Rōmānī rēgem habēbant. Sed alius rēx, quī erat amīcus et socius Tarquiniī, exercitum contrā Rōmānōs dūxit et urbem capere cupīvit. Tarquinius et fīliī ejus cum hōc exercitū ad urbem vēnērunt. Hī hostēs ā Rōmānīs victī sunt, sed victōria nōn erat facilis. Posteā Tarquinius cum fīliīs et uxōre erat exul et in parvā urbe habitābat quae longē aberat. Itaque miserrimī (*see section* **634**) erant quod in patriam redīre nōn poterant. Ea parva urbs Rōmae (*see section* **68**) erat dissimillima. Propter scelera Tarquiniī et fīliōrum ejus Rōmānī semper nōmen rēgis ōdērunt.

644. VOCABULARY

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, elect, choose; make
contrā, *prep. w. acc.*, against
dissimilis, -e, unlike
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore
scelus, sceleris, N., crime
superbia, -ae, F., pride, haughtiness
Tarquinius, -ī, M., Tarquin, *a king of Rome*
ultimus, -a, -um, last
uxor, -ōris, F., wife

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

645. 1. Rome is the most beautiful city of Italy. 2. This king is very unhappy because he is an exile. 3. We live in a very beautiful town. 4. Victory will be very easy, and the enemy will be driven out. 5. These boys are very unlike.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

646. 1. What is an *ultimatum?* 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of the phrase *pro and con.* 3. What English adjective is derived from **dissimilis?**

Optional Drill

647. 1. Terra pulcherrima; iter facillimum; hostēs ācerrimī. 2. Patria tua et patria mea sunt dissimillimae. 3. Ducem fortissimum et ācerrimum barbarōrum cēpimus. 4. Haec via est brevissima sed nōn est facillima. 5. Rōmānī uxōrem Tarquiniī ōderant. 6. Propter superbiam vestram expulsī estis.

648. 1. These soldiers are very unlike. 2. Your brother is the unhappiest of these boys. 3. The longest roads are often the easiest. 4. These islands are very beautiful.

(*a*) Write the comparison of **similis, difficilis,** and **dissimilis.**

(*b*) Decline the comparative of **similis.**

ALTAR OF JUPITER

WORD STUDY VII

WORDS WITH MANY DERIVATIVES

Certain Latin words are of especial importance in English because of the great number of derivatives they yield. This is true of some Latin verbs which have been seen in the preceding lessons. The following lists of derivatives are not complete, but they serve to show the manner in which English has made use of some Latin words.

capiō, *take*	**dīcō**, *say*	**dūcō**, *lead*
captive	diction	duke
captor	dictionary	duchess
capture	dictum	ductile
captivate	predict	conduct
captivity	prediction	conductor
anticipate	contradict	aqueduct
accept	contradiction	viaduct
acceptance	edict	conducive
acceptable	verdict	reduction
unacceptable	valedictory	abduction
incipient		introduce
intercept		introduction
receive		induce
recipe		induction
reception		produce

faciō, *make, do*		**jaciō**, *throw*
fact	efficient	eject
faction	deficient	reject
factor	proficient	inject
faculty	sufficient	dejected
benefactor	beneficent	object
manufacture		subject
confectionery		project

moveō, *move*

movement	locomotive	remove
movable	locomotion	immovable
mobile	demote	automobile
motor	promote	automotive
motive	emotion	
motion	commotion	

Exercise: Make similar lists for **dō, veniō,** and **mittō.**

LESSON LXXXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

649. There are a few adjectives which are compared irregularly. The most important are the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um *good*	melior, melius *better*	optimus, -a, -um *best*
malus, -a, -um *bad*	pejor, pejus *worse*	pessimus, -a, -um *worst*
magnus, -a, -um *large*	major, majus *larger*	maximus, -a, -um *largest*
multus, -a, -um *much*	——, plūs *more*	plūrimus, -a, -um *most*
parvus, -a, -um *small*	minor, minus *smaller*	minimus, -a, -um *smallest*

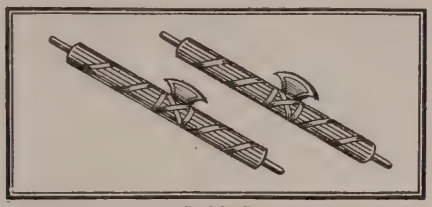
a. In the singular **plūs** is a neuter noun, with the genitive **plūris.** In the plural it is declined as an adjective with the forms **plūrēs, plūra,** etc. See Appendix, section **16.**

READING EXERCISE

650. Prīmus cōnsul Rōmānus erat vir fortis quī patriam amābat. Contrā hostēs in bellō fortiter pugnābat. Fīliōs suōs interfēcit quod rēgem restituere cupiēbant. Patria eī erat cārior quam fīliī. Dēnique in proeliō interfectus est, sed in eōdem proeliō ipse fīlium Tarquiniī occīdit. Nōmen ejus semper apud Rōmānōs erat in honōre et poētae eum laudābant.

Rōma multōs cōnsulēs habuit quī virī clārī erant. Prīmīs temporibus cōnsulēs saepe exercitūs in bellō dūxērunt et cum hostibus pugnābant. Sed posteā in urbe manēbant et aliī ducēs mīlitēs in bellō dūxērunt.

Rōma nōmen clārum habēbat quod Rōmānī patriam amābant et quod multī ducēs eōrum erant virī fortēs et sapientēs.



FASCES

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

651. 1. Your plan is the wisest and the best. 2. Sicily is the largest of these islands. 3. I will give you a better book. 4. This man's reputation is very bad. 5. Our ships are larger than the Roman ships.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

652. 1. What is a *pessimist?* An *optimist?* 2. What is meant by *minor* faults? 3. What is *maximum* efficiency? 4. What connection can you see between **major** and *majority?* 5. What is the source of the English word *plural?*

Optional Drill

653. 1. Maximum bellum; minimum saxum; pessimum cōnsilium. 2. Major exercitus; melior schola; pejor poēta. 3. Majōrēs cōpiās statim mittēmus. 4. Ille cōnsul erat optimus dux. 5. Pessimum cōnsilium semper dās. 6. Tum meliōrēs cīvēs habēbāmus. 7. Perīculum nunc majus est.

654. 1. This school is the best but it is not the largest. 2. My cottage is on the smallest island. 3. This man is a worse citizen than his father. 4. I will give you a larger reward.

(*a*) Decline the comparatives of **bonus** and **parvus.**

(*b*) Write the comparison of **sapiēns, pulcher, similis,** and **magnus.**

SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXXIV-LXXXVIII

fūnis, fūnis
grātia, -ae
imperium, -ī
lacus, -ūs
lēx, lēgis
scelus, sceleris
superbia, -ae
uxor, uxōris
vōx, vōcis

antīquus, -a, -um
brevis, -e
commūnis, -e
dissimilis, -e
ultimus, -a, -um

agō, -ere
arcessō, -ere
cadō, -ere
creō, -āre
dēmittō, -ere
dēsiliō, -īre

ōdī, ōdisse
prehendō, -ere
trahō, -ere

nūper
contrā
itaque

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(See section **624**)

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *ER-* AND *-LIS*

(See sections **641, 642**)

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

(See section **649**)

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

(See section **633**)

THE SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

(See sections **616, 617**)

LESSON LXXXIX

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

THE DERIVATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES

655. In English we have many adverbs which are formed by adding *-ly* to adjectives; thus the adverb *slowly* is formed from the adjective *slow*, *briskly* from *brisk*, *carefully* from *careful*.

Most Latin adverbs are also formed from adjectives.

ADVERBS FROM FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

656. Many adverbs are formed in Latin from first and second declension adjectives by adding **-ē** to the base. The following are examples:

lātus, *wide*	lātē, *widely*
cārus, *dear*	cārē, *dearly*
longus, *long*	longē, *at a distance, far*

ADVERBS FROM THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

657. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** or **-iter** to the base (**-er** if the base ends in **-nt**).

fortis, *brave*	fortiter, *bravely*
audāx, *bold*	audācter, *boldly*
sapiēns, *wise*	sapienter, *wisely*

a. The neuter accusative of an adjective is sometimes used as an adverb; **facile,** *easily;* **multum,** *much.*

b. The adverb corresponding to **magnus** is **magnopere,** to **bonus** is **bene.** Some adverbs do not have a corresponding adjective: **saepe,** *often,* **semper,** *always,* **numquam,** *never,* and many others.

658. READING EXERCISE: A SUCCESSFUL HUNT[1]

AN ARCHER

In silvā, ubi lentē ambulābam, magnum cervum vīdī. Ventus flābat, et cervus sonitum pedum meōrum audīre nōn poterat. Arcum meum celeriter cēpī et cervum prīmā sagittā vulnerāvī. Deinde alteram sagittam mīsī, et eum interfēcī. Nunc cervum umerīs meīs ad comitēs portō. Mox cēnam parābimus. Post cēnam in silvam redībō, quod tēctum ibi vīdī. Sed nūllī virī in cōnspectū erant. Itaque hunc locum explōrāre cupiō.

659. VOCABULARY

arcus, -ūs, M., bow
cervus, -ī, M., deer
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow
lentē, *adv.,* slowly
lītus, lītoris, N., shore
similis, -e, like, similar
sonitus, -ūs, M., sound
umerus, -ī, M., shoulder
ventus, -ī, M., wind

a. Frequently a noun or pronoun in the dative is used with **similis: similis *animālī,*** like an animal.

[1]While returning from Troy, Ulysses, one of the Greek heroes, was driven to the shore of a certain island. This reading exercise and those of the four following lessons represent scenes during his stay on the island.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

660. 1. The deer was running swiftly through the forest. 2. The man who was carrying the bow and arrows was walking slowly. 3. I killed the deer easily with my arrows. 4. The sailors bravely defended themselves and the ships. 5. We made an attack vigorously and we captured the camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

661. 1. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *arch* and *archer*. 2. What is the original meaning of *inflated?* 3. What is a *simile?*

Optional Drill

662. 1. Celeriter ambulābam; lentē ambulābās; hostēs ācriter pugnābant. 2. Comes tuus graviter vulnerātus est. 3. Fortiter Horātius pontem dēfendit. 4. Cōpiae rēgis nōn facile repellentur. 5. Vīlla nostra nōn longē ā silvā abest.

663. 1. We quickly prepared dinner. 2. Our leader does not easily carry the large deer. 3. The army comes slowly through the city. 4. The attack was made vigorously by the enemy at that time.

(*a*) Give the adverbs formed from **gravis** and **altus.**

(*b*) Point out the adverbs in section **660.**

(*c*) Make a list of all the adverbs in the last three review lessons.

(*d*) Write the declension of **arcus** and **līrus.**

LESSON XC

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

ADVERBS COMPARED REGULARLY

664. Adverbs derived from adjectives regularly have as their comparatives the neuter accusative singular form of the

corresponding adjective. Their superlative is made by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē (*from* **lātus**)	lātius	lātissimē
ācriter (*from* **ācer**)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (*from* **facilis**)	facilius	facillimē

IRREGULAR ADVERBS

665. The following adverbs are irregular either in their formation or their comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *badly*	pejus	pessimē
magnopere, *greatly*	magis	maximē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
parum, *little, too little*	minus	minimē

a. Other irregularly compared adverbs are given in the Appendix, section **18.**

READING EXERCISE: A DISSATISFIED COMPANY

666. (*The sailors speak*). Rēctē ducem nostrum culpāmus, quī nōs hūc dūxit. Ēsurīmus, neque cibum invenīre possumus. Ducem bonum nōn habēmus, neque dī immortālēs eum amant. In silvam cum arcū iit, quia cervī in silvā sunt, sed ipse cibum habēbit sī cervum interficiet, et nōs ēsuriēmus. Patriam nostram relīquimus et in bellō cum eō (homine) pugnāvimus, sed nunc nōs dēseruit. Nāvem parābimus et ad patriam redībimus. Ibi amīcī nōs expectant, et hī nōbīs cibum dabunt. Sī tūtī illam terram iterum vidēbimus, numquam eam relinquēmus. Satis in bellō pugnāvimus et satis lātē errāvimus. Amīcōs vidēre et in patriā manēre maximē cupimus.

667. VOCABULARY

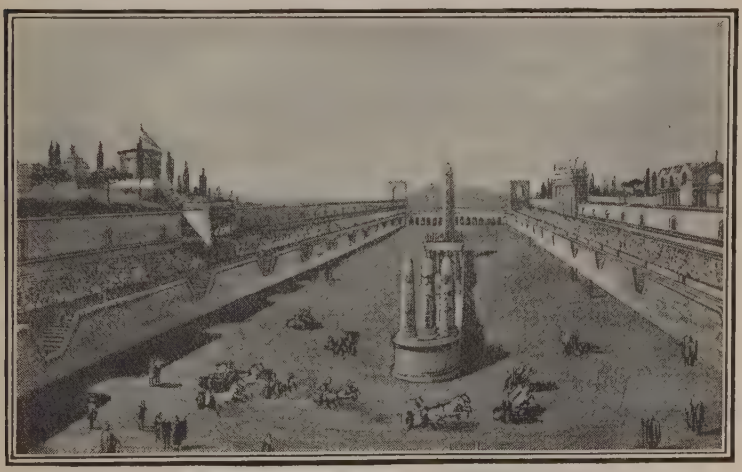
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame
dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, desert
deus, -ī (*nom. pl.* **dī**), M., a god
ēsuriō, -īre, be hungry
immortālis, -e, immortal
inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find
lātē, *adv.*, widely
quia, *conj.*, because
rēctē, *adv.*, rightly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

668. 1. You blame me, but who will lead you better? 2. The gods do not greatly love this city. 3. We now fear the enemy less, but we are not yet safe. 4. We very greatly desire to return to our own country. 5. The Gauls formerly wandered more widely.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

669. 1. What is a *culpable* action? 2. From which of the principal parts of **dēserō** have our English derivatives come? 3. Find a noun which is connected in derivation with **immortālis.** 4. What is the original meaning of *invent?*



THE CIRCUS OF MAXENTIUS (RESTORATION)

Optional Drill

670. 1. Magnopere Etrūscōs timētis. 2. Castra male mūnīta sunt. 3. Hic poēta clārus maximē laudātus est. 4. Optimē pōns ab Horātiō dēfēnsus est. 5. Minus facile urbem oppugnāre poterimus quod flūmen est lātum.

671. 1. The boy cannot swim well. 2. We shall less easily find food in that country. 3. The city will be better defended by a larger army. 4. The sentinels very easily heard the voices of the enemy.

(*a*) Write the comparison of **rēctē** (from **rēctus**).

(*b*) Write the comparison of **miserē** (from **miser**).

(*c*) Compare the adjectives **bonus, malus, magnus.**

LESSON XCI

QUOTATIONS: INDIRECT DISCOURSE

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

672. 1. A direct quotation is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker. Thus, *He said, "I will come."*

2. An indirect quotation is one which repeats the thought but not the exact words of the original speaker. In English an indirect quotation is often introduced by the conjunction *that.* Thus, *He said that he would come.*

a. Sometimes no conjunction is used. Thus, *He said he would come.*

INDIRECT QUOTATIONS IN LATIN

673. In Latin, a simple sentence when used in an indirect quotation has its verb in the infinitive and its subject in the accusative. No conjunction is used to introduce indirect quotations in Latin.

Dīcit puerum in silvā ambulāre, *He says that the boy is walking in the forest.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

674. The name *indirect discourse* is given to the use of the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect quotations, and also to certain other expressions which are not exactly quotations. In such sentences as *I heard that you had received a letter*, and *Everyone thought that the day would be pleasant*, the clauses introduced by *that* take the same form in Latin as the indirect quotation given in section **673.** That is, their verbs will be infinitives and their subjects will stand in the accusative.

Indirect discourse is used with verbs of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing*, and the like.

Crēdō *tē* lībrum meum *habēre*, *I believe* (*that*) *you have my book.*

a. A predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in indirect discourse is in the accusative, to agree with the subject.

Putāmus ducem nostrum *fortem* esse, *We think* (*that*) *our leader is brave.*

READING EXERCISE: THE FAULT-FINDERS REPROVED

675. (*The sailor who has been left in charge speaks.*) Dīcō ducem nostrum fidēlem esse. Quod cibum nōn habēmus, in silvam iit, ubi crēdō eum cibum petere. Ferās interficiet et carnem nōbīs dabit. Putō vōs ignāvōs esse et nihil scīre. Mare timētis et omnia timētis. Quod ēsurītis, ducem bonum nostrum culpātis et dīcitis eum vōs dēserere. Vōs nōn dēseruit neque dēseret. Etiam nunc hominem videō quem esse ducem nostrum crēdō. Rēctā ad nōs venit, et aliquid (*something*) grave umerīs portat. Habitus ejus ostendit eum esse ducem nostrum. Cervum portat, quem in silvā interfēcit. Mox cervus in (*on*) igne pōnētur, et vōs cibum habēbitis.

676. VOCABULARY

carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust
fera, -ae, F., wild animal
fidēlis, -e, faithful
habitus, -ūs, M., appearance, garb
ignis, ignis, -ium, M., fire
nihil, *indeclinable,* N., nothing
rēctā, *adv.,* directly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

677. 1. You say that your friends love you. 2. I think you do not have many friends. 3. The sailors believe that their leader wishes to desert them. 4. I say that our leader is faithful. 5. The leader, who has killed a deer, will return to the shore.

A ROMAN SACRIFICE

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

678. 1. What is a *carnivorous* animal? 2. Give a noun derived from **fidēlis.** 3. Find a verb derived from **ignis.** 4. What does a *nihilist* desire in the way of government?

Optional Drill

679. 1. Dux noster est fidēlis. 2. Dīcimus ducem nostrum fidēlem esse. 3. Putō vōs mare timēre. 4. Sciō nautās cibum

nōn habēre. 5. Dux dīxit nōs nihil scīre. 6. Comitēs meī nōn crēdidērunt mē cibum petere. 7. Cōnsul audīvit hostēs appropinquāre. 8. Vīdimus urbem in perīculō esse. 9. Vīdimus nautās cēnam parāre. 10. Rēctā ad mare veniunt. 11. Ferās interfēcī et carnem vōbīs dabō. 12. Habitus illīus virī ostendit eum nōn esse Rōmānum.

680. 1. The sailor said that the leader was coming. 2. We saw that the man was carrying a deer. 3. I think you fear wild animals. 4. The barbarians heard that we had no weapons. 5. The deer has been placed on the fire, and we shall soon have food.

(*a*) Give the present active and passive infinitives of **expectō, videō, petō, mūniō.**

(*b*) Write two English sentences which if translated into Latin would take the construction of indirect discourse.

(*c*) Decline **habitus** in the singular number.

LESSON XCII

NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

681. The genitive singular of the fifth declension ends **in -ēī** (after a consonant, **-eī**). The nominative singular always ends in **-ēs.** The nouns **diēs,** *day,* and **rēs,** *thing,* are declined as follows:

	diēs, M., F.		**rēs,** F.		*Endings*	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
NOM.	di′ēs	di′ēs	rēs	rēs	**-ēs**	**-ēs**
GEN.	diē′ī	diē′rum	re′ī	rē′rum	**-ēī (-eī)**	**-ērum**
DAT.	diē′ī	diē′bus	re′ī	rē′bus	**-ēī (-eī)**	**-ēbus**
ACC.	di′em	di′ēs	rem	rēs	**-em**	**-ēs**
ABL.	di′ē	diē′bus	rē	rē′bus	**-ē**	**-ēbus**

a. **Diēs,** *day,* is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine, except one compound of **diēs.**

b. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined in full. The other nouns of this declension lack some or all of the plural forms.

READING EXERCISE: FOOD AT LAST

682. Hic nauta rāmōs siccōs portat, ille (nauta) rēmum frāctum habet, quem in lītore invēnit. Omnēs ignem quam prīmum accendere et cēnam parāre properant. Nam per omnem diem sine cibō in lītore fuērunt, et nunc laetī ducem appropinquāre vident cum cervō, quem umerīs portat. Saepe dīxērunt ducem nōn esse fidēlem, sed hanc rem nōn esse vēram nunc sciunt. Ducem nunc laudant, ducī grātiās nunc agunt, quī vītam eōrum servāvit. Sed multī ex eīs neque bonī neque fortēs sunt. Sī cibum habent, nihil aliud cupiunt, nihil aliud sciunt. Nōn vident ducem fortem vītam eōrum servāre.

683. VOCABULARY

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, kindle, light
diēs, diēī, M. *or* F., day
quam prīmum, as soon as possible.
rāmus, -ī, M., bough, branch
rēmus, -ī, M., oar
rēs, reī, F., thing
siccus, -a, -um, dry
vērus, -a, -um, true

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

684. 1. On that day (*see section* **541**) many brave men were killed. 2. I have often heard this fact (thing). 3. You cannot (will not be able to) kindle a fire in this place. 4. Why did you not announce this fact (thing) at once? 5. You know that the days are long in summer.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

685. 1. What is the literal meaning of *sine die?* How is this phrase used in connection with the meetings of assemblies? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *ramify.* 3. What is the derivation of *real?* 4. What is a *veracious* narrative?

Optional Drill

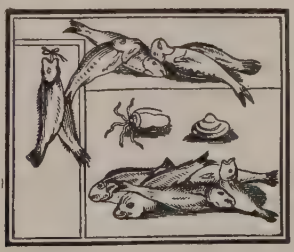
686. 1. Illīus diēī; eārum rērum; eō diē; hīs diēbus. 2. Multae rēs; multārum rērum; multōrum diērum. 3. Propter hās rēs auxilium postulāvimus. 4. Propter eam rem fēlīcēs erāmus. 5. Eō diē nūlla animālia in silvā vīdimus. 6. Multōs diēs (*see section* **542**) vōs expectāvimus. 7. Crēdō vōs propter eam rem manēre. 8. Scīmus hieme diēs esse brevēs. 9. Rāmōs siccōs in silvā invēnimus. 10. Nūllōs rēmōs habēmus. 11. Ignem quam prīmum accendēmus.

687. 1. On this day we shall see our native country. 2. They will remain for many days. 3. On account of this fact (thing) many blamed the consul. 4. We wish to prepare dinner as soon as possible.

(*a*) Give the ablative singular and the genitive plural of **porta, rāmus, dux, animal, exercitus, diēs.**

(*b*) Decline together **haec rēs.**

(*c*) Name the classes of verbs with which indirect discourse is used (*see section* **674**).



SEA-FOOD
From a Pompeian picture

LESSON XCIII

CARDINAL NUMBERS: DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

CARDINAL NUMERALS

688. The numerals used in counting or in telling how many persons or objects are meant are called *cardinal numerals*. The Latin cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

ūnus, -a, -um, *one*	**ūndecim,** *eleven*
duo, duae, duo, *two*	**duodecim,** *twelve*
trēs, tria, *three*	**tredecim,** *thirteen*
quattuor, *four*	**quattuordecim,** *fourteen*
quīnque, *five*	**quīndecim,** *fifteen*
sex, *six*	**sēdecim,** *sixteen*
septem, *seven*	**septendecim,** *seventeen*
octō, *eight*	**duodēvīgintī,** *eighteen*
novem, *nine*	**ūndēvīgintī,** *nineteen*
decem, *ten*	**vīgintī,** *twenty*

DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

689. The numerals **duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
duōs *or* duo	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)	tria
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

a. With the exception of **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs,** the numerals given in section **688** are not declined. The declension of **ūnus** is like that of **sōlus,** which is given in section **13** of the Appendix. **Trēs** is declined like the plural of **omnis,** section **10** of the Appendix.

690. READING EXERCISE: CONVERSATION DURING THE FEAST

Nauta I. Haec carō dulcis est.

N. II. Ita est; gaudeō quod carnem iterum edō.

N. III. Quam callidus dux noster est!

N. IV. Gaudēmus quod tam callidum ducem habēmus.

N. III. Cervum in silvā invēnit et eum sagittā interfēcit.

N. N. I et II. Dā nōbīs iterum carnem.

N. V. Similēs suibus estis. Nihil cēterīs relinquētis.

N. N. I et II. Sed per omnem diem nūllum cibum habuimus. Ēsuriēbāmus.

N. VI. Nōs quoque ēsuriēbāmus, sed nōn suēs sumus. Vōsne tōtum cervum edētis?

N. N. VII et VIII. Crās in silvam ībimus. Inde multōs cervōs referēmus.

N. IX. Vix dux callidus noster ūnum invēnit; vōs nōn facile multōs inveniētis.

Dux. Ipse in silvam quam prīmum redībō, quia tēctum ibi vīdī. Quis in hōc tēctō habitat? Id scīre cupiō.

691. VOCABULARY

callidus, -a, -um, shrewd, wise
dulcis, -e, sweet, delicious
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,[1] be glad, rejoice
inde, *adv.*, from there
referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back
sūs, suis, M. *and* F., hog, swine
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty

a. The verb **referō** has some irregular forms, but only those belonging to the third conjugation (like **dūcō**) or to the perfect system are used in this lesson.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

692. 1. My brother has gone to the forest with two companions. 2. We crossed the river with three legions. 3. Five

[1] In the perfect system this verb has only passive forms, but these are active in meaning. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

sailors remained on the shore. 4. I saw four men who had been in Spain. 5. Our companions will soon return to the ship with our leader.

HOISTING APPARATUS

There were no gasoline or steam engines for use in building operations among the Romans.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

693. 1. What are *dulcet* tones? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of the Italian phrase *Dolce far niente.* What do you suppose is the origin of the Italian word *dolce?* 3. What is the origin of the word *octave?* 4. What is the origin of the words *refer* and *relate?*

Optional Drill

694. 1. Duōrum diērum; trium diērum; quattuor diērum. 2. Cum duōbus amīcīs; cum tribus amīcīs; cum quīnque amīcīs. 3. Ā tribus nautīs; ā tredecim nautīs; ā sēdecim nautīs. 4. Explōrātor callidus est. 5. Inde nihil referēs. 6. Inde explōrātor multās rēs rettulit. 7. Cervus tribus sagittīs vulnerātus est. 8. Hae ferae carnem edunt. 9. Vix hās rēs portāre possumus. 10. Hominēs dīxērunt sē vix hās rēs portāre posse. 11. Cibum dulcem habēmus. 12. Ūnum cervum et tria alia animālia in silvā invēnimus.

695. 1. Of two armies; of three armies; of four armies. 2. With two companions; with three companions; with six companions. 3. The consul had two legions. 4. The lieutenant sent two scouts. 5. Four soldiers defended Horatius.

(*a*) Decline together **duo hominēs.**

(*b*) Decline together **duae īnsulae.**

(*c*) Give the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **sūs.**

SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXXIX-XCIII

arcus, -ūs
carō, carnis
cervus, -ī
deus, -ī
diēs, -ēī
fera, -ae
habitus, -ūs
ignis, ignis
lītus, lītoris
nihil
rāmus, -ī
rēmus, -ī
rēs, reī
sonitus, -ūs
sūs, suis

umerus, -ī
ventus, -ī

callidus, -a, -um
dulcis, -e
fidēlis, -e
immortālis, -e
siccus, -a, -um
similis, -e
vērus, -a, -um

accendō, -ere
crēdō, -ere
culpō, -āre
dēserō, -ere

ēsuriō, -īre
flō, flāre
gaudeō, -ēre
inveniō, -īre
referō, -ferre

inde
lātē
lentē
rēctā
rēctē
vix

quia

ENDINGS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

	Singular	*Plural*
NOM.	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	-ēī (eī)	-ērum
DAT.	-ēī (eī)	-ēbus
ACC.	-em	-ēs
ABL.	-ē	-ēbus

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

(See sections **656, 657**)

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

(See sections **664, 665**)

CARDINAL NUMERALS

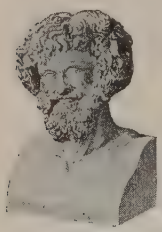
(See section **688**)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(See sections **673, 674**)

ROME AND CARTHAGE

Perhaps the most dangerous enemy Rome ever had was Carthage, a city located on the north coast of Africa. The Carthaginians had a strong fleet as well as a good army when they first met the Romans in war. At that time the Romans had had little experience as sailors, and for a while they were not very successful. Later they developed a navy with which they were able to rout the Carthaginians at sea.



HANNIBAL

The Romans and Carthaginians fought three wars with each other, known as the First, Second, and Third Punic wars. The second of these was the most important, and in this Rome narrowly escaped defeat. The famous Carthaginian general, Hannibal, invaded Italy, coming through Spain and France and crossing the Alps. He won a victory over the Romans in the great battle of Cannae, in which a great many Romans were killed, among them a number of the officials of the government.

After the war had continued for several years the Roman general, Scipio, finally defeated Hannibal, and the war was

brought to an end. Carthage was compelled to give up part of her territory and to pay a large sum of money.

Some years later another war broke out, and this time another Scipio was in command of the Roman army. The Carthaginians were again defeated and their city was entirely destroyed. The Romans never again permitted Carthage to become a dangerous enemy. They made the country which Carthage had ruled Roman territory, and it continued under Roman control until the Roman Empire was destroyed, centuries later.

SITE OF CARTHAGE

HORATIUS

Note.—New words occurring in this play and the following selections will be found in the complete Vocabulary, pages 1-30, following 482.

PERSŌNAE

Porsena: *rēx Etrūscōrum.*
Sextus Tarquinius: *fīlius Tarquiniī Superbī.*
Mamilius: *rēx Tusculī, socius Porsenae.*

Scaena I.

Tarquinius Superbus: *rēx Rōmānōrum, exul.*
Vigilēs: *Etrūscī.*
Ducēs Mīlitum: *Etrūscī.*

Scaena II.

Valerius, Pulvillus } *cōnsulēs Rōmānī.*
Horātius Cocles, Spurius Lartius, Titus Herminius } *senātōrēs Rōmānī*
Vigil Prīmus, Vigil Secundus } *Rōmānī*
Cīvēs: *Rōmānī*
Mīlitēs: *Etrūscī.*

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN CASTRĪS ETRŪSCŌRUM

Vesperī. Porsena ante tabernāculum suum stat; ā dextrā Mamilius; ā sinistrā Tarquinius Superbus; ā tergō Sextus Tarquinius. Ante Porsenam ducēs mīlitum imperāta expectant. Longē ā dextrā stant vigilēs; hī Rōmam prōspectant.

POR. Bene pugnāvistis hodiē, Ō ducēs, vōs et mīlitēs Etrūscī.

DUC. Grātiās tibi agimus, rēx maxime; prō patriā et prō tē pugnāvimus.

POR. Quō nōmine hic mōns appellātur, ubi jam castra posuimus?

SEX. Jāniculum vocātur hic mōns.

SUP. Jāniculum habēmus; facile erit Rōmam capere.

POR. Quō modō Jāniculum cēpistī, Mamilī[1]? Nārrā nōbīs.

DUC. Bene nōs dūxit Mamilius, Ō rēx maxime. 10

POR. Hoc sciō; attendite animum et audīte.

[1]Proper names ending in **-ius** have the vocative singular in **-ī** (not **-ie**). This is also true of **fīlius** (vocative **fīlī**).

MAM. Ō rēx maxime, Jāniculum tenēbat Pulvillus cōnsul cum centum mīlitibus; juvenis est et malus dux; male imperat, neque Rōmānī semper pārent. At diū resistēbant; neque facile erat illud parvum agmen dē monte pellere. Tandem centum mīlitēs circum montem mīsī; hī ā tergō Rōmānōs subitō oppugnāvērunt. Pulvillus pavidus tergum vertit; cum quīnquāgintā hominibus effūgit; cēterōs occīdimus. Ille, tertius in ōrdine ducum [*ūnum ex ducibus indicat*], prīmus in summum montem pervēnit. Hostēs illum vulnerāverant et signiferum occīderant. Statim ille signum ē dextrā mortuī rapuit et in summō monte posuit.

POR. Bene fēcistī, Mamilī; bene fēcērunt tuī mīlitēs. Tū, dux vulnerāte, hūc venī. [*Dux tertius appropinquat.*] Accipe hoc praemium. [*Bracchium armillā circumdat. Tum dux sē in ōrdinem recipit.*] Crās Rōmam oppugnābimus.

DUC. [*laetīs clāmōribus.*] Crās Rōmam capiēmus.

SUP. Crās rēx iterum erō Rōmānōrum.

SEX. Crās omnēs inimīcōs occīdam.

SUP. Crās omnēs nōbilēs in vincula conjiciam

SEX. Vae victīs! nōs enim Rōmā expulērunt.

SUP. Ignāvī hominēs rēgem habēre nōlēbant; poenās crās dabunt.

DUC. [*murmurant.*] Fortēs, nōn ignāvī, sunt Rōmānī. Fortēs hostēs amāmus; ignāvōs ōdimus amīcōs.

POR. Quandō et quō modō Rōmam oppugnābimus?

SEX. Statim hoc faciēmus; sī enim Rōmānī pontem sublicium frangent, neque Tiberim trānsīre neque urbem intrāre poterimus.

DUC. Nōs quidem hodiē diū pugnāvimus; sine somnō mīlitēs nōn bene pugnābunt.

SUP. Vigil! Vigil!

VIG. Quid dēsīderās, Ō rēx?

SUP. Quid nunc Rōmānī faciunt?

VIG. Omnēs intrā moenia sē recēpērunt. Vigilēs tamen ē moenibus prōspectant.

POR. Frēgēruntne pontem?

VIG. Minimē, rēx maxime! Stat pōns.

POR. Quālis erit nox?

VIG. Obscūra; nūbilāre enim coepit, neque lūna fulgēbit. Etiam nunc vigilēs Rōmānōs vidēre nōn possumus; nōn jam pōns in cōnspectū est; hāc nocte caecī erunt vigilēs.

POR. Bene dīxistis, vigilēs. Hoc igitur cōnsilium omnēs audīte. Quārtā vigiliā, dum Rōmānī adhūc dormiunt, ad pontem silentiō appropinquābimus. Antequam illūc pervēnerimus, nōs neque vidēre neque audīre vigilēs poterunt. Nūllā morā pontem trānsībimus et portam facile rumpēmus, dum Rōmānī arma petunt et tōtā urbe trepidant.

DUC. Bonum cōnsilium cēpistī, Ō rēx maxime. Vincēmus.

POR. Hoc cōnsilium, ducēs, mīlitibus nūntiāte. Deinde usque ad quārtam vigiliam dormīte.

DUC. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

POR. Vigilēs, cum quārta vigilia erit, ē somnō nōs omnēs excitāte.

VIG. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

SCAENA SECUNDA. RŌMAE

Ā sinistrā appārent moenia urbis; Tiberis praeter moenia fluit; rīpam ulteriōrem ad portam urbis jungit pōns sublicius. Vigilēs ē summīs moenibus prōspectant. In rīpā ulteriōre agmen Etrūscōrum ad pontem sublicium silentiō appropinquat, sed adhūc procul abest, cum sōl surgere incipit. Prīmā lūce vigilēs hostēs vident.

VIG. I. Audīsne sonum?

VIG. II. Quam timidus es! Ventus aquam agitat.
VIG. I. Pedēs hominum audiō.
VIG. II. Nōlī hoc crēdere. Sōl mox surget; tum vidēre poterimus.
VIG. I. Hominēs videō. Appropinquant.
VIG. II. Agmen est. Hostēs sunt.
VIG I. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.
VIGILES. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.

[*Cīvēs armātī portam aperiunt et prōspectant. Valerius et Pulvillus in pontem currunt.*]

VAL. Frangite pontem, cīvēs.
PUL. Tempus nōn dabunt hostēs. Eheu! Nōs prīmōs occīdent. Quid facere possumus? Quō fugere dēbēmus?
VAL. Silē, ignāve! Cūr herī mīlitēs frangere pontem nōn jussistī? Tū enim imperātor erās. Hodiē ego imperō. [*Pulvillus in urbem redit. Multī cīvēs in portā appārent.*] Audīte, cīvēs. Sī duo vel trēs breve temporis spatium resistere poterunt, cēterī pontem frangent. Ita urbem servāre poterimus.
HOR. [*inter cīvēs appāret.*] Ego, Ō cōnsul, pontem dēfendam. Quis mēcum hoc prō patriā faciet?
SPU. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ego tibi socius erō, fortis Horātī.
HOR. Tū bonus eris socius. Tēcum bene pugnābō. Tamen sī trēs erimus, tōtum hostium agmen facile repellēmus.
TIT. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ecce tertius erō. Prō Rōmā et Rōmānīs cum hīs comitibus pugnābō.
VAL. Vōbīs agō grātiās.
CIV. Vōbīs grātiās agimus.

[*Etrūscī appropinquant.*]

POR. Currite, mīlitēs. Pontem occupāte.

VAL. Properāte vōs, currunt enim hostēs.

[*Trēs pontem trānseunt.*]

HOR. Ego medius stābō; tū, Spurī, ā dextrā stā, Herminī, tū ā sinistrā.

[*Etrūscī ad pontem adveniunt.*]

POR. Oppugnāte, mīlitēs. Illōs trēs occīdite et urbem intrāte.

VAL. Secūrēs sūmite, cīvēs. Sūmite gladiōs. Frangite pontem.

POR. Mamilī, mēcum manē! Herī satis pugnābās. Sextus contrā suam urbem hominēs dūcet.

VAL. Dā mihi secūrem, tū! Ita, ita, lignum frangite.

[*Ipse pontem ferit dum mīlitēs Etrūscī pontem oppugnant.*]

SPU. Cavē, Herminī! Ā sinistrā oppugnābunt.

TIT. Parātus sum; ecce, undique veniunt.

HOR. Dūra verbera date. Nōn multī eōdem tempore nōs oppugnāre possunt.

PUL. [*in moenibus appāret.*] Venīte, vōs, ad moenia. [*Multī cīvēs in moenia veniunt.*] Sagittās mittite. Jacula conjicite.

SEX. Mēcum venīte, mīlitēs. Ego Horātium occīdam.

CIV. Cujus vōcem audīmus?

VIG. I. Sextus Tarquinius hostēs dūcit.

CIV. Apage, perfide Sexte! Audēsne ad urbem revenīre?

SEX. Mox alia clāmābitis, cum vōs in vincula conjiciam.

CIV. Occīde Sextum, Ō Horātī. Etiam sī hostēs nōs vīcerint, gaudēbimus, quod perfidus Sextus mortuus erit.

[*Sextus Horātium oppugnat; Spurius et Titus contrā aliōs pugnant.*]

PUL. Cavēte, sagittāriī. Nōlīte nostrōs occīdere. Cavēte, jaculātōrēs. Suprā capita nostrōrum jacula conjicite.

VIG. II. Uter vincet? Ecce, noster illum ferit!

CIV. Iō triumphe! Mortuus est Sextus.

PUL. Minimē, surgit. Horātī, iterum ferī.

[*Alter Horātium oppugnat, dum Mamilius Sextum ē perīculō trahit.*]

CIV. Quis auxilium fert?

PUL. Mamilius.

CIV. Ecce, Sextum ē perīculō trahit.

VIG. I. Nunc redit; ipse Horātium oppugnābit.

CIV. Eheu! Nōn mortuus est Sextus.

VAL. Auxilium date, cīvēs; ecce, paene frāctus est pōns.

CIV. Iō, Spurius hostem occīdit; nunc alterum ferit.

VIG. II. Eheu! Horātium vulnerāvit Mamilius.

CIV. Eheu! Spurī, auxilium dā.

VIG. I. Ecce. Mamilium repellunt.

VAL. [*magnā vōce.*] Redīte, Rōmānī: Paene frāctus est pōns. Jam, jam redī, Horātī.

CIV. Redīte, Rōmānī. Paene frāctus est pōns. Nōs servāvistis; jam vōs servāte.

HOR. Redīte, comitēs. Dum tempus manet, redīte.

SPU. } TIT. } Tū etiam nōbīscum redī. Sine tē nōn redībimus.

CIV. Redīte, fortēs virī. Jam jam cadit pōns.

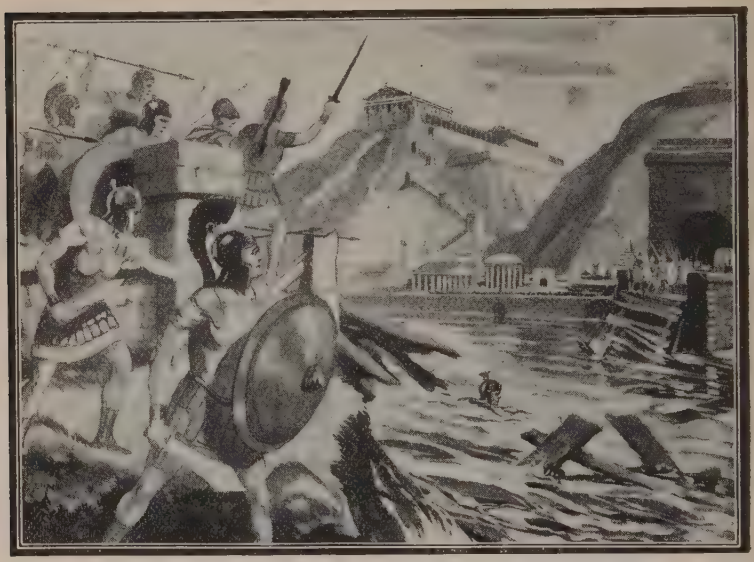
HOR. Redīte, comitēs. Cōnsilium habeō bonum; mē hostēs nōn occīdent.

SPU. } TIT. } Pārēmus. Valē. [*Ad portam redeunt.*]

CIV. Nōlīte Horātium relinquere.

SPU. Ipse imperāvit. Pārēmus.

[*Spurius et Titus urbem intrant.*]



CIV. Sērō redībis, Horātī. Cadit pōns.

HOR. [*Scūtum ad cīvēs conjicit.*] Excipite, cīvēs, scūtum. Nōn honestum est scūtum relinquere. [*Gladium in mediōs hostēs conjicit.*] Vōs, hostēs, gladium excipite. Tibi mē committō, Tiberis. [*Dum pōns cadit, Horātius in flūmen dēsilit.*]

PUL. Quid facit? Vulnerātus est; nōn potest natāre.

CIV. Ita; flūmen trānsit; ad portam natat.

VAL. Dēmittite fūnēs! [*Cīvēs fūnem dēmittunt.*]

CIV. Fūnem prehendit. Trahite! Trahite!

OMNES. Trahite! trahite! [*Cīvēs Horātium ex aquā in portam trahunt.*]

VAL. } Senātus tibi grātiās agit.
PUL. }

CIV. Populus Rōmānus tibi grātiās agit.

OMNES. Rōmam servāvistī.

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

THE STORY OF PERSEUS

1. Set Adrift

Haec nārrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus fīlius erat Jovis, maximī deōrum. Avus ejus Ācrisius appellābātur. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum, nepōtem suum, necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum, adhūc īnfantem, et cum mātre in arcā ligneā inclūsit. Tum arcam ipsam in mare conjēcit. Danaē, Perseī māter, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātris dormiēbat.

2. Cast on an Island

Juppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit et fīlium suum servāre cōnstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum et arcam ad īnsulam Serīphum perdūxit. Hujus īnsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est et ad rēgiam Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit et sēdem tūtam in fīnibus suīs

---

1. Haec, *these things,* or *these stories.*
2. Ācrisius: predicate nominative after the passive of a verb of calling.
6. Danaē: a Greek name, with genitive ending in *-ēs,* accusative in *-ēn.*
7. enim: always stands after one or more words of its sentence; the same is true of *autem,* line 8.
11. Serīphum: in apposition with *īnsulam.* We usually say in English "the island of," "the city of," etc.
12. Postquam: with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently employed. In translation, with "after" or "when," we sometimes employ the past perfect tense, sometimes the past.
13. piscātōre quōdam: the forms of *quīdam* sometimes precede and sometimes follow the word they modify; for the declension of *quīdam* see Appendix **28** (3)

dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī grātiās ēgit.

3. Perseus Sent on His Travels

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitāvit et cum mātre suā vītam ēgit beātam. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat atque eam in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōnstituit. Tum juvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est vītam hanc ignāvam agere; jam dūdum tū adulēscēns es; quousque hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

4. Perseus Gets His Outfit

Perseus, ubi haec audīvit, ex īnsulā discessit et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Graeās, sorōrēs

16. dedit: *īīs*, dative of indirect object, is to be understood.

18. annōs: accusative of duration of time.

20. volēbat: the principal parts of this verb are **volō, velle, voluī.** It is irregular in the present tense, but its imperfect and future indicative forms are like those of the third conjugation **-ō** verbs (*dūcō*).

21. Perseō: dependent on *grātum*.

23. haec dīxit, *spoke as follows.*

agere: subject of *est*; an infinitive used as a noun is in the neuter gender; hence the predicate adjective, *turpe*, is neuter.

24. jam dūdum es, *you have long been;* with *jam dūdum* a present tense is translated by an English present perfect, an imperfect by an English past perfect; *jam dūdum erās* would mean *you had long been.*

25. abī: imperative of *abeō*. What is the imperative of *cō?*

26. refer: the verb *ferō* has as its present imperative in the singular number the form *fer*. Its compounds have the same irregularity.

27. Perseus, ubi: in Latin, when the verbs of a principal and a subordinate clause denote acts by the same person or thing, the noun or pronoun used to denote the subject frequently stands before the subordinate clause.

haec: the neuter plural of *hic*, used without a noun (literally, *these things*), may often be translated *this.*

30. sorōrēs: what case and why?

Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum postquam tālāria induit, in āera statim ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant quae speciem horribilem praebēbant; capita enim eārum serpentibus omnīnō contēcta erant; manūs etiam ex aere factae erant.

5. The Gorgon's Head

Rēs erat difficillima abscīdere caput Gorgonis; ejus enim cōnspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva illud speculum dederat. Perseus igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum īnspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput ejus ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt et, ubi rem vīdērunt, īrā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occīdere volēbant; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam magicam induit et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōnspectū eārum ēvāsit.

HEAD OF MEDUSA

31. galeam magicam: this rendered the wearer invisible.

33. āera: this form is an accusative singular, masculine gender. The word *āēr* is a Greek noun carried over into Latin; it keeps its Greek accusative ending.

38. aere: from *aes*.

40. vertēbantur: the Latin imperfect often expresses repeated or customary action.

43. speculum: ancient mirrors were polished metal plates.

hōc modō, *in this way;* the ablative case, sometimes with the preposition *cum* and sometimes, as here, without *cum*, is used to express the manner in which an action is done.

50. dum fugit, *while he fled, while fleeing;* a clause with *dum* meaning *while* takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the principal verb.

NEPTUNE

6. The Sea Serpent

Post haec Perseus in fīnēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim offenderat. Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōnsuluit, atque ā deō jussus

53. Cēpheus quīdam, *a certain Cepheus*, or *a man named Cepheus.*

54. tempore: ablative of time.

Hic: a pronoun, referring to *Cēpheus.*

57. omnium, *of all* (*i.e., men*); the masculine plural of *omnēs* often means *all men*, or *everybody;* the neuter plural often means *all things*, or *everything.*

58. ōrāculum: the word may mean the seat of an oracle, as here, or the reply given by an oracle. The consultation of oracles sprang from the belief that information and advice could be obtained from certain divinities. Oracles were usually given by oral utterances of a priest or priestess in a state of real or pretended frenzy, or by signs. The temple (with its oracle) of the Egyptian god Hammon stood in an oasis of the Libyan desert.

est fīliam mōnstrō trādere. Ejus autem fīlia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō perīculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam cōnstituit imperāta Hammōnis facere.

7. A Human Sacrifice

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est et in cōnspectū omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum ejus dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum expectant, Perseus accurrit, et, ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum procul cōnspicitur. Ejus cōnspectus magnopere omnēs terruit quī in lītore stābant. At mōnstrum magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, jamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

59. mōnstrō: indirect object of *trādere*.
nōmine: ablative of respect.
60. Cēpheus, ubi: the order of words is explained in the note on *Perseus, ubi*, line 27.
62. ob eam causam, *for that reason.*
64. diem dīxit, *appointed a day;* in the plural, *diēs* is always masculine, in the singular sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine. What is the gender of most other nouns of the fifth declension?
omnia, *all things, everything;* or with *parāvit, made all preparations;* see note on line 57.
67. nec . . . tenēbant, *and did not restrain; neque* is regularly used in Latin for *and not.*
dum . . . expectant, *while they were awaiting;* for the present tense with *dum*, see note on line 50.
68. accurrit: for vivid effect a past event or situation may be represented as present. The present in this use is called the historical present; it may often be translated by the English past. Several other examples occur in this section.
70. Dum haec geruntur, *while this was going on;* compare the note on *haec*, line 27.
72. magnā celeritāte: another example of the ablative denoting manner, like *hōc modō*, line 43.

8. The Rescue

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit et, postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit et gladiō suō collum ejus graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam mersit. Perseus, dum circum lītus volat, reditum ejus expectābat; mare autem intereā undique sanguine īnficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub undās mersit, neque posteā vīsa est.

9. The Reward of Valor

Perseus, postquam in lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō affectus est. Meritam grātiam prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitāvit, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen cupiēbat mātrem

76. sublātus est: perfect passive of *tollō*.
in (*mōnstrum*), *on.*
83. neque: translate as in line 67.
86. vīncta: what are the principal parts of *vinciō?* Of *vincō?*
87. terrōre, *with terror;* this is an example of the ablative of cause. Sometimes a preposition (**ab, dē, ex**) is found with this use of the ablative. The idea of cause may also be expressed by *propter* or *ob* with the accusative.
90. Meritam grātiam rettulit, *made a deserved requital,* or *repaid the favor as it deserved.*
prō, *in return for.*
91. Ille: pronoun referring to Perseus.
92. puellam dūxit, *married the girl. Dūcō* has reference to that part of the ceremony in which the bridegroom led the bride to his own house.

suam rūrsus vidēre. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

10. Turned to Stone

Postquam Perseus ad īnsulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat. At domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam īnsulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus, ubi haec cognōvit, īrā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit et, ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium irrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est, et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit; ille autem, simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

11. The Oracle Fulfilled

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisiī rediit. Ille autem, ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est. Nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vītāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat et diem ēdīxerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae

97. sē . . . contulit, *betook himself, proceeded.*
101. quod: not a relative pronoun.
103. eō: an adverb.
104. magnō timōre affectus est, *was very badly frightened.* What is it literally?
106. simul atque, *as soon as;* the same rule as to the tense of the verb applies to this phrase as to *postquam* and *ubi;* see note on line 12.
110. istud: the demonstrative iste is declined like *ille,* and usually means *that* or *that of yours.* Here the force is, *that oracle of which you know.*
111. Lārissam, *of Larissa;* an appositive translated like *Serīphum,* line 11.
112. neque: translate as if *nōn.*
113. lūdōs fēcit, *gave games.*
in omnēs partēs, *in all directions.*

ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conjicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs ejus certāminis forte stābat.

116. discōrum: the discus was a flat piece of stone or metal.
cāsū, *by chance, accidentally;* the ablative of *cāsus* without a preposition is often used in this meaning.

1. Conjugate *videō* and *quaerō* in the future active. 2. Decline the demonstrative *ille*. 3. What case is *diēs* in line 99, and why used? 4. What are the meanings of *volō, velle,* and *volō, volāre?* 5. What is the meaning of *magnō terrōre affectus?* 6. Who was the mother of Perseus? 7. Why did Perseus need the mirror when he slew Medusa? 8. What was the name of the maiden whom Perseus rescued from the sea-monster? 9. How did Acrisius meet his death?

CIRCE

PERSŌNAE.

Ulīxēs, *quī domum iter facit.*
Eurylochus, *comes et amīcus Ulīxis.*

Scaena I.

Aegyptius, Philippus, Menexenus, Alexander, Crēsius } *nautae.*
Cēterī nautae.

Scaena II.

Naupactōus, Proxenus, Rhodius } *nautae.*

Circē: *maga.*
Ancillae quattuor.
Minister.
Coquus.
Servus alius.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN LĪTORE ĪNSULAE.

In saxō stat Eurylochus; circum eum vīgintī nautae, aliī humī sedent, aliī stant; omnēs murmurant.

EUR. Nōlīte ducem nostrum culpāre.
AEG. At quis nōs in īnsulam dēsertam dūxit?
CET. Respondē, Ō Euryloche! Nōnne Ulīxēs?
EUR. Sānē, magnus Ulīxēs vōs hūc dūxit; sed nōlīte illum culpāre.
PHI. Cūr nōn dēbēmus illum culpāre?
CET. Respondē, Ō Euryloche. Cūr nōn dēbēmus illum culpāre?
EUR. Quia dī immortālēs [*palmās tollit*] nōs et illum in haec perīcula addūxērunt.
MEN. Sī dī Ulīxem nōn amant, nōn jam noster erit dux.
CET. Rēctē dīcis; nōn jam noster erit dux.
ALE. Ēsuriō; dā mihi cibum, Euryloche.
OMNES. Ēsurīmus; dā nōbīs cibum, Euryloche.
EUR. Nōnne magnanimus Ulīxēs in mediās silvās iit, quia cibum nōbīs petere volēbat?

OMNES. Nōn hoc crēdimus. Immō vērō nōs dēseruit.
AEG. Sī ferās arcū occīdet, ipse eās edet.
OMNES. Ipse carnem edet avium et bēstiārum.
PHI. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habeō.
OMNES. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habēmus.
EUR. Ō stultī; fidēlis est noster dux; cibum vōbīs referet.
MEN. [*quī circum sē spectat.*] Hominem quī advenit, videō.
CET. Hostisne an amīcus venit?
MEN. Nesciō; adhūc procul abest.

[*Aliī nautae nunc stant.*]

ALE. Ecce, dē summō colle dēscendit.
CET. Quis est? Quae vestīmenta, quae arma portat?
CRE. Arcum sagittāsque fert; rēctā ad nōs venit.
OMNES. Ulīxēs est.
AEG. Quid umerīs portat?
PHI. Carnem nōbīs refert.
OMNES. Ō magnanimum Ulīxem! Ō optimum ducem!
ULIXIS VOX. Cervum sagittā occīdī. Cibum vōbīs ferō. Carnem edēmus omnēs.
OMNES. Iō, Iō! Ō magnanimum Ulīxem! Ō optimum ducem!
EUR. Ligna petite, nautae. Properāte vōs!

[*Dum Ulīxēs appropinquat, nautae ligna per lītus petunt et in mediō cumulant.*]

MEN. Rēmum frāctum invēnī, quī in lītore jacēbat.
ALE. Siccōs rāmōs ferō, quī dē arbore cecidērunt.
CRE. } Grave est id quod portāmus; gubernāculum ferimus
AEG. } nāvis nostrae, quod mare in lītus jēcit.
PHI. Rōstrum nāvis repperī; ecce, Minervae imāginem undae perdidērunt; eam vix possum agnōscere.

[*Ulīxēs appāret et cervum humī dēpōnit.*]

EUR. Salvē, Ulīxēs! Nautae, ignem accendite.

CET. Nōn possumus ignem accendere. Ō callidissime omnium hominum [*Ulīxī hoc dīcunt*], hoc prō nōbīs fac, quia ēsurīmus et quam prīmum cēnāre volumus.

EUR. [*Dum Ulīxēs ligna cōnfricat et ignem accendit.*] Nunc callidus et magnanimus est is quī nūper pessimus ducum erat et īnfīdissimus.

[*Ulīxēs in saxō cōnsīdit; nautae in summō igne cervum tōtum pōnunt. Tum circum Ulīxem et ignem sē dispōnunt.*]

ULI. Per silvam errābam, cum hunc cervum haud procul vīdī —

MEN. Dulcis est fūmus.

ULI. Mē post arborem cēlāvī —

ALE. [*sonitum labrīs facit.*] Dulcem carnem jam gustō.

ULI. Ventus adversus flābat; nōn igitur mē olfacere cervus poterat.

CRE. Carnem equidem olfaciō dulcissimam.

ULI. Sagittam arcumque parāvī.

AEG. Nōs quidem convīvium parāmus.

ULI. Sagittā prīmā cervī frontem trānsfīxī. Nōnne magna et pulchra sunt cornua, Ō Euryloche?

PHI. Magna et pulchra erit cēna.

MEN. Jam certē tostus est cervus. Statim edere cupiō.

OMNES. Statim edere cupimus.

ULI. Edite, comitēs. Gaudeō quod nōn jam ēsuriētis.

EUR. Vorāte, vōs quī suibus estis similēs; nihil nisi cēna cibusque vōbīs in mentem venit.

[*Nautae cervum dīvidunt et carnem vorant; intereā Ulīxēs nārrat.*]

ULI. Postquam cervum occīdī, circum mē spectāre coepī. Haud procul inter arborēs appārēbat tēctum domūs. Fūmus inde ascendēbat.

ALE. Sine dubiō torrēbant carnem.
CET. Carō dulcis est! Libenter iterum carnem gustāmus.
CRE. Nōnne usque ad domum īvistī, Ō dux?
ULI. Minimē; comitum mihi in mentem vēnit famēs. Ad vōs igitur quam prīmum praedam meam rettulī.
AEG. Crās ad illam domum ībimus. Quid cēnsētis, comitēs?
CET. Placet; ad eum locum ībimus.
MEN. Fortasse ibi multam carnem et bene tostam inveniēmus.
EUR. Glandēs saltem in silvā inveniētis.

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN ĀTRIŌ CIRCAE.

Nēmō in ātriō adest; sed per jānuam quae ā dextrā est nunc fēminās quae rīdent, nunc suēs quī edunt audītis. Ā sinistrā intrant Ulīxēs et Eurylochus et trēs nautae, Naupactōus, Proxenus, Rhodius.

NAU. Ubi sunt comitēs nostrī?
PRO. Eōs neque videō neque audiō.
RHO. At vōcēs audiō.
EUR. Sānē, fēminās quae rīdent audīs.
NAU. Nōnne suēs audītis, comitēs, quī edunt?
PRO. Silēte, fēmina nunc cantat.
ULI. Circē, maga, pessima fēminārum, cantat quia nostrōs comitēs perdidit.
RHO. Nōnne nōs etiam perdet?
ULI. Priōrēs eam oppugnābimus.
NAU. At sī baculum illud agitābit, nōnne mortuī nōs omnēs cadēmus?
ULI. Sī pārēbitis et omnia quae nunc imperābō faciētis, eam vincēmus.
EUR. Pārēbimus, Ō dux noster, vir callide. Quid imperās?
NAUTAE. Pārēbimus nōs omnēs.
ULI. Apud hanc fēminam nōlīte edere, nōlīte bibere.
OMNES. Nihil hīc edēmus, nihil bibēmus.

ULI. Etiam sī ego cibum et pōculum accipiam, vōs nōlīte idem facere.

RHO. Cūr tū hoc faciēs quod nōs facere vetās?

ULI. Hunc quem teneō flōrem Mercurius mihi dedit.

PRO. Quō modō tē dēfendere hic flōs potest?

ULI. Dum hunc flōrem olfaciō, Circē mē laedere nōn poterit.

EUR. Silēte omnēs; aliquis enim jānuam aperit.

ULI. Mementōte id quod imperāvī, et pārēte!

[*Intrat Circē cum ancillīs quattuor.*]

CIR. Salvē, Ō Ulīxēs.

ANC. I. Salvē, Ō Euryloche.

ANC. II. Salvē, Ō Naupactōe.

ANC. III. Salvē, Ō Proxene.

ANC. IV. Salvē, Ō Rhodī.

ULI. Salvē, Ō rēgīna. Tē, quae meum nōmen scīs, quō modō vocābō?

EUR. [*ancillae I.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

NAU. [*ancillae II.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

PRO. [*ancillae III.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

RHO. [*ancillae IV.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

CIR. Salvēte, omnēs advenae. Nōmen meum nōlīte rogāre, sed vīnum meum bibite et carnēs meās edite. [*Manibus plaudit.*]

[*Intrat minister quī quīnque pōcula fert.*]

MIN. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.

ANCILLAE. Dā nōbīs pōcula. [*Ē manibus ministrī quattuor pōcula accipiunt. Circē manibus plaudit. Intrat servus quī amphoram fert.*]

SER. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.

CIR. Appropinquā, serve. [*Dum baculum suprā amphoram agitat, venēnum in vīnum dēmittit.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, vīnum cōnsecrō.

ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte vīnum. [*Servus vīnum in pōcula fundit.*]

SER. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Aurea mīrificō complēvī pōcula vīnō.

CIR. Mihi dā pōculum, Ō minister.

MIN. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Tē vel[1] callidiōrem hoc vīnum reddet, Ulīxēs.

ULI. Tum erō tam callidus quam vulpēs.

CIR. Hoc prōmittō. Accipe, Ō rēx. Rēgīna tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. I. Accipe, Ō Euryloche; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. II. Accipe, Ō Naupactōe; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. III. Accipe, Ō Proxene; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

ANC. IV. Accipe, Ō Rhodī; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

[*Virī ā fēminīs pōcula accipiunt. Rhodius sē post columnam cēlat.*]

ULI. Oculōs mihi advertite. [*Intereā Eurylochus et Naupactōus et Proxenus vīnum humī effundunt, sed Rhodius bibit.*] Vīnum bibō, grātus quia nōs advenās tam benignē excēpistī, Ō rēgīna. [*Flōrem olfacit, dum vīnum bibit. Omnēs Ulīxem diū spectant.*]

ULI. Quid spectātis? Bonum est vīnum quod hospitibus dās, Ō rēgīna; dī tibi praemium meritum dabunt.

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Vulpēs eris! Hoc imperō.

ULI. Quid facis? Quid dīcis? [*Rīdet.*] Eia! Nunc intellegō; tam callidus sum quam vulpēs.

ANC. I. Estne tibi vīnum grātum, Euryloche? Nōnne aliquid sentīs?

[1] *Even.*

EUR. Dulce est hoc vīnum.
ANC. II. Et tū, Naupactōe, quid dīcis?
NAU. Numquam anteā tam dulce vīnum bibī.
ANC. III. Nōnne optimum est vīnum, Ō Proxene?
PRO. Nectar est, dīs idōneum, [*sibi dīcit*] sed nōn hominibus.
ANC. IV. Tibine grātum est vīnum, Ō Rhodī?

[*Rhodius suis sonitum facit et suī similis ex ātriō currit, Ulīxēs nihil videt.*]

NAU. Vīdistīne suem quī ex ātriō currēbat?
PRO. Ubi est Rhodius? Multum timeō.
EUR. Nōlī timēre; Ulīxēs nōs servābit.
ULI. At aliquid mihi in mentem venit, Ō rēgīna. Aliīne hīc adsunt apud tē hospitēs?
CIR. Multās bēstiās apud mē habeō, sed hominēs nūllōs.
ULI. Ante hōs duōs diēs[1] comitēs meī, nautae, ad tuam domum vēnērunt, quia ēsuriēbant.
CIR. Ita est. Illīs cibum dedī; hominēs brevī hinc discessērunt.
ANCILLAE. [*rīdent.*] Suēs tamen apud nōs manent.
NAUTAE. Quid dīcitis? Nōn suēs erant comitēs nostrī, sed virī.

[*Circē manibus plaudit. Intrat coquus quī carnēs in paterā fert.*]

COQ. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.
CIR. Quid affers?
COQ. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Ambrosiam hospitibus dulcem fēlīcibus offers.
CIR. Bibistis, Ō hospitēs, nunc edite.
ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte carnēs.

[1] *Two days ago.*

CIR. [*baculum suprā carnēs agitat.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, carnēs cōnsecrō. [*Deinde Ulīxī offert. Omnēs carnem manibus accipiunt.*]

ULI. [*subitō clāmat.*] Ubi est Rhodius? [*Dum omnēs circumspectant, nautae carnēs rejiciunt.*]

ANC. IV. Ex ātriō fūgit—[*parvā vōce*]—sūs. [*Rīdent ancillae.*]

ULI. Carnem edō et tibi, Ō rēgīna, grātiās agō. [*Omnēs diū spectant.*]

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Tandem vulpēs eris! Hoc ego, Circē, imperō.

ULI. [*magnō rīsū.*] Tē agnōscō, fēmina dīs hominibusque īnfesta, improba maga. Nihil efficere potes. [*Gladium stringit.*] Tē et tuās ancillās occīdam, quia tot hominēs jam perdidistis.

CIR. Nōlī mē occīdere, Ō optime rēx! Nōn iterum hominēs laedam; hoc prōmittō.

ULI. Sī tē occīdam, hoc prō certō habēbō.

EUR. Ubi sunt nostrī comitēs? Jubē eam, Ō Ulīxēs, hoc dīcere.

CIR. Sī tibi hoc dīcam, tūta erō?

ULI. Sī hoc faciēs, vīvēs.

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Ō suēs, quī comitēs Ulīxis fuistis, este iterum hominēs.

[*Intrant cēterī nautae, quī comitēs salūtant.*]

ULI. Nōlī iterum hominem in bēstiae formam mūtāre! Hoc jūrā!

CIR. Hoc jūrō.

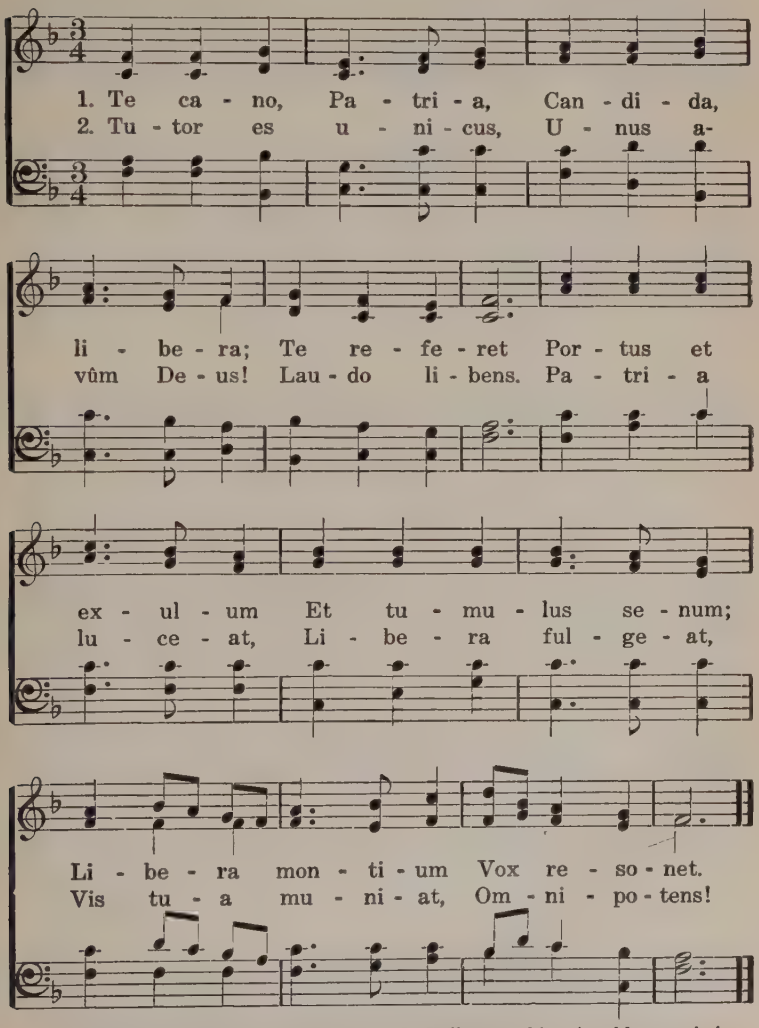
ANCILLAE. [*lacrimant.*] Hoc jūrāmus quod domina jūrāvit.

ULI. Abīte, miserae. [*Fēminae discēdunt; nautae gaudent.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE

America

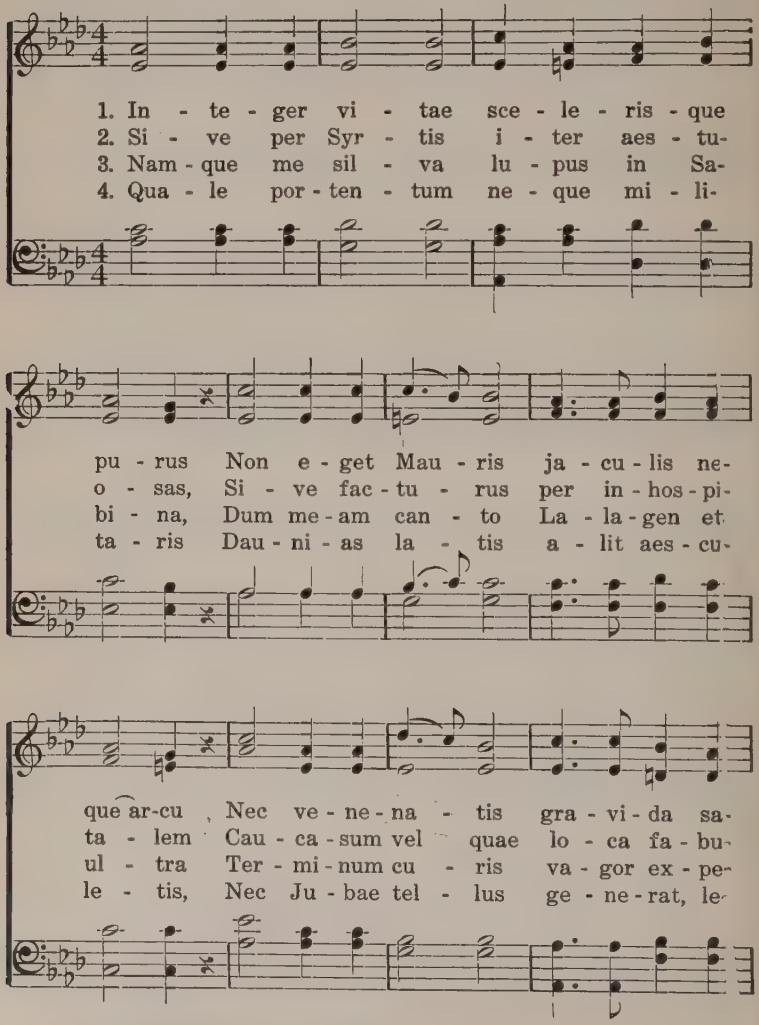
SAMUEL F. SMITH — HENRY CAREY


1. Te ca - no, Pa - tri - a, Can - di - da,
2. Tu - tor es u - ni - cus, U - nus a-
li - be - ra; Te re - fe - ret Por - tus et
vûm De - us! Lau - do li - bens. Pa - tri - a
ex - ul - um Et tu - mu - lus se - num;
lu - ce - at, Li - be - ra ful - ge - at,
Li - be - ra mon - ti - um Vox re - so - net.
Vis tu - a mu - ni - at, Om - ni - po - tens!

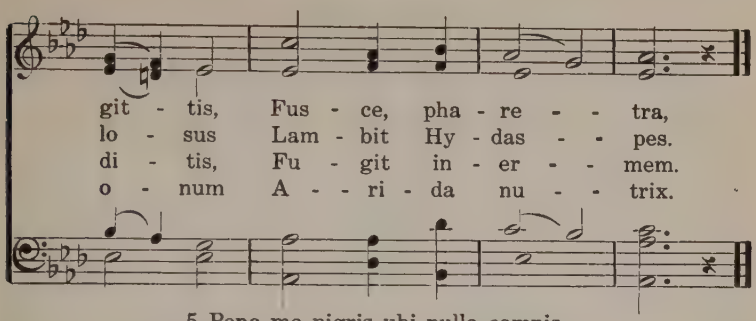
The Latin version is by Professor George D. Kellogg, and is printed by permission.

Integer Vitae[1]

HORATIUS, B.C. 65–8 — FR. F. FLEMMING, c. 1811


1. In - te - ger vi - tae sce - le - ris - que
2. Si - ve per Syr - tis i - ter aes - tu-
3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa-
4. Qua - le por - ten - tum ne - que mi - li-
pu - rus Non e - get Mau - ris ja - cu - lis ne-
o - sas, Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi-
bi - na, Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen et
ta - ris Dau - ni - as la - tis a - lit aes - cu-
que ar-cu Nec ve - ne - na - tis gra - vi - da sa-
ta - lem Cau - ca - sum vel quae lo - ca fa - bu-
ul - tra Ter - mi - num cu - ris va - gor ex - pe-
le - tis, Nec Ju - bae tel - lus ge - ne - rat, le-

(1) For English translation see page 372.



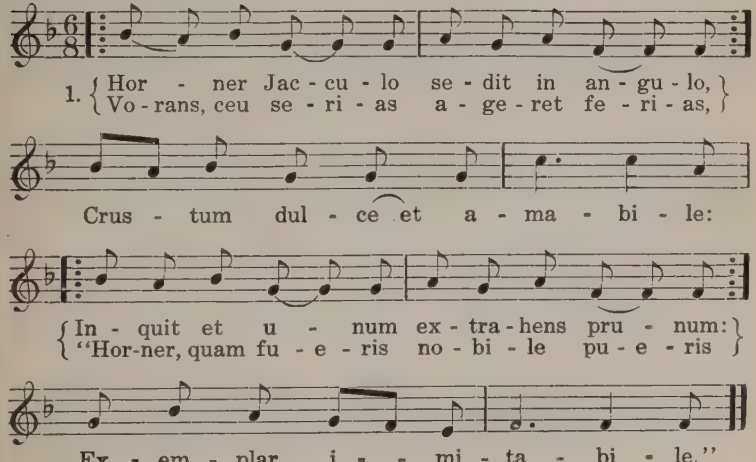
5 Pone me pigris ubi nulla campis
Arbor aestiva recreatur aura,
Quod latus mundi nebulae malusque
Juppiter urget;

6 Pone sub curru nimium propinqui
Solis, in terra domibus negata;
Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo,
Dulce loquentem.

Horner Jacculo[1]

GAMMER GURTON, English
HENRICUS DRURY, Latin

Old Nursery Tune


1. { Hor - ner Jac - cu - lo se - dit in an - gu - lo,
Vo - rans, ceu se - ri - as a - ge - ret fe - ri - as,
Crus - tum dul - ce et a - ma - bi - le:
In - quit et u - num ex - tra - hens pru - num:
"Hor-ner, quam fu - e - ris no - bi - le pu - e - ris
Ex - em - plar i - - mi - ta - bi - le."

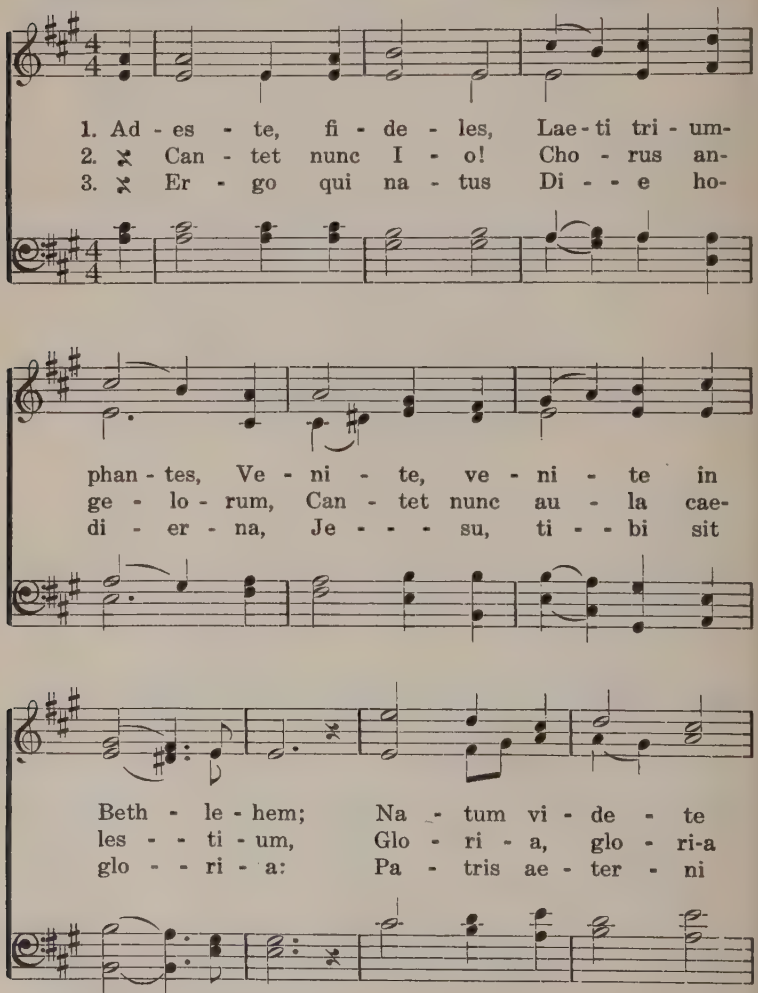
(1) For English words see page 372.

Adeste Fideles[1]

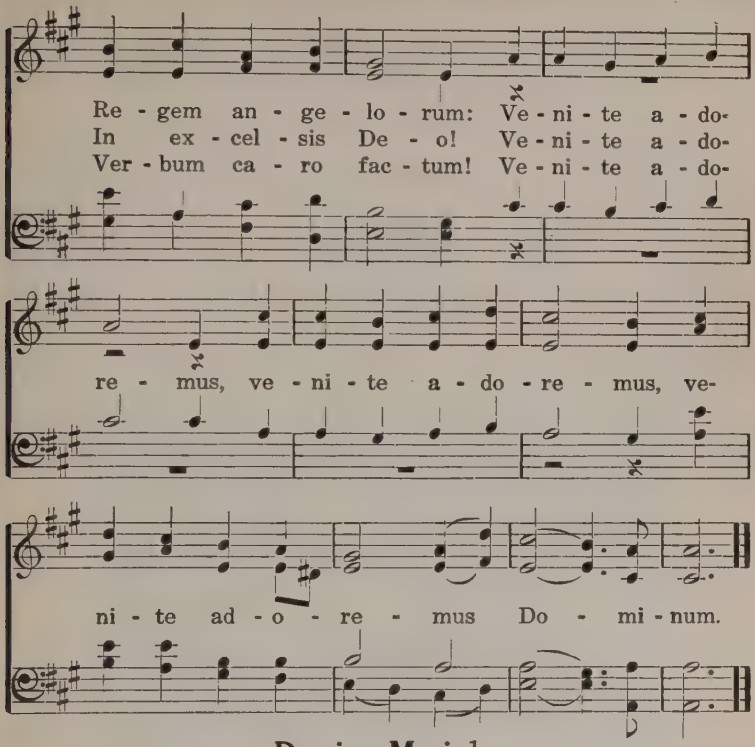
Author unknown
17th or 18th cent.

(PORTUGUESE HYMN)

JOHN READING, d. 1692


1. Ad - es - te, fi - de - les, Lae - ti tri - um-
2. Can - tet nunc I - o! Cho - rus an-
3. Er - go qui na - tus Di - - e ho-
phan - tes, Ve - ni - te, ve - ni - te in
ge - lo - rum, Can - tet nunc au - la cae-
di - er - na, Je - - - su, ti - - bi sit
Beth - le - hem; Na - tum vi - de - te
les - - ti - um, Glo - ri - a, glo - ri-a
glo - - ri - a: Pa - tris ae - ter - ni

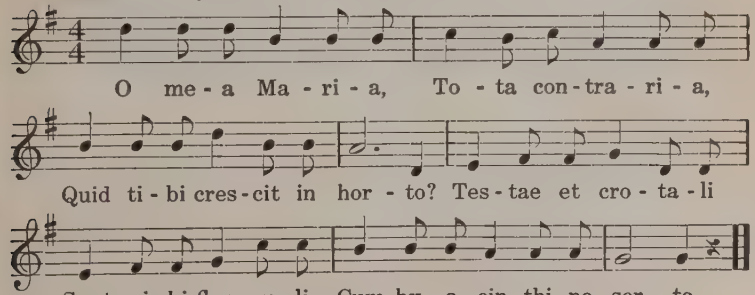
(1) For English words see page 372.


Re - gem an - ge - lo - rum: Ve - ni - te a - do-
In ex - cel - sis De - o! Ve - ni - te a - do-
Ver - bum ca - ro fac - tum! Ve - ni - te a - do-
re - mus, ve - ni - te a - do - re - mus, ve-
ni - te ad - o - re - mus Do - mi - num.

Domina Maria[1]

GAMMER GURTON, English
HENRICUS DRURY, Latin

Old Nursery Melody



(1) For English words see page 373.

ENGLISH WORDS OF THE LATIN SONGS

INTEGER VITAE

The man upright in life and free from guilt, needs not, O Fuscus, Moorish darts nor bow nor quiver loaded with envenomed arrows, whether his journey is to be over the boiling Syrtis or through the inhospitable Caucasus or in the places washed by the Hydaspes, famed in story. For while in the Sabine woods I was singing of my Lalage, and carefree was wandering beyond bounds, a wolf fled from me though I was unarmed. No such monster does the warlike Daunia nourish in its oak forest, nor does the land of Juba, that desert nurse of lions, produce the like. Place me where on the lifeless plains no tree is warmed to new life by the summer breeze, a region over which hang clouds and a gloomy sky; place me beneath the course of the sun as it draws too near the earth, in a land devoid of human dwellings; still will I love Lalage with her sweet smile and her sweet words.

LITTLE JACK HORNER

Little Jack Horner
Sat in a corner,
Eating a Christmas pie.
He put in his thumb
And pulled out a plum,
And cried, "What a good boy am I!"

O COME, ALL YE FAITHFUL[1]

O come, all ye faithful, joyfully triumphant;
To Bethlehem hasten now with glad accord.
Lo! in a manger lies the King of angels,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

Raise, raise, choirs of angels, songs of loudest triumph;
Through heaven's high arches be your praises poured.
Now to our God be glory in the highest;
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

[1] The words of this hymn are based upon the Latin hymn *Adeste Fideles*, but they are not an exact translation.

Amen, Lord, we bless Thee, born for our salvation;
O Jesus, forever be Thy name adored;
Word of the Father, late in flesh appearing,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

MISTRESS MARY

Mistress Mary,
Quite contrary,
How does your garden grow?
With silver bells
And cockle-shells
And hyacinths all of a row.

A LITTER

MEDICUS

PERSŌNAE.

Titus: *puer Rōmānus, duodecim annōs nātus.*
Octāvia: *Titī māter.*
Lūcius } *Titī frātrēs, geminī,*
Pūblius } *septem annōs nātī.*
Medicus.

SCAENA. IN CUBICULŌ PUERŌRUM.

Ā sinistrā stat lātus lectulus; ibi dormiunt trēs puerī, Titus et Lūcius et Pūblius. Ā dextrā est fenestra, ā tergō jānua. Gallus extrā cantat et puerōs ē somnō excitat.

TIT. Quota hōra est?

LUC. [*ad fenestram currit.*] Prīma ferē hōra est. Sōl mox surget.

TIT. Ō mē miserum! Pēnsum meum nōn fēcī. Quid Orbilius dīcet?

PUB. Immō vērō, quid faciet Orbilius?

TIT. Jam ferulam sentiō. Ad lūdum īre nōn audeō.

LUC. Gaudeō quia nōndum ad lūdum īmus, ego et Pūblius.

TIT. Quālēs frātrēs estis! Quia vāpulābō, gaudētis.

LUC. ET PUB. [*saltant et cantant.*] Titus vāpulābit; Titus vāpulābit.

TIT. [*īrātus.*] Vōs etiam vāpulābitis.

[*Frātrēs loculīs ferit.*]

LUC. ET PUB. [*lacrimant.*] Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit. Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit.

TIT. Quia vōs vāpulāvistis, lacrimātis. Iterum autem lacrimābitis, nisi bonum cōnsilium mihi inveniētis; nam ego vāpulāre hodiē nōlō.

PUB. Cōnsilium habeō.

TIT. ET LUC. Dīc nōbīs.

PUB. Manēte; cōgitō.

TIT. Festīnā, Pūblī; Ō mē miserum, vāpulābō.

LUC. Fortasse malum Pūblius habet cōnsilium; tum vāpulābis, Tite.

TIT. Nisi statim cōnsilium nārrābis, iterum idem accipiēs. [*Loculōs sūmit.*]

PUB. Cōgitāvī. Audīte cōnsilium. Vesperī apud Quīntum cēnābās.

TIT. Illud jam scīmus.

PUB. Bene, ibi nimis ēdistī.

TIT. Quid dīcere vīs? Semper nimis edō; tū quoque et Lūcius.

PUB. Sānē, at tū hodiē aegrōtās, quia nimis vesperī ēdistī.

TIT. At nōn aegrōtō, mī frāter!

LUC. Ō stulte, nōnne intellegis? Hodiē aegrum simulābis.

TIT. Intellegō. Euge, Pūblī! bonum cōnsilium invēnistī! Tū, Lūcī, ī ad mātrem; illī dē morbō meō aliquid nārrā! [*Exit Lūcius.*] Pūblī, in aquam hunc pannum merge! Festīnā! nam mātrem audiō; pannō meōs oculōs preme! Heu! heu! quantum doleō!

[*Octāvia intrat cum Lūciō.*]

OCT. Hercle! Quam aeger es! Quid habēs, mī fīlī?

TIT. Multum doleō. Nunc calidus sum, nunc frīgidus.

OCT. Ō cāre fīlī, medicum arcessam. Quis medicum venīre jubēbit?

LUC. Ego medicum arcessam, mea māter.

PUB. Et ego cum Lūciō ībō.

OCT. Īte, parvulī, et medicāmentum ferre medicum jubēte.

LUC. Acerbum medicāmentum sēcum feret medicus.

PUB. Acerbum medicāmentum. [*Exeunt geminī.*]

TIT. Ut sitiō, māter cārissima!

OCT. Miselle puer! Aquam frīgidam tibi dabō. Bibe!
[*Titus bibit.*]

TIT. Māter, nunc frīgidus sum. Ecce! membra mea tremunt.
OCT. Ēn, vestīmentīs tē tegam.
TIT. Māter, nimis calidus sum.
OCT. Eheu! Quī morbus tē tenet? Quandō medicus veniet?
TIT. Aliquis jānuam pulsat.

[*Medicus cum puerīs intrat.*]

MED. Salvē, domina! Quis aeger est?
OCT. Salvē, medice! Fīlius meus aegrōtat.
MED. Salvē, puer! Aegerne es? [*Titus annuit.*]
LUC. ET PUB. Ita, medice, valdē aeger est.
MED. Num edere potes? [*Titus annuit.*]
LUC. ET PUB. Minimē; nihil edere potest.
MED. Ostende mihi linguam tuam. Hem! Quid herī ēdistī?
TIT. Nesciō, medice.
LUC. Sciō equidem.
PUB. Et ego.
LUC. Apud Quīntum vesperī cēnābat.
PUB. Nimis ēdit—porcum.
LUC. Et pōma.
PUB. Et lība.
LUC. Et alia multa.
OCT. Minimē mīrum, sī hodiē aegrōtās.
MED. Minimē mīrum est. Medicāmentum tibi parābō.
[*Medicus medicāmentum parat.*]

LUC. Quāle medicāmentum parās?
PUB. Acerbumne est annōn?
MED. Acerbum est.
LUC. ET PUB. Acerbum est medicāmentum. Acerbum est medicāmentum.

MED. Dā mihi pōculum, domina! [*Fundit.*] Nunc bibe, puer! [*Titus medicāmentum gustat.*]

TIT. Nōlō bibere. Tāle pōculum numquam bibam.

OCT. Ohē, puer improbe! Quō modō aegrōtāre dēsinēs, nisi medicāmentum bibēs?

LUC. ET PUB. Titus bibere nōn vult. Titus bibere nōn vult.

MED. Necesse est bibere.

LUC. ET PUB. Acerbum est. Gaudēmus, quia acerbum est medicāmentum.

TIT. Aliquis mox vāpulābit. [*Geminī audiunt et silent.*]

OCT. Statim bibe; sīn minus, patrem vocābō.

TIT. Nōlō. [*Exit Octāvia.*]

PATRIS VOX. Tite, audīsne mē?

TIT. Ita, mī pater.

PATRIS VOX. Nōnne medicāmentum bibere vīs?

TIT. Sānē, mī pater, bibere volō. [*Dum bibit, Octāvia intrat.*]

OCT. Medicāmentum bibit Titus.

MED. Bene; deinde tranquillē dormiēs. Mox validus iterum eris et rōbustus. Valē, domina; valēte, puerī.

OMNES. Valē, medice. [*Exit Medicus.*]

TIT. Jam validior sum. Licetne mihi surgere, māter?

OCT. Nōn licet, Ō stulte. Tōtum diem in lectulō jacēbis. Et ego prope tē manēbō.

TIT. Nōn necesse est tibi, cārissima māter, prope mē manēre.

OCT. Meus es fīlius. Prope tē manēbo, dum aegrōtās.

LUC. ET PUB. Licetne nōbīs in hortō lūdere?

OCT. Abīte, geminī, et in hortō lūdite.

LUC. ET PUB. Titus in lectulō manēbit, tōtum diem in lēctulō manēbit. [*Exeunt Lūcius et Pūblius. Titus pugnum agitat.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON I

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

THE INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL PHRASE

696. A phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle is sometimes used in a sentence without being closely connected with any other word in the sentence. Thus, *A new leader having been chosen, we may expect better results.* In this sentence the phrase *a new leader having been chosen* is not directly connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. Such a phrase is said to be independent of the rest of the sentence.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

697. The case which is used in Latin for such independent constructions is the ablative. In the sentence given above as an example the word for *leader* would be put in the ablative in Latin and the participle for *having been chosen* would agree with it in gender, number, and case. This use of the ablative is called the *ablative absolute.*[1]

Duce captō, **hostēs fūgērunt,** *The leader having been captured, the enemy fled.*

Fīliīs meīs laudātīs, **laetus sum,** *My sons having been praised, I am happy.*

[1]The original force of the ablative in this construction may be seen if the preposition *with* is used in the translation of these phrases: *with the leader captured; with my sons (having been) praised.*

698. Often an adjective or another noun is used instead of a participle as the second part of the ablative absolute construction.

Amīcō meō invītō, **diūtius nōn manēbō,** *My friend (being) unwilling, I shall not remain longer.*

Caesare duce, **mīlitēs semper fortiter pugnābant,** *Caesar (being) leader, the soldiers always fought bravely.*

a. The participle *being,* which is often used in translating an ablative absolute of which the second part is an adjective or a noun, has no equivalent in Latin.

FREE TRANSLATION OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

699. In English, independent phrases which correspond to the literal translation of the ablative absolute are not very often used. It is, therefore, frequently necessary to translate the ablative absolute by a clause introduced by *when, after, if, since,* or *although,* as the sense of the main clause may suggest.

monte occupātō, *when the mountain had been seized.*
duce captō, *after the leader had been captured.*

a. Sometimes prepositional phrases are employed in translating this ablative.

Gallīs invītīs, *against the will of the Gauls.*
Caesare cōnsule, *in the consulship of Caesar.*

READING EXERCISE: HERCULES

700. Ōlim in Graeciā erat rēx quī Creōn appellātus est. Is rēx erat ignāvus, neque cīvēs contrā hostēs dēfendēbat. Tum Herculēs, quī in eādem urbe habitābat, exercitū coāctō, cum hostibus pugnābat. Hostibus victīs, exercitus in urbem reductus est. Omnēs cīvēs Herculem laudābant, et praemia eī data sunt.

Herculēs erat vir validissimus tōtīus Graeciae, neque ūllum perīculum timēbat. Multōs labōrēs cōnfēcit et per multās terrās errāvit. Dēnique, hīs labōribus cōnfectīs, in Graeciam rediit.

701. VOCABULARY

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect, compel
cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish
Creōn, Creontis, M., Creon, *a Greek name*
Herculēs, Herculis, M., Hercules
labor, labōris, M., labor
redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back
ūllus, -a, -um, any

a. The genitive and dative of **ūllus** are like those of **sōlus,** section **13** of the Appendix.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

702. 1. Collecting an army (an army having been collected), Hercules defeated the enemy. 2. After the capture of the city (the city having been captured) the king was killed. 3. On seeing the enemy (the enemy having been seen) the soldiers seized (took) their arms. 4. Hearing the sound (the sound having been heard) the soldiers hastened to the gates of the city. 5. After the founding of the city (the city having been founded) a king was elected.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

703. 1. What is a *cogent* reason? 2. Find two English words derived from **redūcō.** 3. What English adjective is connected in derivation with **labor?**

Optional Drill

704. *A*. In the following sentences point out the phrases or clauses which could be translated by ablatives absolute and give the equivalent independent phrase in English for each:

1. Leaving the legion in camp, the general crossed the river. 2. After killing the deer the man returned to his companions. 3. On receiving the reward the boy thanked his father. 4. When the king had been driven out, the citizens were happier.

(*a*) Give the gender and number of the Latin participles required in the translation of the independent phrases in the preceding sentences.

B. 1. Agrīs suīs vāstātīs, sociī auxilium postulant. 2. Cōnsiliō tuō probātō, omnēs cīvēs tē laudant. 3. Oppidō dēlētō, barbarī fūgērunt. 4. Armīs cēlātīs, portās aperuimus. 5. Nūntiō missō, diū in eō locō mānsimus.

705. 1. Hearing the shout, the boy ran from the farmhouse. 2. When many had been wounded (*not a clause in Latin*) the soldiers left the rampart. 3. When the rope had been let down, Horatius was pulled from the river.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON II

DEPONENT VERBS

FORM AND USE OF DEPONENTS

706. A deponent verb is a verb which is passive in form but active in meaning. Thus **cōnor,** *I try,* **pollicētur,** *he promises.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF DEPONENTS

707. Deponents have only three principal parts and only two stems, the present and the participial. The principal parts of **cōnor,** of the first conjugation, and **polliceor,** of the second, are:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try*
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise*

PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDINGS

708. The following are the endings of the present infinitive of deponent verbs for the four conjugations:

I	II	III	IV
-ārī	**-ērī**	**-ī**	**-īrī**

DEPONENTS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

709. The present tense of deponents of the first and second conjugations is formed exactly like the present passive of **portō** and **moneō:**

I		II	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
cōnor	cōnāmur	polliceor	pollicēmur
cōnāris	cōnāminī	pollicēris	pollicēminī
cōnātur	cōnantur	pollicētur	pollicentur

710. In the imperfect and future the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of the corresponding tenses of **portō** and **moneō:**

cōnābar, cōnābāris, etc.; **cōnābor, cōnāberis,** etc.; **pollicēbar, pollicēbāris,** etc.; **pollicēbor, pollicēberis,** etc.

PERFECT SYSTEM OF *CŌNOR* AND *POLLICEOR*

711. PERFECT TENSE

I		II	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
cōnātus sum	cōnātī sumus	pollicitus sum	pollicitī sumus
cōnātus es	cōnātī estis	pollicitus es	pollicitī estis
cōnātus est	cōnātī sunt	pollicitus est	pollicitī sunt

a. The past perfect and future perfect are formed like the corresponding tenses of the passive of **portō** and **moneō: cōnātus eram,** etc.; **cōnātus erō,** etc.; **pollicitus eram,** etc.; **pollicitus erō,** etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

712. 1. Hī hominēs auxilium pollicentur. 2. Ille rēx urbem dēfendere nōn cōnātus est. 3. Multī hunc librum mīrantur. 4. Herculēs leōnem nōn veritus est. 5. Illī barbarī lātē vagābantur et agrōs gentium fīnitimārum vāstābant. 6. Ōlim Herculēs magnum leōnem necāvit quī in silvā latēbat. 7. Incolae ejus regiōnis leōnem magnopere verēbantur. 8. Eam silvam semper vītābant ubi leō erat. 9. Leōne necātō, omnēs laetī erant. 10. Magnum praemium quod pollicitī erant Herculī dedērunt.

713. VOCABULARY

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, try, attempt
fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring
leō, leōnis, M., lion
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, admire, wonder at
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, promise
vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, wander
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

714. 1. The man does not try to defend his brother. 2. We cannot promise aid. 3. The Gauls feared punishment because they had killed the lieutenant. 4. The Etruscans wondered at the courage of Horatius. 5. The boys are wandering through the forest.

Optional Drill

715. *A.* 1. Write the conjugation of **vagor** and **vereor** in the present tense. 2. Write a synopsis of **mīror** in the third person plural. 3. Conjugate **vereor** in the future. 4. Translate: cōnābātur; pollicēbātur; vagābuntur; verentur; mīrābimur.

B. 1. Rēx pecūniam pollicētur. 2. Barbarī nostrās urbēs mīrātī sunt. 3. Illī exulēs per Eurōpam vagātī sunt. 4. In-

colae urbis adventum barbarōrum verēbantur. 5. Cūr flūmen trānsīre nōn cōnāris? 6. Ponte frāctō, hostēs flūmen trānsīre nōn poterant.

716. 1. I was trying; I was promising; we were admiring. 2. We shall fear; they will wander; you (*plural*) will promise. 3. The town having been fortified, the citizens were safe. 4. We shall try to come soon.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON III

DEPONENT VERBS (Continued)

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

717. The present tense of deponents of the third and fourth conjugations is formed like the present passive of **dūcō** and **audiō**. The principal parts and the present indicative of **sequor** of the third conjugation and **partior** of the fourth are as follows:

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
partior, partīrī, partītus sum, *share*

718. PRESENT

III		IV	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
sequor	sequimur	partior	partīmur
sequeris	sequiminī	partīris	partīminī
sequitur	sequuntur	partītur	partiuntur

719. In the imperfect and future the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of the corresponding tenses of **dūcō** and **audiō**: **sequēbar, sequēbāris,** etc.; **partiēbar, partiēbāris,** etc.; **sequar, sequēris,** etc.; **partiar, partiēris,** etc.

720. PERFECT OF *SEQUOR* AND *PARTIOR*

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
secūtus sum	secūtī sumus	partītus sum	partītī sumus
secūtus es	secūtī estis	partītus es	partītī estis
secūtus est	secūtī sunt	partītus est	partītī sunt

a. The past perfect and future perfect are formed like the corresponding tenses of the passive of **dūcō** and **audiō**: **secūtus eram,** etc., **secūtus erō,** etc., **partītus eram,** etc., **partītus erō,** etc.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATON IN *-IOR*

721. Verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ior** are conjugated like the passive of **capiō**. The synopsis of **prōgredior,** which belongs to this class, is as follows in the third person singular:

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, *advance*

PRES.	prōgreditur	PERF.	prōgressus est
IMP.	prōgrediēbātur	P. PERF.	prōgressus erat
FUT.	prōgrediētur	F. PERF.	prōgressus erit

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

722. 1. Hunc cibum partiēmur quod amīcī nostrī ēsuriunt. 2. Parvus puer patrem diūtius sequī nōn potest. 3. Tum dux Rōmānus ad collem cum equitibus prōgressus est. 4. In Eurōpam cum amīcīs proficīscimur, et duōs annōs ibi manēbimus. 5. Duo centuriōnēs ex castrīs prōgrediuntur et cum hostibus pugnant. 6. Tē sequēmur quod cōnsilium tuum semper bonum fuit. 7. Herculēs usque ad eum collem prōgressus est ubi Rōma posteā condita est. 8. Equitēs in castrīs mānsērunt, sed aliī mīlitēs profectī sunt. 9. Tum leōnēs et alia animālia per illam regiōnem vagābantur. 10. Pācem nōbīs pollicitus es, sed pācem nōn habēmus.

723. VOCABULARY

eques, equitis, M., horseman; *pl.*, cavalry

partior, -īrī, partītus sum, share, divide

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, advance

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

724. 1. The cavalry were following the enemy, who had fled from the camp. 2. We shall not advance far from the camp. 3. The leader shares this honor with the soldiers. 4. The Romans set out into the region where the barbarians were laying waste the fields. 5. Many wondered at the courage of Hercules. 6. The leader promised money to the scouts.

Optional Drill

725. *A*. 1. Write a synopsis of **proficīscor** in the third person singular. 2. Write the conjugation of **partior** and **prōgredior** in the present tense and point out the differences between the two. 3. Decline **eques** and **equus.** 4. Translate: (*a*) proficīscētur; sequētur; sequentur; sequuntur; prōgrediētur; prōgreditur. (*b*) We were following; they were following; he will share; he shares; he fears; he admires.

B. 1. Ad urbem proficīscēbāmur in quā māter tua habitābat. 2. Legiō ad rīpam flūminis prōgressa est. 3. Explōrātor hostēs sequētur quī nunc proficīscuntur. 4. Hanc pecūniam partiēmur quae nōbīs data est. 5. Cīvēs magnopere equitēs hostium verēbantur. 6. Per multās terrās vagātī sumus, et laetī patriam iterum vidēmus.

726. 1. Who will follow me into the city? 2. We advanced with all our soldiers. 3. Your brother had set out to Europe with your father. 4. We did not promise help to the boys.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON IV

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS AND WITH SPECIAL VERBS

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

727. Many verbs compounded with prepositions take a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. The most important prepositions whose compounds are thus used are **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub.**

Centuriō ***legiōnī*** **praeest,** *The centurion is in command of the legion.*

a. Other prepositions whose compounds sometimes take the dative are **ad, circum, cum** (**com-**), **in, inter, post, prō, super.**

b. If the simple verb is transitive the compound may have both an accusative and a dative.

Rōmānī *Gallīs bellum* **īnferunt,** *The Romans make war on the Gauls.*

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

728. Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative.

Liber ***tibi*** **placet,** *The book pleases you.*

a. The verbs **imperō,** *command,* **noceō,** *injure,* and a few others also govern the dative.

b. The English equivalents of these verbs take direct objects, but the Latin words did not suggest to the Romans a direct object. Thus **placēre** meant *be pleasing to* and **persuādēre** meant *make attractive to.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

729. 1. Puerō persuāsī, sed patrī ejus persuādēre nōn potuī. 2. Cūr epistula mea tibi nōn placet? 3. Mīlitēs fortiter hostibus resistēbant et pontem dēfendēbant. 4. Rōmānī Horātiō pārēbunt et in urbem redībunt. 5. Rōmānīs bellum nōn īnferimus, sed Rōmānī nōbīs bellum īnferunt. 6. Dux quī urbī praeest ignāvus est. 7. Cīvēs alium ducem exercituī praeficient. 8. Gallīs resistēmus et patriam dēfendēmus. 9. Hoc cōnsilium mihi nōn placet, sed multī probant. 10. Ūna legiō exercituī barbarōrum restitit.

730. VOCABULARY

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātum, bring upon, cause; **bellum īnferre,** make war on.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please, be pleasing

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, place in command of

praesum, -esse, -fuī, be in charge of, be in command of

a. In the indicative the verb **īnferō** is conjugated like **dūcō** except for a few forms in the present tense. Only forms of the third conjugation or belonging to the perfect system are used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

731. 1. This story greatly pleased the little girls. 2. The boy obeyed his father and remained in the town. 3. The consul who is in command of the army today is not a good leader. 4. Why have the Etruscans made war on the Romans? 5. I shall place the bravest centurion in command of these soldiers.

Optional Drill

732. *A.* 1. Mihī persuādēs; tibi persuādeō; Horātius cōnsulī persuādet. 2. Haec terra nōbīs placet; pāx omnibus cīvibus placet. 3. Barbarī legiōnī resistēbant. 4. Exercitus ducī nōn pāret. 5. Centuriō legiōnī praeest.

B. 1. Sextus equitibus praeest quī hostēs sequuntur. 2. Cōnsul quī tum urbī praeerat ad pontem prōgressus est. 3. Dux quī bellō praefectus est statim ex urbe profectus est. 4. Omnēs eum ducem ōderant quī Siciliae praefectus erat. 5. Bellum huic gentī īnferēmus quod agrī nostrī vāstātī sunt.

733. 1. This war did not please good citizens. 2. The soldiers were resisting the barbarians who had crossed the river. 3. The Roman leader who has been placed in command of the ships is a brave man. 4. You will never persuade these citizens.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON V

PARTICIPLES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

THE PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

734. The present active participle of a Latin verb ends in **-ns,** and is formed on the present stem. In the fourth conjugation and in **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation the stem ending becomes **-iē,** as in the imperfect tense. The present participles of regular verbs in the four conjugations are as follows.

I	II	III		IV
(portō)	(moneō)	(dūcō)	(capiō)	(audiō)
portāns	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
carrying	*warning*	*leading*	*taking*	*hearing*

a. The English verb has a present passive participle as well as a present active: *being carried, being warned,* etc. There is no present passive participle in Latin.

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

735. Like other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension:

	Singular		*Singular*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	portāns	portāns	monēns	monēns
Gen.	portantis	portantis	monentis	monentis
Dat.	portantī	portantī	monentī	monentī
Acc.	portantem	portāns	monentem	monēns
Abl.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	monente (-ī)	monente (-ī)
	Plural		*Plural*	
Nom.	portantēs	portantia	monentēs	monentia
Gen.	portantium	portantium	monentium	monentium
Dat.	portantibus	portantibus	monentibus	monentibus
Acc.	portantīs (-ēs)	portantia	monentīs (-ēs)	monentia
Abl.	portantibus	portantibus	monentibus	monentibus

a. The use of the Latin present participle must not be confused with the progressive form of the verb (*see section* **108,** *a*). In the sentence *The man is standing in the street* the expression *is standing* is the progressive form of the verb, and will be translated by one Latin word, **stat.** In the sentence *The man standing on the wall is my brother,* the word *standing* is a participle modifying *man,* and will be translated by the Latin present participle, **stāns.**

b. Deponent verbs have present active participles: **cōnāns, verēns,** etc.

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

736. Latin verbs have a future active participle formed on the participial stem. It is declined like the perfect passive participle, from which it is to be distinguished by **-ūr-,** preceding the case ending.

portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry,* or *going to carry.*
monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn,* or *going to warn.*

a. Some verbs which have no perfect participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is given as the fourth principal part.

737. The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus.** The principal parts of **sum** are **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.** The fourth of the principal parts of **stō** is **stātūrus.**

a. The future participle is often combined with the forms of **sum** to refer to something which someone intends to do or is about to do.

Mānsūrus eram, *I was about to remain, I intended to remain.*

Laudātūrus est, *He is about to praise, He intends to praise.*

b. Deponent verbs have future active participles: **cōnātūrus, veritūrus,** etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

738. 1. Puer per agrōs ambulāns serpentem vīdit. 2. Hic sonus īnfantem dormientem excitāvit. 3. Herculēs arcum et sagittās rapuit et animal necātūrus erat. 4. Māter īnfantium clamōrem eōrum in cūnīs cubantium audīvit et marītum suum excitāvit. 5. Marītus ejus lūmen accēnsūrus erat. 6. Lūmine accēnsō vir īnfantem tūtum esse vīdit. 7. Epistulam dē hīs rēbus mox missūrus sum. 8. Hostēs legiōnem venientem vīdērunt et statim fūgērunt. 9. Haec urbs nōbīs nōn placet, et mox ad alium locum cum amīcīs profectūrī sumus.

739. VOCABULARY

cubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, lie down, lie

cūnae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, cradle

lūmen, lūminis, N., light

marītus, -ī, M., husband

serpēns, -entis, F., snake

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

740. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. We saw the *ship coming* to the land. 2. We hear the voices *of the sailors demanding* food. 3. The consul is the brother *of the man standing* on the bridge. 4. I saw a *deer running* through the forest. 5. The *scouts fleeing* from the enemy crossed this river. 6. Your *friends are going to remain* in Europe.

Optional Drill

741. *A.* 1. Give the present participles of **habeō, habitō, praeficiō, proficīscor.** 2. Write the declension of the present participle of **accendō.** 3. Give the future active participles of **mittō, dīcō, dō, accipiō, persuādeō.** 4. Translate: clāmāns; vidēns; expectāns; jaciēns; mūniēns.

B. 1. Nautae per īnsulam errantēs parvum oppidum vīdērunt. 2. Major numerus sociōrum ventūrus est. 3. Horātius pontem frāctūrus est. 4. Rēx magnōs lūdōs factūrus est. 5. Perseus in lītus dēscēnsūrus erat. 6. Hunc locum petēns ad tuam īnsulam vēnī.

742. 1. The serpents were about to kill the children (**īnfantēs.**) 2. The centurion was about to seize his sword. 3. The sailors aroused the boy sleeping on the shore. 4. The barbarians fleeing from the battle were killed by the cavalry.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON VI

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

THE ACTIVE INFINITIVES

743. The Latin infinitive has three tenses, the present, perfect, and future. The active infinitives of **portō** are as follows: present, **portāre,** *to carry,* perfect, **portāvisse,** *to have carried,* future, **portātūrus esse,** *to be going to carry* (or *to be*

about to carry). The present infinitives of the four conjugations, both active and passive, have already been given (*section* **473**).

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVES

744. The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem. The future active infinitive consists of the future active participle with **esse.** The active infinitives of the model verbs of the four conjugations are as follows:

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	portāre	monēre	dūcere	audīre
PERF.	portāvisse	monuisse	dūxisse	audīvisse
FUT.	portātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	audītūrus esse

THE PASSIVE INFINITIVES

745. The present passive and perfect passive infinitives of **portō** are: present, **portārī,** *to be carried*, perfect, **portātus esse,** *to have been carried.* The future passive infinitive is rarely used and is omitted from the exercises of this book.

The perfect passive infinitive of all verbs is made up of the perfect participle followed by **esse.** The present passive and perfect passive infinitives of the model verbs of the four conjugations are as follows:

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	portārī	monērī	dūcī	audīrī
PERF.	portātus esse	monitus esse	ductus esse	audītus esse

a. While the present and perfect infinitives of deponent verbs are passive in form, their future infinitives are active: **cōnātūrus esse, veritūrus esse.**

EXERCISES

746. 1. Invītārī; invītāvisse; invītātus esse. 2. Audītūrus esse; audīvisse; audīrī. 3. Cēpisse; dūxisse; mūnīvisse. 4. Mittī; mīsisse; missus esse. 5. Monērī; monitūrus esse; monuisse. 6. Dīcī; dīxisse; dictūrus esse. 7. Postulārī; timērī; petī; interficī; mūnīrī. 8. Jūvisse; relīquisse; fūgisse. 9. Datūrus esse; mānsūrus esse; mūnītūrus esse. 10. Stetisse; dedisse; jēcisse.

747. 1. To defend; to be defended; to have defended. 2. To order; to have ordered; to have been ordered. 3. To take; to be taken; to be going to take. 4. To have feared; to have been left; to have been led. 5. To be destroyed; to have been destroyed; to have destroyed. 6. To have been killed; to have killed; to have been received.

Optional Drill

748. *A*. 1. Write the principal parts of **gerō, mūniō,** and **vincō** and indicate the three stems of each. 2. Mention all the forms which are made on the perfect stem. 3. Give all the participles which have been studied thus far from **gerō, mūniō,** and **capiō.**

B. 1. Write all the infinitives given thus far for the verbs **mōnstrō, aperiō,** and **sūmō,** with their meanings. 2. Give the forms meaning *to have seen, to have conquered, to have come.* 3. Give four prepositions whose compounds regularly govern the dative. 4. Write the rule for the use of the dative with special verbs.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON VII

TENSE OF INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE

749. The act expressed by the present infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as occurring at the time denoted by the tense of the main verb.

Dīcit sē perīculum timēre, *He says that he fears danger.*
Dīxit sē perīculum timēre, *He said that he feared danger.*

THE PERFECT INFINITIVE

750. The act expressed by the perfect infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as already past at the time denoted by the tense of the main verb.

Hostēs fūgisse videō, *I see that the enemy have fled.*
Hostēs fūgisse vīdī, *I saw that the enemy had fled.*

THE FUTURE INFINITIVE

751. The act expressed by the future infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as future from the point of view of the time denoted by the tense of the main verb. The future infinitive is regularly translated with *shall* or *will* after a main verb in the present tense and with *should* or *would* after a main verb in any past tense.

Puer dīcit frātrem ventūrum esse, *The boy says that his brother will come.*[1]
Puer dīxit frātrem ventūrum esse, *The boy said that his brother would come.*[1]

THE PARTICIPLE IN THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

752. The participle used in forming the perfect passive and the future active infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case

[1]We may also translate these infinitives *is going to come* for the first sentence and *was going to come* for the second.

with the subject of the infinitive. Since the subject is in the accusative, the participle will end in **-um** or **-am** for the singular and in **-ōs** or **-ās** or **-a** for the plural.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

753. 1. Cīvēs putābant Perseum mōnstrum interfectūrum esse. 2. Rēx vidēbat fīliam suam servātam esse. 3. Servus dīxit arcam ad lītus appulsam esse. 4. Poētae dīcunt rēgem mātrem Perseī benignē excēpisse. 5. Scīmus Minervam viam dēmōnstrāvisse. 6. Audīvimus hanc fābulam ā magnō poētā scrīptam esse. 7. Herculēs crēdidit sē leōnem sagittīs necātūrum esse. 8. Māter Perseī dīxit sē rēgem timēre. 9. Vīdimus hostēs magnās cōpiās habēre.

754. VOCABULARY

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive
arca, -ae, F., box, chest
benignē, *adv.*, kindly
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show, point out
Minerva, -ae, F., Minerva, *a goddess*
mōnstrum, -ī, N., monster
Perseus, -ī, M., Perseus, *a legendary Greek hero*

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

755. 1. Romulus believed that he had founded a great city. 2. The citizens thought that the army would defend the town. 3. We had heard that Horatius defended the bridge bravely. 4. The soldier said that his brother would send the money at once. 5. The sailor announced that he had found food on the island.

Optional Drill

756. 1. Sciō tē amīcōs habēre. 2. Sciō tē amīcōs habuisse. 3. Sciō tē amīcōs habitūrum esse. 4. Crēdō ducem nostrum

semper fidēlem fuisse. 5. Crēdō eum semper fidēlem futūrum esse. 6. Vidēbam nāvem appropinquāre. 7. Audīvimus barbarōs multa oppida expugnāvisse. 8. Putō vōs cibum mox habitūrōs esse.

757. 1. The boys believed that they would kill many animals in the forest. 2. The Gauls said that they had left all their weapons in the town. 3. I thought that you would send the books. 4. The consul saw that the army did not obey.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON VIII

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION: ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

THE GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

758. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

homō magnae virtūtis, *a man of great courage.*

a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to express measure.

mūrus trium pedum, *a three-foot wall* (*a wall of three feet*)

THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

759. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

homō magnā virtūte, *a man of great courage.*

a. In many phrases, such as the example above, either the genitive or the ablative may be used. But physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative, and measure always by the genitive.

b. This use of two different cases for the idea of description is similar to our use of *with* phrases and *of* phrases in certain expressions in English. We may say *a man of good reputation* or *a man with a good reputation*, using both phrases to describe *man*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

760. 1. Hic centuriō erat magnā auctōritāte apud mīlitēs. 2. Mūrus erat magnā altitūdine, et oppidum tūtum erat. 3. Mīlitēs, quī iter sex diērum fēcerant, dēfessī erant. 4. Ille dux erat magnā audāciā, et hostēs eum timēbant. 5. Ōlim in eā terrā erat rēx quī hominēs immolābat. 6. Audīvimus in eā terrā ōlim rēgem crūdēlissimum fuisse. 7. Facile haec vincula perrumpam et effugiam. 8. Ille vir validus putābat sē vincula facile perruptūrum esse. 9. Gallī vidēbant agrōs suōs vāstātōs esse. 10. Putābant exercitum Rōmānum agrōs suōs vāstātūrum esse.

761. VOCABULARY

altitūdō, -dinis, F., height, depth

auctōritās, -ātis, F., influence, authority

audācia, -ae, F., boldness

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through, break

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

762. 1. The scout, who was a man of great boldness, followed the army through the forest. 2. The Romans sent into Gaul a leader of great courage. 3. Mountains of great height divide Italy from (ā) Gaul. 4. The consul was not a man of great courage, nor was he a wise leader. 5. The messenger said that the prisoners had broken their chains.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON IX

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ* AND *FERŌ*

THE CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*

763. The principal parts of **volō,** *I wish,* are as follows:

volō, velle, voluī

It is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

Singular	*Plural*
volō	volumus
vīs	vultis
vult	volunt

a. The imperfect and future indicative are formed like those of a regular third conjugation verb: imperfect, **volēbam, volēbās,** etc., future, **volam, volēs,** etc.

THE CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*

764. The principal parts of **ferō,** *I bear,* are as follows:

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum

It is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

a. Like the corresponding tenses of **volō,** the imperfect and future indicative are formed regularly in the third conjugation: imperfect, **ferēbam, ferēbās,** etc., future, **feram, ferēs,** etc.

b. Both **ferō** and **volō** are conjugated regularly in the perfect system.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

765. 1. Quid vīs, vigil? Cūr tantum clamōrem tollis? 2. Hostēs appropinquāre videō, et omnēs cīvēs excitāre volō. 3. Puer frātrem quī dormiēbat excitāre volēbat. 4. Dux noster cibum fert, et mox cēnam parābimus. 5. Mīlitēs in lītore ligna cōnferunt et ignem incendunt. 6. Barbarī ad proelium prōgredientēs magnōs clāmōrēs tollunt. 7. Puerī ex casā arma ferunt et haec arma patrī suō dant. 8. Cīvēs sē fortiter dēfendunt, et auxilium ā mīlitibus fertur. 9. Nēmō in hōc locō diūtius manēre vult. 10. Putāmus nēminem in hōc locō manēre velle.

766. VOCABULARY

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, bring together, collect
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, bring, carry
incendō, -cendere, -cendī, cēnsum, kindle, set fire to
nēmō, *dat.* **nēminī,** *acc.* **nēminem,** *no gen. or abl.*, no one
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise
volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

767. 1. The king wishes to return to (**in**) his native land. 2. The soldier brings money from (**ā**) the centurion's father. 3. A large city of Spain has been captured by the barbarians. 4. The soldiers wish to return to the camp at once. 5. A letter is brought by the slave who comes from the town.

Optional Drill

768. 1. Write a synopsis of **volō** in the third person singular. 2. Write a synopsis of **ferō** in the third person singular, active and passive. 3. Translate: you (*singular*) wish; they will wish; he has wished; he will bring; you bring; you have brought.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON X

THE GERUND

769. The Latin gerund is a neuter noun of the second declension, formed on the present stem as it appears in the present participle (*see section* **734**). It has no nominative and is used only in the singular. The gerunds of the four conjugations are as follows:

	I	II	III	IV
GEN.	portandī	monendī	dūcendī	audiendī
DAT.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
ACC.	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
ABL.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō

a. The gerund of **capiō** is declined like that of **audiō**: **capiendī,** etc.

770. The genitive is translated *of carrying, of warning,* etc. The ablative without a preposition is translated *by carrying* or *with carrying,* etc. The ablative is also used with prepositions. The accusative is used only with prepositions. The dative does not often occur.

a. The genitive is used with adjectives or nouns. It is frequently employed with the ablative **causā,** *for the sake of, for the purpose of.*

cupidus natandī, *fond of swimming.*
effugiendī causā, *for the purpose of escaping.*

b. It must be remembered that the form in *-ing* used to translate the Latin gerund is not a present participle but an English gerund, or, as it is sometimes called, a verbal noun. In the sentence *I am fond of walking* the word *walking* is not a present participle but a gerund (or verbal noun).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

771. 1. Tum cupidus manendī in eā urbe cum amīcīs eram. 2. Spem effugiendī nōn habēbāmus. 3. Cōnsul cōpiās coēgit et omnia ad proficīscendum parāvit. 4. In quaerendō reperimus epistulam nōn missam esse. 5. Hostēs spem vincendī āmīsērunt, et lēgātōs mittent. 6. Multī ex omnibus partibus resistendī causā convēnērunt. 7. Fēmina epistulam legere vult quam fīlius suus mīsit. 8. Dux Rōmānus Gallīs bellum īnfert quod oppida sociōrum expugnāre cōnantur. 9. Centuriō nūntiāvit hostēs in castra impetum factūrōs esse. 10. Hic servus in omnibus rēbus est dīligēns.

772. VOCABULARY

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond

dīligēns, *gen.* **dīligentis,** careful

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, find, find out

spēs, speī, F., hope

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

773. 1. Everything is now prepared for setting out, and the citizens will assemble tomorrow. 2. The barbarians, who had no hope of resisting, withdrew into the mountains. 3. These boys have come for the purpose of learning. 4. Why do you (*singular*) wish to go to Italy at this time? 5. The scouts brought (led) the Gaul to the lieutenant.

Optional Drill

774. 1. Decline **spēs** in the singular number. 2. Write the gerunds of **habeō** and **veniō.** 3. In the following sentences name the case required in Latin for the italicized words: (*a*) I tried to persuade your *brother.* (*b*) They feared the *general.* (*c*) They obeyed the *lieutenant.* (*d*) I was in command of the *fort.* (*e*) Caesar placed *Sextus* in command of the *cavalry.* (*f*) We resisted the *Romans.* (*g*) The Romans defeated the *Gauls.*

POLYPHEMUS

PERSŌNAE

Ulīxēs.	Aliī Cyclōpēs.
Nautae XII.	Ariēs et ovēs.
Polyphēmus.	

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN ANTRŌ POLYPHĒMĪ.

Ā dextrā ovīlia; ā sinistrā calathī cāseō plēnī et crātērae lacte plēnae; ā tergō saxum post quod nautae sē cēlant. Ulīxēs et nautae antrum Polyphēmī intrant.

ULI. Ecce! in cavernā ingentī sumus. Sine dubiō Cyclōpis domus est quem nūper vīdimus.

NAUTA I. Sine dubiō ejus caverna est. Tantum mōnstrum ego numquam vīdī.

N. II. Hominī dissimilis vidētur.

N. III. Ūnum modo oculum in mediā fronte habet.

N. IV. Ovēs et caprōs in agrīs pāscēbat.

OMNES. Sine dubiō in hōc antrō habitat.

ULI. Ita; nam hūc spectāte, virī; nōnne vidētis illōs calathōs cāseō plēnōs? Et ovīlia in quibus agnī sunt et haedī? Et haud procul crātērās cōnspiciō lacte plēnās.

N. V. Certē, avidus est, sī haec omnia edere potest.

N. VI. Fortasse nōs quoque comedere cupiet, Ō domine.

N. VII. Redīre ad lītus quam prīmum[1] optimum erit.

N. VIII. Mihi quoque id optimum vidētur. Sed cāseum nōbīscum auferēmus et agnōs paucōs haedōsque. Nam cibum nōn habēmus multum in nāvibus.

ULI. Nōlō jam redīre, virī. Melius erit hīc manēre et dōna rogāre cum Polyphēmus redībit.

N. IX. Temerārius est Ulīxēs. Nōs omnēs perībimus.

[1] *As soon as possible.*

ULI. Cēnam parāte, nautae. Cum cēnāverimus, forte ille domum redībit. [*Nautae cēnam parāre incipiunt.*]

N. X. Hei mihi! Quid audiō? Ipse appropinquat.

N. XI. Fugite, amīcī. Vae miserīs nōbīs.

ULI. Venīte mēcum, virī. In intimam cavernam nōs recipiēmus.

[*Virī sē post saxum cēlant, unde Polyphēmum spectant.*]

N. I. Adestne ille?

N. II. Jam jam gregem in cavernam agit.

N. III. Quid nunc facit?

N. IV. Agnōs et haedōs extrā jānuam relīquit, sed ovēs intrā cavernam dūcit.

N. V. Cūr tam obscūra caverna est?

N. VI. Jānua jam clausa est, nam saxum magnum ante jānuam posuit.

N. VII. Quid Cyclōps nunc agit?

N. VIII. Ovēs et caprās mulget.

N. IX. Nōnne ignem nunc accendit? Flammae lūcem dant.

N. X. Tacēte amīcī. Nōs audiet.

POL. Hem! Quid audiō? Quis adest? [*virōs videt*] Ohē! Quī estis, advenae? Unde vēnistis?

N. XI ET XII. Hei mihi! Quid nōs agere poterimus?

ULI. Nōlīte timēre, amīcī. Ego prō omnibus respondēbō, et fortasse benignē nōs tractābit. Graecī sumus, quī Trōjā venīmus et domum mare trānsīmus. Sed Juppiter, quī nōbīs īrātus est, ventōs et undās nōs ā viā prohibēre sinit. Itaque ad tuam īnsulam invītī vēnimus. Sed benignus es,[1] Ō hospes, nam supplicēs tuī sumus. Sī tū auxilium nōbīs dederis, dī tē remūnerābuntur.

[1]See Section **552.**

POL. Stultus es, aut procul ab hāc terrā habitās, sī mē tālem esse putās. Deōs enim nōs Cyclōpēs neque venerāmur neque timēmus. Grātissima autem cēna mihi eritis, tū et nautae tuī. Duōs enim māne et duōs vesperī edam dōnec omnēs mortuī eritis. [*Duōs captōs occīdit et comedit.*]

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN EŌDEM LOCŌ.

Ulīxēs cōnsilium init.

Postrīdiē māne Ulīxēs et octō nautae in antrō sedent et inter sē loquuntur.

Polyphēmus, quī duōs nautās hodiē comēdit, exiit.

NAUTAE OMNES. Vae nōbīs miserīs! Ad patriam nostram numquam redībimus.

N. V. Crūdēlior Cyclōps est quam fera; duōs nostrum herī, duōs hodiē comēdit, et mox omnēs ad ūnum dēvorābit.

ULI. Nōlīte dēspērāre, virī; dī nōs etiam nunc juvāre possunt, et ego ipse cōnsilium inīre incipiō.

N. VI. Tua cōnsilia nōn probāmus; nam propter tē amīcī nostrī quattuor miserrimē periērunt.

OMNES. Vīsne Cyclōpem, dum noctū dormit, occīdere, Ō domine?

ULI. Id facere volō; sed etiam sī eum interficiam, nōs ex antrō per clausam jānuam effugere nōn poterimus.

OMNES. Quam prūdēns dominus noster est! Sed quid nōs facere jam possumus?

ULI. Audīte mē. Baculum longum quod Cyclōps humī relīquit cōnspiciō. Id acuēmus, et in igne adūrēmus. Vesperī, cum Polyphēmus redierit, vīnum eī dabō; nam—ut meministis—optimum vīnum mēcum hūc attulī. Cum ille somnō vīnōque sepultus erit, oculum ejus baculō ārdentī extinguēmus. Tum impotēns ille et imbēcillus fīet.

OMNES. Sapientissimum cōnsilium est. Omnēs tē adjuvābimus.

ULI. Crās, ubi jānua aperta erit, cum ovibus nōs quoque exībimus. Sīc ad lītus et nāvēs tandem effugere poterimus.

OMNES. Omnium prūdentissimus dominus noster est.

SCAENA TERTIA. IN EŌDEM LOCŌ.

Polyphēmī oculum Graecī extinguunt.
Vesperī: Ulīxēs et octō nautae Polyphēmum expectant.

ULI. Parātīne estis, virī? Mox enim redībit Polyphēmus.

NAUTAE. Ita, parātī sumus. Baculum acūtum ārdēnsque habēmus.

ULI. Quī in oculō Cyclōpis baculum mēcum contorquēre audēbunt? Quattuor ad hunc labōrem sorte ēligere optimum erit.

NAUTAE. Ita vērō; id faciēmus.

N. VII. Hīc est galea, in quam sortēs conjicere possumus.

N. VIII. Hīc lapidēs nōnnūllī sunt, quōs in galeam conjicere possumus.

N. IX. Ego galeam tenēbō et quatiam.

[*IV Nautae sortēs accipiunt.*]

ULI. Et ego quīntus erō. Dī sortēs optimē rēxērunt; vōs enim quattuor ipse dēligere cupiēbam.

N. X. Aliquem audiō quī appropinquat!

OMNES. Sine dubiō Cyclōps ipse adest.

N. XI. Ita, ovium enim bālātūs audiō.

OMNES. Post saxum recipiēmus nōs, dōnec ille dormiet.

[*Polyphēmus cavernam intrat, ovēs mulget, duōs nautās captōs dēvorat. Ulīxēs crātēram vīnō plēnam eī offert.*]

ULI. Ecce, Cyclōps, vīnum tibi offerō. Carnem hominum ēdistī; vīnum nunc bibe; grātissimum est. [*Cyclōps bibit.*]

POL. Dā mihi iterum bibere. Vīnum tuum jūcundum est. Et dīc mihi nōmen tuum. [*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. [*Sēcum*] Eum fallere optimum erit.

POL. Iterum, advena: vīnum tuum mē multum dēlectat. [*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. Nōmen meum interrogāvistī; id nōn cēlābō. "Nēmō" nōmen meum est; "Nēminem" māter mea paterque et sociī omnēs mē appellant.

ULĪXĒS VĪNUM POLYPHĒMŌ OFFERT

POL. Nēmō, prō beneficiīs tuīs tē remūnerārī cupiō. Postrēmum igitur tē dēvorābō.

ULI. [*sēcum*] Edepol! Grātiās tibi maximās agō. Postrēma tibi cēna erō.

[*Polyphēmus sē humī jacit; mox somnus eum opprimit. IV Nautae ex intimā cavernā exeunt.*]

NAUTAE. Adestne tempus, domine? Dormitne Cyclōps?

ULI. Ita, graviter dormit. Nunc, dī patriī, adjuvāte nōs.

[*Baculum ārdēns afferunt et in oculō Polyphēmī vehementer contorquent. Ille clāmōrēs horribilēs tollit et per antrum furibundus ruit.*]

POL. Vae mihi! Quid factum est? Quis oculum meum extīnxit? Ubinam estis, virī?

[*Alīī Cyclōpēs extrā cavernam stant.*]

ALII CYC. Cūr tantōs clāmōrēs tollis, Polyphēme? Nōs dormīre prohibuistī. Quis tē laedit, aut quis tē occīdere temptat?

POL. Nēmō mē occīdit, amīcī.

ALII CYC. At sī nēmō in cavernā tēcum est, Juppiter fortasse tē laedit. Tū autem auxilium ā patre tuō pete.

ULI. Ohē virī! Dolus meus et nōmen simulātum eum fefellērunt.

N. VII. Quid facit ille? Quid factūrus est? Potesne vidēre?

N. VIII. Saxum summōvit, et ipse humī ante jānuam sedet.

N. IX. Nōs, dum exīmus, rapere cupit.

OMNES. Quandō fugere temptābimus, Ō domine?

ULI. Prīmā lūce, cum ovēs ad agrōs exībunt, nōs quoque cum eīs exībimus.

SCAENA QUĀRTA. IN EŌDEM LOCŌ.

In cavernā omnēs sedent.

ULI. Festīnāte, virī. Sōl mox surget; deinde nōs fugam capere poterimus.

N. XI. Sed quō modō effugiēmus, domine? Nōn intellegō.

N. XII. Cyclōps enim nōs, dum exīmus, capiet.

ULI. Singulī hominēs ā ternīs arietibus ferentur. Trēs enim arietēs colligābō, quōrum medius hominem ūnum portābit. Sīc omnēs ad līmus incolumēs perveniēmus. Agite arietēs ad mē.

N. VII. Ēn callidum cōnsilium!

[*Ulīxēs arietēs ternōs colligat; singulī hominēs sub ternīs arietibus ligantur.*]

N. VIII. Quō modo tē ipsum servātūrus es?

ULI. Vidēsne hunc ducem gregis? Multō grandior et rōbustior est quam cēterī. Ejus sub ventre vellus tenēbō, et ipse postrēmus exībō.

N. IX Ecce, sōl surgit, et ovēs exīre incipiunt.

OMNES. Brevī tempore ad lītus perveniēmus. [*vōce parvā.*] Valē Polyphēme!

[*Omnēs ē cavernā efferuntur. Ulīxēs postrēmus sequitur. Polyphēmus arietem dētinet.*]

POL. Quid, Crasse? Tū postrēmus hodiē exīs? Id mīror; nam antehāc prīmus māne exīre, prīmus merīdiē ad rīvōs dēscendere, prīmus vesperī domum redīre solēbās. Bonus amīcus dominī miserī tuī semper fuistī, cujus oculum Nēmō extīnxit. Ēn hominem improbum! Sed haud impūne fīlium Neptūnī caecum effēcit!

[*Ariēs tandem aliōs sequitur. Polyphēmus nautās et Ulīxem in cavernā frūstrā quaerit.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

HERCULES

Hercules was a Greek hero, celebrated for his feats of strength. While only an infant he strangled two serpents which had been sent by Juno to destroy him. In his boyhood he devoted himself to athletic pursuits, and in a fit of anger he slew the Centaur who was his teacher of music. Having been seized by the King of Egypt as a victim for sacrifice, he killed the king, as well as the priest who was about to sacrifice him. His next exploit was to cut off the ears of the envoys of the Minyae who had come to Thebes to demand tribute, thus causing a war, in which the Thebans under the leadership of Hercules were victorious. While in a state of temporary madness he slew his children, and thereupon was ordered by the oracle at Delphi to give himself up to the service of Eurystheus, King of Tiryns. At his command he performed the celebrated Twelve Labors, as follows: 1. Slaying the Nemean lion. 2. Slaying the Hydra of Lerna. 3. Capturing the Cerynian stag. 4. Capturing the boar of Erymanthus. 5. Cleaning the Augean stables. 6. Killing the birds of Stymphalus. 7. Capturing the Cretan bull. 8. Capturing the horses of Diomede. 9. Obtaining the girdle of Hippolyte. 10. Bringing the oxen of Geryon from the island of Erythia. 11. Procuring the golden apples of the Hesperides. 12. Bringing Cerberus from the lower world. In connection with these labors he also performed numerous other exploits.

His death came from the putting on of a poisoned robe which had been dipped in the blood of the Centaur, Nessus. After his death he was taken by Jupiter to Olympus.

THE STORY OF HERCULES

1. The Infant Prodigy

Herculēs, Alcmēnae fīlius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dīcitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam ōderat, et Herculem, adhūc īnfantem, necāre voluit. Mīsit igitur duās serpentēs saevissimās; hae mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre suō dormiēbat. Nec tamen in cūnīs, sed in scūtō magnō cubābant. Serpentēs jam appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt.

2. Hercules and the Serpents

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce exclāmāvit; at Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Parvīs manibus serpentēs statim prehendit et colla eārum magnā vī compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audīverat et marītum suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad puerōs properābat, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit; Herculēs enim rīdēbat et serpentēs mortuās mōnstrābat.

---

1. Hic dīcitur fuisse, *he is said to have been.*

3. ōderat, *hated;* this verb has only the tenses formed on the perfect stem; the perfect, however, is translated as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

5. mediā nocte, *in the middle of the night.*

JUNO

3. The Music Lesson

Herculēs ā puerō corpus suum dīligenter exercēbat. Magnam partem diēī in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat; didicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conjicere. Hīs exercitātiōnibus vīrēs ejus cōnfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā etiam ā Linō Centaurō ērudiēbātur. (Centaurī autem equī erant, sed caput hominis habēbant.) Huic tamen artī minus dīligenter studēbat. Hic Linus Herculem ōlim culpābat, quod parum studiōsus erat. Tum puer īrātus citharam subitō rapuit et summīs vīribus caput magistrī īnfēlīcis percussit. Ille ictū prōstrātus est, et paulō post ē vītā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium suscipere voluit.

4. Hercules Escapes from Being Sacrificed

Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia nārrantur. Ōlim, dum iter facit, in fīnēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit; ibi rēx quīdam, nōmine Būsīris, illō tempore rēgnābat; hic autem, vir crūdēlissimus, hominēs immolāre cōnsuēverat. Herculem igitur corripuit et in vincula conjēcit. Tum nūntiōs dīmīsit et diem sacrificiō ēdīxit. Mox ea diēs appetīvit, et omnia rītē parāta sunt.

---

18. ā puerō, *from boyhood;* literally, *from a boy.*

19. palaestrā: the name given by the Greeks to the place in which instruction and training were given in wrestling and boxing.

23. Huic artī . . . studēbat, *he devoted himself to this art; studeō* takes the dative.

25. summīs vīribus, *with all his might.*

26. Ille, *he* (*i.e.,* Linus); *ille* is here used as a pronoun.

27. paulō post, *a little later.*

id officium: *i.e.,* the task of instructing Hercules in music.

29. haec inter alia, *these stories among others.*

31. vir: in apposition with *hic.*

32. cōnsuēverat, *was accustomed; cōnsuēscō* means *become accustomed;* its perfect tense therefore means *has become accustomed,* i.e., *is accustomed;* likewise the past perfect *cōnsuēverat* means *had become accustomed,* i.e., *was accustomed.*

33. sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice,* dative.

Manūs Herculis catēnīs ferreīs vīnctae sunt, et mola salsa in caput ejus īnspersa est. Mōs enim erat apud antīquōs salem et fār capitibus victimārum impōnere. Jam victima ad āram stābat; jam sacerdōs cultrum sūmpserat. Subitō tamen Herculēs magnō cōnātū vincula perrūpit. Tum ictū sacerdōtem prōstrāvit, alterō rēgem ipsum occīdit.

5. Ear-Cropping

Herculēs, jam adulēscēns, urbem Thēbās incolēbat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir ignāvus, Creōn appellābātur. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima, Thēbānīs fīnitimī erant. Lēgātī autem ā Minyīs ad Thēbānōs quotannīs veniēbant et centum bovēs postulābant. Thēbānī enim ōlim ā Minyīs superātī erant; tribūta igitur rēgī Minyārum quotannīs pendēbant. At Herculēs cīvēs suōs hōc stīpendiō līberāre cōnstituit. Lēgātōs igitur comprehendit atque aurēs eōrum abscīdit. Lēgātī autem apud omnēs gentēs sacrī habentur.

6. Defeat of the Minyae

Ergīnus, rēx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer īrātus erat, et cum omnibus cōpiīs in fīnēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Creōn adventum ejus per explōrātōrēs cognōvit; ipse tamen pugnāre nōluit; nam magnō timōre affectus est. Thēbānī igitur Her-

37. capitibus: dative governed by a compound verb.

40. alterō: *ictū* is to be supplied.

43. Thēbānīs: dative, depending on the adjective *fīnitimī*.

44. veniēbant: the imperfect denoting repeated action; they came every year.

47. cīvēs suōs, *his fellow-citizens.* **stīpendiō,** *from tribute.*

49. habentur, *are regarded;* the passive forms of *habeō* often have this meaning.

53. magnō timōre affectus est: see note on Perseus, 104.

1. Decline *omnis*. 2. Compare *validus* and *saevus*. 3. Give the principal parts of *moveō, terreō, comprimō, rapiō*. 4. Give the genitive singular and the nominative plural of *caput* and *nōmen*. 5. What English prepositions are most frequently used in translating the Latin ablative case? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "culpable."

culem imperātōrem creāvērunt. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsit et cōpiās coēgit. Tum proximō diē cum magnō exercitū profectus est. Locum idōneum dēlēgit et aciem īnstrūxit. Tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs fēcērunt. Illī autem impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt, itaque aciēs hostium pulsa est atque in fugam conversa.

7. Madness and Murder

Post hoc proelium Herculēs cōpiās suās ad urbem redūxit. Omnēs Thēbānī propter victōriam maximē gaudēbant. Creōn autem magnīs honōribus Herculem decorāvit, atque fīliam suam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Herculēs cum uxōre suā vītam beātam agēbat; sed post paucōs annōs subitō in furōrem incidit atque līberōs suōs ipse suā manū occīdit. Post breve tempus ad sānitātem reductus est, et propter hoc facinus magnō dolōre affectus est; mox ex urbe effūgit et in silvās sē recēpit. Nōlēbant enim cīvēs sermōnem cum eō habēre.

8. Hercules Consults the Oracle

Herculēs magnopere cupiēbat tantum scelus expiāre. Cōnstituit igitur ad ōrāculum Delphicum īre; hoc enim ōrāculum

---

57. in, *on.*

59. conversa: supply *est;* the other forms of *sum* are also sometimes omitted in the perfect passive.

61. gaudēbant: the principal parts of this verb are *gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum;* the present, imperfect, and future tenses are active in form, the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect are passive. All, however, are active in meaning. Such a verb is called semi-deponent.

64. in furōrem incidit, *become insane.*

65. ipse suā, *his own;* but the two Latin words are more emphatic than the English translation.

68. sē recēpit, *betook himself, withdrew.*

sermōnem habēre, *to associate,* literally, *to have conversation.*

71. ōrāculum Delphicum: the most famous oracle of antiquity, at Delphi, in Greece.

erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis, plūrimīs dōnīs ōrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pȳthia, et cōnsilium dabat iīs quī ad ōrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur, et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūntiābat. Herculēs igitur, quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Tum rem tōtam exposuit neque scelus cēlāvit.

9. The Oracle's Reply

Ubi Herculēs fīnem fēcit, Pȳthia diū tacēbat. Tandem tamen jussit eum ad urbem Tīryntha īre et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, ad urbem illam contendit et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit.

---

72. omnium: supply *ōrāculōrum*.

73. dōnīs: presented by states and by individuals.

Hōc in templō: a preposition of one syllable may stand between a noun and a modifier.

80. Tīryntha: a word of Greek origin, retaining its Greek accusative form. Proper names must always be translated by the nominative.

82. in servitūtem, *in slavery.*

VOCABULARY REVIEW

adventus	proximus	gaudeō	suscipiō
gēns	summus	imperō	sustineō
iter	tālis	incidō	taceō
mōs		īnstruō	
officium	quisquam	interficiō	ita
scelus		nōlō	maximē
servitūs	cōgō	ōdī	quotannīs
vīs	colō	pellō	vehementer
voluntās	cōnficiō	proficīscor	vix
	cōnsūmō	recipiō	
alter	dēligō	sedeō	itaque
fīnitimus	discō	studeō	
idōneus	doceō	sūmō	

Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit. Hōc enim ūnō modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē hīs labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scrīpta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

10. First Labor—Slaying the Nemean Lion

Prīmum ab Eurystheō jussus est Herculēs leōnem occīdere, quī illō tempore vallem Nemaeam reddēbat īnfestam. In silvās igitur quās leō incolēbat statim sē contulit. Mox feram vīdit, et arcum quem sēcum attulerat intendit; ejus tamen pellem, quae dēnsissima erat, trājicere nōn potuit. Tum clāvā magnā, quam semper gerēbat, leōnem percussit. Frūstrā tamen, neque enim hōc modō eum occīdere potuit. Tum dēmum collum mōnstrī bracchiīs suīs complexus est et faucēs ejus summīs vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tempore exanimātus est; nūlla enim respīrandī facultās eī dabātur. Tum Herculēs cadāver ad oppidum in umerīs rettulit, et pellem, quam dētrāxerat, posteā prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis accēpērunt, vehementer gaudēbant et Herculem magnō in honōre habēbant.

11. Second Labor—Slaying the Lernaean Hydra

Post haec jussus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat quod novem capita habēbat. Her-

---

85. plūrima, *a great many things.*

89. reddēbat, *rendered.*

91. sēcum: the preposition *cum* is regularly attached as an enclitic to a personal, a reflexive, or a relative pronoun.

94. neque, *not,* as in Perseus, 112

97. respīrandī facultās, *chance of breathing, chance to breathe; respīrandī* is a gerund.

99. prō veste, *as a garment.*

103. Hoc: although the reference is to *Hydram,* a feminine noun, the demonstrative, in accordance with Latin usage, takes the gender of the predicate noun *mōnstrum.*

culēs igitur cum amīcō Iolāō profectus est ad palūdem Lernaeam, quam Hydra incolēbat. Mox mōnstrum invēnit et, quamquam rēs erat magnī perīculī, collum ejus laevā prehendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscīdere coepit. Quotiēns tamen hoc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur. Diū frūstrā labōrāvit; tandem hōc cōnātū dēstitit; cōnstituit deinde arborēs succīdere et ignem accendere. Hoc celeriter fēcit, et, postquam ligna ignem comprehendērunt, face ardente colla adussit, unde capita exoriēbantur. Nec tamen sine magnō labōre haec fēcit. Auxilium enim Hydrae tulit cancer ingēns, quī, dum Herculēs capita abscīdit, crūra ejus mordēbat. Postquam mōnstrum tālī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine ejus imbuit itaque mortiferās reddidit.

12. Third Labor—Capture of the Cerynian Stag

Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nūntiāta est, magnus timor animum ejus occupāvit. Jussit igitur Herculem cervum quendam ad sē referre; nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in

---

107. rēs: while the word "thing" furnishes a starting-point in getting at the meaning of *rēs*, a more exact translation should always be given if possible—e.g., *fact, affair, circumstance;* here, *task* would be a good translation.

magnī perīculī, (*one*) *of great danger;* a descriptive genitive in the predicate.

109. exoriēbantur, *grew out*, or *would grow out;* imperfect, denoting repeated action.

110. hōc cōnātū, *from this undertaking;* an ablative thus used is called an ablative of separation.

112. comprehendērunt, *caught.*

113. unde, *from which.*

117. reddidit: supply as object *eās*, referring to *sagittās.*

120. tantae audāciae: genitive of description.

---

1. Decline *impetus.* 2. Conjugate *īnstruō* in the perfect active. 3. Give the principal parts of *possum, pellō, dēligō, occīdō.* 4. Give the genitive singular of *scelus, voluntās, fīnis, leō.* 5. What case is *eī* in line 97, and why used? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "tacitly."

urbe retinēre. Hic autem cervus, cujus cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur, incrēdibilī fuit celeritāte. Herculēs igitur prīmum vēstīgia ejus in silvīs animadvertit. Deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, summīs vīribus currere coepit. Usque ad vesperum cucurrit, neque nocturnum tempus sibi ad quiētem relīquit. Frūstrā tamen, nūllō enim modō praedam cōnsequī poterat. Tandem, postquam tōtum annum cucurrerat (ita trāditur), cervum cursū exanimātum cēpit et vīvum ad Eurystheum rettulit.

13. Fourth Labor—The Erymanthian Boar

Post haec jussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere, quī illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et incolās hujus regiōnis magnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscēpit et in Arcadiam profectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prōgressus est, aprō occurrit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculem vīdit, statim refūgit et, timōre perterritus, in altam fossam sē prōjēcit. Herculēs igitur laqueum quem attulerat injēcit et summā cum difficultāte aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille, etsī multum relūctābātur, nūllō modō sē līberāre potuit, et ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vīvus relātus est.

14. Hercules at the Centaur's Cave

Dē quārtō labōre, quem suprā nārrāvimus, haec etiam trāduntur. Herculēs, dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam

121. fuisse trāduntur, *are said to have been.*

122. incrēdibilī celeritāte, *of incredible swiftness;* ablative of description; either the ablative or the genitive of description may stand in the predicate.

125. sibi: dative after *relīquit,* but may be omitted in translation.

ad, *for.*

127. ita trāditur, *so the story goes.*

132. rem: see note on line 107.

134. aprō: dative governed by *occurrit,* which is a compound of *ob* and *currō.*

136. injēcit: supply *eī* (dative with a compound verb).

140. nārrāvimus: the plural as used by the writer to refer to himself was formerly common in English also, in newspaper editorials.

regiōnem vēnit quam Centaurī incolēbant. Mox, quod nox jam appetēbat, ad antrum dēvertit, in quō Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

Ille Herculem benignē excēpit et cēnam parāvit. At Herculēs, postquam cēnāvit, vīnum ā Pholō postulāvit. Erat autem in antrō magna amphora, vīnō optimō replēta, quam Centaurī ibi dēposuerant. Pholus hoc vīnum dare nōlēbat, quod reliquōs Centaurōs timēbat; nūllum tamen vīnum praeter hoc in antrō habēbat. "Hoc vīnum," inquit, "mihi commissum est. Sī igitur hoc dabō, Centaurī mē interficient." Herculēs tamen eum irrīsit, et ipse cyathum vīnī ex amphorā hausit.

15. The Fight with the Centaurs

Simul atque amphora aperta est, odor jūcundissimus undique diffūsus est; vīnum enim suāvissimum erat. Centaurī nōtum odōrem sēnsērunt et omnēs ad locum convēnērunt.

Ubi ad antrum pervēnērunt, magnopere īrātī erant, quod Herculem bibentem vīdērunt. Tum arma rapuērunt, et Pholum interficere volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditū antrī cōnstitit, et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. Facēs ārdentēs in eōs conjēcit; multōs etiam sagittīs suīs vulnerāvit. Hae autem sagittae eaedem erant quae sanguine Hydrae ōlim imbūtae erant. Omnēs igitur quōs ille sagittīs vulnerāverat

---

143. jam, *now*, or *by this time; nunc* means *now* in the sense of *at the present time.*

146. Erat, *there was.* Latin has no word corresponding to *there* in the sense here used. The position of a verb at the beginning of a sentence, however, often gives the same effect.

150. inquit: this verb is regularly used with direct quotations and stands after one or more words of a quotation; it corresponds to the English "I said," "he said." It is defective, that is, it lacks some forms of person, tense, and mood.

153. hausit, *drew.*

160. cōnstitit: from *cōnsistō.*

161. in, *at*, the usual meaning of *in* with words meaning *to throw.*

venēnō statim absūmptī sunt; reliquī autem, ubi hoc vīdērunt, terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt.

16. The Fate of Pholus

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex antrō ēgressus est, et corpora spectābat eōrum quī sagittīs interfectī erant. Magnopere autem mīrātus est, quod tam levī vulnere exanimātī erant, et causam ejus reī quaerēbat. Adiit igitur locum ubi cadāver cujusdam Centaurī jacēbat et sagittam ē vulnere trāxit. Haec tamen, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, ē manibus ejus lāpsa est et pedem leviter vulnerāvit. Ille extemplō dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post breve tempus vī venēnī exanimātus est. Mox Herculēs, quī reliquōs Centaurōs secūtus erat, ad antrum rediit, et magnō cum dolōre Pholum mortuum vīdit. Multīs cum lacrimīs corpus amīcī ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum cyathum vīnī hausit, somnō sē dedit.

17. Fifth Labor—Cleansing the Augean Stables

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī hunc labōrem graviōrem imposuit. Augēās quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis magnitūdinis inclūdēbantur. Stabulum autem illuviē ac squālōre obsitum erat; neque enim ad hoc tempus umquam pūrgātum erat. Hoc jussus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnīus

---

164. reliquī, *the others.*

165. fugā, *in flight;* the ablative denotes means, however.

171. sīve . . . deōrum, *either by chance or by design of the gods.*

179. Herculī, *upon Hercules;* the dative is governed by the compound verb *imposuit.*

181. tria mīlia boum, *three thousand cattle;* it must be kept in mind that the singular *mīlle* is usually an adjective, while the plural *mīlia* is always a noun used with a dependent genitive. *Boum* is the genitive plural of *bōs.*

183. neque umquam, *never.*

diēī pūrgāre. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae operae, negōtium suscēpit. Prīmum, magnō labōre fossam duodēvīgintī pedum fēcit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrum stabulī perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrum perrūpit, aquam in stabulum immīsit et tālī modō, contrā opīniōnem omnium, opus cōnfēcit.

18. Sixth Labor—The Birds of Stymphalus

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; jusserat enim eum Eurystheus avēs Stymphālidēs

---

185. erat multae operae, *was one of great labor;* another genitive of description standing in the predicate, as in line 107.

186. duodēvīgintī pedum: the genitive of description with numerals is regularly employed to express measure. The reference is to width.

---

1. Give the principal parts of *jubeō, referō, trādō, currō.* 2. Decline in full the phrase *illud tempus.* 3. What form is *bibentem,* line 158? 4. Give the ablative singular of *fossa, antrum, nōmen, aditus, diēs.* 5. Where was Arcadia? 6. Give the derivation and meaning of the English word "vim".

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aditus	levis	ferō	celeriter
bracchium	nōtus	jaceō	deinde
cornū	novus	mīror	fortiter
cursus	nūllus	obtineō	suprā
facultās	reliquus	perterreō	umquam
mors	vīvus	petō	unde
negōtium		prōgredior	
opus	aperiō	prōjiciō	etsī
palūs	coepī	relinquō	
pellis	committō	sequor	contrā
vēstīgium	cōnsequor	spectō	praeter
	cōnsistō	trahō	
ingēns	currō		

necāre. Hae avēs rōstra aēnea habēbant, et carne hominum vēscēbantur. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vīdit; in hōc autem lacū, quī nōn procul erat ab oppidō, avēs habitābant. Nūlla tamen dabātur appropinquandī facultās. Lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē līmō cōnstitit; Herculēs igitur neque pedibus neque lintre prōgredī potuit.

Tandem, postquam magnam partem diēī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad Vulcānum sē contulit auxiliumque ab eō petiit. Vulcānus, quī ā fabrīs maximē colēbātur, crepundia, quae ipse ex aere fabricātus erat, Herculī dedit. Hīs Herculēs dīrum crepitum fēcit, et avēs perterritae āvolāvērunt; ille autem, dum āvolant, magnum numerum eōrum sagittīs trānsfīxit.

19. Seventh Labor—The Cretan Bull

Tum jussit Herculem Eurystheus taurum quendam ferōcissimum ex īnsulā Crētā vīvum referre. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit et, cum prīmum ventus idōneus fuit, solvit. Ubi tamen īnsulae jam appropinquābat, magna tempestās subitō coörta est, nāvisque cursum tenēre nōn poterat. Nautae paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuērunt; tantus timor

---

193. carne: from *carō;* the deponent verbs *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,* take as their object an ablative, not an accusative.

196. appropinquandī: a gerund in the genitive case, like *respīrandī,* line 97.

197. cōnstitit: from *cōnstō.*

198. pedibus, *on foot;* ablative of means, here suggesting in addition the idea of manner.

206. ferōcissimum, *very savage.* The translation of the superlative by *very* is frequently necessary.

208. cum prīmum, *as soon as.* With this phrase, as with *ubi, postquam, simul atque,* the perfect indicative is most frequently employed, as explained in the note on Perseus, 12.

solvit, *set sail.*

209. īnsulae: the verb *appropinquō* takes either a dative, as here, or *ad* with an accusative.

animōs eōrum occupāverat. Herculēs, tamen, etsī nāvigandī imperītus erat, haudquāquam territus est.

Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōnsecūta est, et nautae, quī sē ex timōre jam recēperant, nāvem incolumem ad terram perdūxērunt. Herculēs ē nāvī ēgressus est, et, ubi ad rēgem Crētae vēnit, causam veniendī docuit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regiōnem contendit quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vīdit, et, quamquam rēs erat magnī perīculī, cornua ejus prehendit. Tum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit et cum praedā in Graeciam rediit.

20. Eighth Labor — Capture of the Horses of Diomede

Postquam ex īnsulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō in Thrāciam missus est et equōs Diomēdis redūcere jussus. Hī equī carne hominum vēscēbantur; Diomēdēs autem, vir crūdēlissimus, iīs prōjiciēbat peregrīnōs omnēs quī in eam regiōnem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur magnā celeritāte in Thrāciam contendit et hōs equōs ab Diomēde postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs, īrā commōtus, rēgem interfēcit et cadāver ejus equīs prōjicī jussit.

Ita mīra rērum commūtātiō facta est; is enim quī anteā multōs cum cruciātū necāverat ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, omnēs quī eam regiōnem incolēbant maximā laetitiā affectī sunt, et Herculī meritam grātiam referēbant. Nōn modo maximīs honōribus et praemiīs eum decorāvērunt, sed rēgnum etiam eī obtulērunt.

---

212. nāvigandī imperītus, *ignorant of, unskilled in, navigation.* The genitive of the gerund here depends upon an adjective; in line 196 it was used with a noun, *facultās.*

215. sē recēperant, *had recovered.*

225. carne: why ablative? See note on line 193.

234. meritam grātiam referēbant: for the translation consult the note on Perseus, 90.

Ille tamen rēgnum accipere nōlēbat et, postquam ad mare rediit, nāvem occupāvit. Ubi omnia ad nāvigandum parāta sunt, equōs in nāvem collocāvit; deinde idōneam tempestātem nactus, sine morā ē portū solvit et paulō post equōs in lītus Argolicum exposuit.

21. Ninth Labor — The Girdle of Hippolyte

Gēns Amāzonum dīcitur omnīnō ex mulieribus cōnstitisse. Hae summam scientiam reī mīlitāris habēbant et maximam virtūtem praebēbant; nam etiam cum virīs proelium committere audēbant. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit celeberrimum, quem Mārs eī dederat. Admēta autem, Eurystheī fīlia, fāmam dē hōc balteō accēperat, et eum possidēre vehementer cupiēbat. Eurystheus igitur Herculem jussit cōpiās cōgere et bellum Amāzonibus īnferre. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsit et, postquam magna multitūdō convēnit, eōs dēlēgit quī maximum ūsum in rē mīlitārī habēbant.

22. The Girdle Refused

Hīs virīs Herculēs causam itineris exposuit; illī auctōritāte ejus adductī iter cum eō facere cōnstituērunt. Tum cum iīs

---

238. nāvem occupāvit, *went on board his ship.*

ad nāvigandum, *for sailing;* one of the commonest uses of the gerund is the accusative with *ad* in expressions of purpose.

239. tempestātem, *weather;* with what meaning has the word been used previously? Compare Perseus, 7.

240. nactus: from *nancīscor.* The past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning.

paulō post: see note on line 27.

242. cōnstitisse: from *cōnstō.*

243. reī mīlitāris, *military science, art of war.*

244. proelium committere, *to engage in battle.*

249. bellum Amāzonibus īnferre, *to make war on the Amazons.*

253. Hīs virīs: dative of indirect object.

auctōritāte: ablative of cause.

quibus persuāserat nāvem cōnscendit et, ventum idōneum nactus, post paucōs diēs ad ōstium flūminis Thermōdontis appulit. Postquam in fīnēs Amāzonum vēnit, nūntium ad Hippolytam mīsit, quī causam veniendī docuit et balteum poposcit. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum trādere volēbat, quod dē Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; quod tamen reliquae Amāzones nōlēbant, negāvit. At Herculēs, ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, bellī fortūnam temptāre cōnstituit.

Proximō igitur diē cōpiās ēdūxit. Tum locum idōneum dēlēgit et hostēs ad pugnam ēvocāvit. Amāzones quoque cōpiās suās ex castrīs ēdūxērunt et nōn magnō intervāllō aciem īnstrūxērunt.

23. The Battle

Palūs erat nōn magna inter duōs exercitūs; neutrī tamen initium trānseundī facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs signum dedit et, ubi palūdem trānsiit, proelium commīsit. Amāzones impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt et contrā opīniōnem omnium magnam virtūtem praestitērunt; multōs quidem eōrum occīdērunt, multōs etiam in fugam conjēcērunt. Virī enim novō genere pugnae perturbābantur, nec solitam virtūtem praestābant. Herculēs autem, ubi haec

---

255. quibus: *persuādeō* is one of the special verbs that govern the dative.

256. post paucōs diēs: in this phrase *post* is employed as a preposition.

ad ōstium Thermōdontis: the Thermodon was a river in Pontus, a country on the southern coast of the Black Sea. The Amazons were also represented as dwelling to the north on the river Don.

259. volēbat, *was willing.*

261. nōlēbant: the words *balteum trādere* are to be understood.

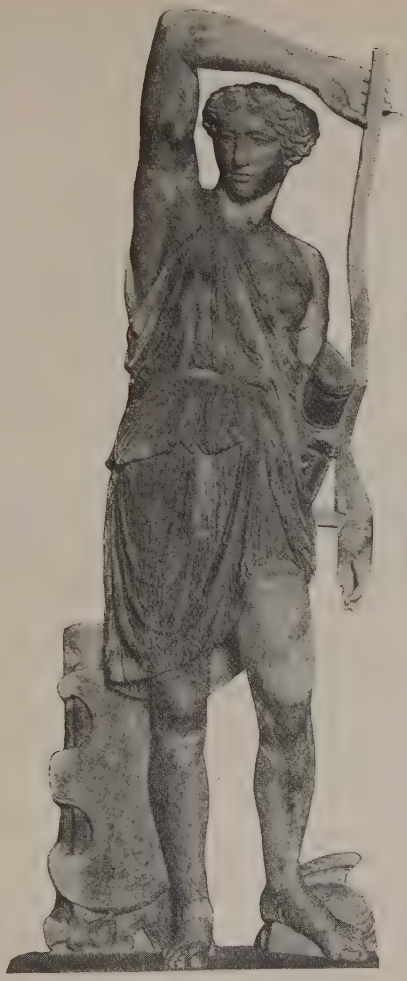
265. nōn magnō intervāllō, *at no great distance (interval).*

267. nōn magna, *of no great extent.*

neutrī: *neither side,* a rather frequent meaning for the plural of *neuter.*

270. Amāzones magnam virtūtem praestitērunt: the Amazons were said to have ventured to attack the territories of other nations, and to have made their way even into Attica, the district about Athens.

274. nec: translate *and not.*



AN AMAZON

vīdit, dē suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coepit. Mīlitēs igitur vehementer cohortātus ad prīstinam virtūtem tantum dēdecus dēprecātus est; quibus verbīs animī omnium ērēctī sunt; nam multī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī erant, proelium sine morā redintegrāvērunt.

24. Defeat of the Amazons

Diū et ācriter pugnātum est; tandem tamen ad sōlis occāsum magna commūtātiō rērum facta est, et mulierēs terga vertērunt atque fugā salūtem petiērunt. Multae autem vulneribus dēfessae, dum fugiunt, captae sunt; in quō numerō ipsa erat Hippolytē. Herculēs summam clēmentiam praestitit et, postquam balteum accēpit, lībertātem omnibus captīvīs dedit. Post haec sociōs ad mare redūxit et, quod nōn multum aestātis supererat, in Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit. Nāvem igitur cōnscendit et, tempestātem idōneam nactus, statim solvit. Antequam tamen in Graeciam pervēnit, ad urbem Trojam nāvem appellere cōnstituit; frūmentum enim quod sēcum habēbat jam dēficere coeperat.

---

275. Mīlitēs . . . dēprecātus est, *urged his soldiers to (display) their old-time courage (and) deplored,* etc.

277. quibus: translate by a demonstrative, *these.*

278. etiam quī, *even those who.*

280. Diū . . . pugnātum est, *the battle was long and fierce;* literally, *it was fought long and fiercely.*

ad sōlis occāsum, *about sunset.*

286. haec, *this.*

nōn multum aestātis, *not much of the summer; multum* is neuter of the adjective used as a noun.

290. Trojam: another example of an appositive where English would use a phrase with *of.*

---

1. What is the Latin for "after a few days"? 2. What part of speech is *procul*? 3. Give a synopsis of *dō* and *cōnsūmō* in the third person singular, active voice. 4. Give the gerunds of *videō* and *veniō* in all cases. 5. Conjugate *volō* in the present and imperfect indicative. 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "itinerary."

25. Laomedon and the Sea Monster

Lāomedōn quīdam illō tempore rēgnum Trojae obtinēbat; ad hunc Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant et, quod Troja nōndum moenia habēbat, ad hoc opus auxilium obtulerant. Postquam tamen hōrum auxiliō moenia cōnfecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium quod prōposuerat persolvere.

Neptūnus igitur et Apollō, ob hanc causam īrātī, mōnstrum quoddam mīsērunt speciē horribilī, quod cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs pecudēsque vorābat. Trojānī igitur, timōre perterritī, in urbe continēbantur, et pecora omnia ex agrīs intrā mūrōs compulerant. Lāomedōn, hīs rēbus commōtus, ōrāculum cōnsuluit; ā deō autem jussus est fīliam Hēsionem mōnstrō objicere.

26. The Rescue of Hesione

Lāomedōn, ubi hoc respōnsum renūntiātum est, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Sed tamen, quod cīvēs suōs tantō perīculō

---

301. continēbantur: here equivalent to *sē continēbant, were confining themselves.*

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aestās	ūsus	dēficiō	supersum
auctōritās		dēspērō	trānseō
commūtātiō	dēfessus	ēdūcō	
cruciātus	imperītus	ēvocō	ācriter
genus	incolumis	īnferō	anteā
initium	neuter	mātūrō	modo
mulier	prīstinus	nancīscor	quidem
occāsus		negō	quoque
portus	audeō	perturbō	
rōstrum	cohortor	poscō	cum
signum	collocō	postulō	
socius	cōnstō	praebeō	
supplicium	coörior	redintegrō	

līberāre volēbat, ōrāculō pārēre cōnstituit et diem sacrificiō dīxit. Sed, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, Herculēs tempore opportūnissimō Trojam attigit; ipsō enim temporis pūnctō quō puella catēnīs vīncta ad lītus dēdūcēbātur ille nāvem appulit. Herculēs, ē nāvī ēgressus, dē rēbus quae gerēbantur certior factus est; tum, īrā commōtus, ad rēgem sē contulit et auxilium suum obtulit. Rēx libenter ejus auxilium accēpit; deinde Herculēs mōnstrum interfēcit et puellam, quae jam omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, incolumem ad patrem redūxit. Lāomedōn magnō cum gaudiō fīliam suam accēpit, et Herculī prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam rettulit.

27. Tenth Labor — The Oxen of Geryon

Post haec jussus est Herculēs ad īnsulam Erythīam īre bovēsque Gēryonis arcessere. Rēs erat summae difficultātis, quod bovēs ā gigante Eurytiōne et ā cane bicipite custōdiēbantur. Ipse autem Gēryōn speciem horribilem praebēbat; habēbat enim tria corpora inter sē conjūncta. Herculēs tamen, etsī intellegēbat perīculum magnum esse, negōtium suscēpit, et, postquam per multās terrās iter fēcit, ad eam partem Libyae pervēnit quae Eurōpae proxima est. Ibi in utrāque parte fretī quod Eurōpam ā Libyā dīvidit columnās cōnstituit, quae posteā Herculis Columnae appellātae sunt.

---

307. ōrāculō: dative with the special verb *pārēre.*

sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice,* dative.

309. ipsō . . . temporis pūnctō quō, *at the very moment at which.*

312. certior factus est, *was informed;* literally, the words mean *was made more certain.*

322. inter sē, *together, to one another.*

323. perīculum magnum esse, *that the danger was great;* an example of indirect discourse.

325. Eurōpae: dative, depending on the adjective *proxima.*

in utrāque parte, *on both sides.*

327. Herculis Columnae: usually referred to as the Pillars of Hercules; the Rock of Gibraltar and a hill on the opposite side of the Straits doubtless gave rise to this legend.

28. The Golden Ship

Dum hīc morātur, Herculēs magnum incommodum ex calōre sōlis accipiēbat. Tandem igitur, īrā commōtus, arcum suum intendit et sōlem sagittīs petiit. Sōl tamen, audāciam virī admīrātus, lintrem auream eī dedit. Herculēs hoc dōnum libentissimē accēpit; nūllam enim nāvem in hīs regiōnibus invenīre potuerat. Tum lintrem dēdūxit et, ventum nactus idōneum, post breve tempus ad īnsulam pervēnit. Postquam ex incolīs cognōvit dē locō ubi bovēs erant, eō statim profectus est et ā rēge Gēryone bovēs postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs et rēgem ipsum et gigantem Eurytiōnem interfēcit.

29. A Miraculous Hail-Storm

Tum Herculēs bovēs per Hispāniam et Liguriam compellere cōnstituit. Postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, bovēs ex īnsulā ad continentem trānsportāvit. Ligurēs tamen, gēns bellicōsissima, dum ille per fīnēs eōrum iter facit, magnīs cōpiīs convēnērunt, atque eum longius prōgredī prohibēbant. Herculēs magnam difficultātem habēbat; barbarī enim in locīs superiōribus cōnstiterant, et saxa tēlaque in eum conjiciēbant. Ille quidem paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat; sed tem-

330. petiit, *attacked*, a somewhat infrequent meaning of the verb.

331. admīrātus, *admiring;* the past participles of certain deponent verbs are frequently best rendered by an English present participle.

335. eō: an adverb.

337. et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

342. fīnēs: not *boundaries.*

magnīs cōpiīs, *with large forces*, ablative of accompaniment; in expressing accompaniment *cum* may be omitted in military expressions if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

343. eum . . . prōgredī prohibēbant, *tried to prevent him from proceeding.* The infinitive with subject accusative often depends on *prohibeō.* The imperfect tense here denotes an attempted action.

345. cōnstiterant: from *cōnsistō.*

346. quidem: this word often means *it is true, to be sure;* it is then followed in the next sentence by some word denoting opposition or contrast, here *sed, but, nevertheless.*

pore opportūnissimō Juppiter imbrem lapidum ingentium ē caelō dēmīsit. Hī magnā vī cecidērunt et magnum numerum Ligurum occīdērunt; ipse tamen Herculēs, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōnsuēvit, nihil incommodī cēpit.

30. Passage of the Alps

Postquam Ligurēs hōc modō superātī sunt, Herculēs quam celerrimē prōgressus est et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs pervēnit. Necesse erat hōs trānsīre, quod in Italiam bovēs dūcere volēbat; rēs tamen summae erat difficultātis. Hī enim montēs, quī Galliam ulteriōrem ab Italiā dīvidunt, nive perennī teguntur; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque pābulum in his regiōnibus invenīrī potest. Herculēs igitur, antequam ascendere coepit, magnam cōpiam frūmentī et pābulī comparāvit, et bovēs onerāvit. Postquam in hīs rēbus trēs diēs cōnsūmpserat, quārtō diē profectus est et contrā omnium opīniōnem, bovēs incolumēs in Italiam trādūxit.

31. Cacus Steals the Oxen

Post breve tempus ad flūmen Tiberim vēnit; illō tamen tempore nūlla erat urbs in eō locō. Rōma enim nōndum

---

349. in tālibus rēbus: *i.e.*, when favored with divine help.

350. cōnsuēvit: the force of the tenses of this verb is explained in the note on line 32.

nihil incommodī, *no harm;* literally *nothing of harm.*

351. quam celerrimē, *as rapidly as possible.*

355. Galliam ulteriōrem: *i.e.*, Gaul north of the Alps; the valley of the Po in Italy was also inhabited at one time by Gallic tribes and was known to the Romans as *Gallia citerior, Nearer Gaul.*

356. quam ob causam, *for this reason;* for the position of the preposition see the note on *hōc in templō*, line 73.

362. Tiberim: a few third declension nouns have *-im* instead of *-em* as the ending of the accusative singular.

---

1. Give the principal parts of *praestō, solvō, prōpōnō, proficīscor.* 2. Decline *cīvis* and *lītus.* 3. Give the ablative plural of *vulnus, annus, rēx, rēgnum, diēs.* 4. Conjugate *mittō* and *jubeō* in the future active. 5. Who were the Amazons? 6. Who was Neptune? 7. What was the Hydra? 8. How many labors was Hercules to perform?

condita erat. Herculēs, itinere fessus, cōnstituit ibi paucōs diēs morārī atque sē ex labōribus recreāre. Haud procul a valle ubi bovēs pāscēbantur antrum erat, in quō gigās quīdam, nōmine Cācus, tum habitābat. Hic speciem terribilem praebēbat, nōn modo quod ingentī magnitūdine corporis erat, sed quod ignem ex ōre expīrābat. Cācus autem dē adventū Herculis fāmam accēperat; noctū igitur vēnit et, dum Herculēs dormit, quattuor pulcherrimōrum boum abripuit. Hōs caudīs in antrum trāxit; hōc enim modō putāvit Herculem vēstīgiīs dēceptum bovēs nōn inventūrum esse.

32. Hercules Discovers the Theft

Posterō diē, simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs fūrtum animadvertit, et bovēs āmissōs undique quaerēbat. Hōs tamen nusquam reperīre poterat, nōn modo quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, sed quod vēstīgiīs falsīs dēceptus est. Tandem, ubi magnam partem diēī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, cum reliquīs bōbus prōgredī cōnstituit. At, dum proficīscī parat, ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcum habuit mūgīre coepit. Extemplō iī quī in antrō inclūsī erant mūgītum reddidērunt; hōc modō Herculēs locum invēnit. Tum vehementer īrātus, ad spēluncam quam celerrimē sē contulit. At Cācus saxum ingēns dējēcerat et aditum spēluncae omnīnō obstrūxerat.

---

368. ingentī magnitūdine: ablative of description; what other case might have been employed?

373. Herculem . . . nōn inventūrum esse, *that Hercules, deceived by the tracks, would not find;* see note on line 323.

374. diē: ablative denoting time at which. What idea of time is expressed by *diēs* in line 365?

375. bovēs āmissōs, *the lost oxen;* the participle is employed as an adjective.

380. ūnus ē bōbus: with cardinal numbers and with *quīdam* an ablative with *ex* or *dē* is more common than a genitive; the latter, however, sometimes occurs, as in line 371.

383. quam celerrimē: see note on line 351.

33. Recovery of the Oxen

Herculēs, quoniam nūllum alium introitum reperīre poterat, hoc saxum āmovēre cōnātus est; sed propter ejus magnitūdinem rēs erat difficillima. Diū labōrābat, neque quidquam efficere poterat. Tandem tamen magnō cōnātū saxum āmōvit et spēluncam patefēcit. Ibi āmissōs bovēs magnō cum gaudiō cōnspexit. Sed Cācum ipsum vix cernere potuit, quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō quem ille mōre suō ēvomēbat. Herculēs, inūsitātā speciē turbātus, breve tempus haesitābat; mox tamen in spēluncam irrūpit et collum mōnstrī bracchiīs complexus est. Ille, etsī multum relūctātus est, nūllō modō sē līberāre potuit; et, quod nūlla facultās respīrandī dabātur, mox, quod necesse fuit, exanimātus est.

34. Eleventh Labor — The Golden Apples of the Hesperides

Eurystheus, postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem ūndecimum Herculī imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs suprā nārrāvimus. Jussit enim eum aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferre. Hesperides autem nymphae erant quaedam fōrmā praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā habitābant, et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Jūnōne commissa erant. Multī hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inductī, haec pōma auferre

---

387. neque, *but not;* occasionally *neque* is used as the equivalent of *sed nōn* instead of *et nōn*.

391. mōre suō, *according to his custom;* the ablative is sometimes employed to express the idea of "in accordance with."

392. breve tempus: accusative of duration of time.

396. quod (*a thing*) *which*, or *as;* neuter, because the relative refers to the fact in *exanimātus est.*

398. Herculī: see note on line 179.

quam: supply *eī erant.*

400. quaedam: with *nymphae.*

jam anteā cōnātī erant; rēs tamen difficillima erat. Nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; praetereā dracō quīdam, quī centum capita habēbat, portam hortī dīligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat erat summae difficultātis, nōn modo ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs situm hortī omnīnō ignōrābat.

35. Atlas, Who Upheld the Heavens

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōnstituit tamen Eurystheō pārēre; et simul ac jussa ejus accēpit, proficīscī mātūrāvit. Multōs mercātōrēs interrogāverat dē sēde Hesperidum; nihil tamen certum reperīre potuerat. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa perīcula subiit; tandem, postquam in hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsit, ad extrēmam partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, pervēnit. Hīc stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingentī magnitūdine corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umerīs suīs, sustinēbat et in terram dēcidere prohibēbat. Herculēs, tantum labōrem magnopere mīrātus, post paulō in colloquium cum

---

408. Herculī, *had imposed upon Hercules; Herculī* is a dative governed by the special verb *imperāverat.*

412. Eurystheō: what case is governed by verbs of obeying?

417. orbis: supply *terrārum;* the two words together mean *the world.*

419. ita trādunt, *so legend has it, as the legend goes;* literally *so they hand down.*

umerīs: ablative of means, but to be translated *on his shoulders.*

caelum dēcidere, *from falling upon the earth;* see note on line 343.

421. mīrātus, *wondering at.*

---

1. Conjugate *possum* in the present, imperfect, and future. 2. Decline *diēs.* 3. Conjugate *veniō* in the past perfect. 4. Give the principal parts of *auferō, reddō, irrumpō.* 5. What is the meaning of *quam celerrimē*? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "ignite."

Atlante vēnit et, postquam causam itineris exposuit, auxilium ejus petiit.

36. A Substitute

Atlās autem potuit Herculī maximē prōdesse; ille enim, quoniam ipse erat pater Hesperidum, situm hortī bene scīvit. Postquam igitur audīvit causam itineris Herculis, "Ipse," inquit, "ad hortum ībō; ego sī hortābor, fīliae certē pōma suā sponte trādent." Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, magnopere gāvīsus est; cupiēbat enim rem sine vī fierī. Cōnstituit igitur oblātum auxilium accipere. Sed quod Atlās abitūrus erat, necesse erat aliquem caelum umerīs sustinēre. Hoc igitur negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs erat

---

424. Herculī: dative with *prōdesse, benefit.*

427. hortābor: supply *eās* as object.

suā sponte, *of their own accord.*

429. gāvīsus est: from *gaudeō.*

430. abitūrus erat, *was about to go away;* the future active participle is often thus used with a form of the verb *sum.*

VOCABULARY REVIEW

colloquium	accidō	efficiō	turbō
cupiditās	āmittō	indūcō	
incommodum	arcessō	intellegō	longē
lapis	auferō	memorō	noctū
mercātor	cadō	moror	quam
ōs	circumdō	pāreō	ut
pābulum	condō	patefaciō	
	conjungō	putō	quoniam
posterus	cōnor	renūntiō	
ulterior	custōdiō	subeō	
uterque	dēcipiō	tegō	
	dēmittō	trādūcō	

summī labōris, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūrēs diēs sōlus sustinuit.

37. Return of Atlas

Atlās intereā abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca mīlia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō ubi vēnit, causam veniendī exposuit et ā fīliābus suīs pōma vehementer petīvit. Illae diū haerēbant; nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Jūnōne, dē quā ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba iīs persuāsit et pōma ad Herculem rettulit. Herculēs intereā, quī plūrēs diēs expectāverat neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēperat, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem vīdit redeuntem, et mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit.

38. Twelfth Labor — Cerberus, the Three-headed Dog

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus modo relinquēbātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Eurystheus Herculī praecēperat. Eurystheus autem, quod Herculem magnopere timēbat, sē ab eō in perpetuum līberāre volēbat. Jussit igitur eum canem Cerberum ex Orcō in lūcem trahere.

---

435. pauca mīlia passuum, *a few miles.* The use of *mīlle* in the plural is explained in the note on line 181.

436. Eō: an adverb.

437. fīliābus: the noun *fīlia* has *fīliābus* (not *fīliīs*) as the dative and ablative plural; *dea* (*goddess*) also has *-ābus* as the ending of these cases; in other forms these nouns have the regular endings of the first declension.

439. dictum est, *we have spoken.*

448. quōs Eurystheus Herculī praecēperat, *which Eurystheus had imposed upon Hercules;* the compound verb *praecipiō* is transitive and so takes both a dative, *Herculī,* and an accusative, *quōs.*

450. in perpetuum, *forever;* the neuter adjective is used as a noun.

Hoc opus omnium difficillimum erat; nēmō enim umquam ex Orcō redierat. Praetereā Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat horribilī speciē, quī tria capita serpentibus saevīs cīncta habēbat. Antequam tamen hunc labōrem nārrāmus, nōn aliēnum vidētur, quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēcimus, pauca dē istā regiōne prōpōnere.

39. Orcus, or Hades, the Abode of the Dead

Dē Orcō, quī īdem Hādēs appellābātur, haec trāduntur. Ut quisque ē vītā discesserat, mānēs ejus ad Orcum, sēdem mortuōrum, ā deō Mercuriō dēdūcēbantur. Hujus regiōnis, quae sub terrā fuisse dīcitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cujus uxor erat Prōserpina, Jovis et Cereris fīlia. Mānēs igitur, ā Mercuriō dēductī, prīmum ad rīpam veniēbant Stygis flūminis, quō continētur rēgnum Plūtōnis. Hoc omnēs trānsīre necesse erat quī in Orcum veniēbant. Quoniam tamen in hōc flūmine nūllus pōns erat, mānēs trānsvehēbantur ā Charonte quōdam, quī cum parvā scaphā ad rīpam expectābat. Charōn prō hōc officiō mercēdem postulābat, neque volēbat quemquam sine hōc praemiō trānsvehere. Ob hanc causam mōs erat apud antīquōs nummum in ōre mortuī pōnere; eō modō, ut putābant, mortuus ad Stygem veniēns pretium trājectūs solvere poterat. Iī autem quī post mortem in terrā nōn sepultī

---

455. aliēnum, *out of place.*

456. pauca, *a few things.*

458. īdem, *also,* a frequent meaning of the word.

459. Ut, *when.* **quisque,** *each person.*

mānēs: a plural noun, but to be translated as singular.

460. Mercuriō: one of the functions ascribed to the god Mercury was that of guide of souls into the lower world.

464. omnēs trānsīre necesse erat, *all must cross.* The subject of *erat* is the infinitive clause *omnēs trānsīre.*

465. in (*flūmine*), *over.*

469. mōs erat . . . pōnere, *it was the custom to place; pōnere* is the subject of *erat.*

470. mortuī, *of the dead person.*

erant Stygem trānsīre nōn potuērunt, sed in lītore per centum annōs errāre coāctī sunt; tum dēmum licuit Orcum intrāre. 475

40. The Realm of Pluto

Postquam mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad alterum veniēbant flūmen, quod Lēthē appellātum est. Ex hōc flūmine aquam bibere cōgēbantur. Quod ubi fēcerant, rēs omnēs in vītā gestās ē memoriā dēpōnēbant. Dēnique ad sēdem ipsam Plūtōnis veniēbant, cujus introitus ā cane Cerberō custōdiēbātur. Ibi Plūtō, nigrō vestītū indūtus, cum uxōre Prōserpinā in soliō sedēbat. Stābant etiam nōn procul ab eō locō tria alia solia, in quibus sedēbant Mīnōs, Rhadamanthus, et Aeacus, jūdicēs īnferōrum. Hī mortuīs jūs dīcēbant et praemia poenāsque cōnstituēbant. Bonī enim in Campōs Ēlysiōs, sēdem beātōrum, veniēbant; improbī autem in Tartarum mittēbantur, et multīs variīsque suppliciīs ibi excruciābantur.

---

475. intrāre: subject of *licuit.*

478. Quod ubi fēcerant, *and when they had done this.* The Latin relative pronoun often stands at the beginning of a sentence and refers to an antecedent in the preceding sentence. When thus used it is often followed by *ubi*, as in this instance, or by *cum*. In this use it is translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun.

rēs omnēs . . . gestās, freely, *all the experiences of life;* literally, *all things done in life.*

482. Stābant, *there stood;* see note on line 146.

484. mortuīs jūs dīcēbant, *dispensed justice to the dead.*

486. Campōs Ēlysiōs: in early Greek literature the Elysian Fields were spoken of as lying in the far west, at the earth's extremity, or in the Islands of the Blest. At a later time they were represented as a part of the lower world.

---

1. Give the principal parts of *cupiō, capiō, parō, pāreō, fīō.* 2. Give the ablative plural of *mercātor, fīlia, fīlius, orbis.* 3. Give a synopsis of *hortor* in the third person plural. 4. Decline *reditus* in the singular number. 5. What is the case of *iīs*, line 440, and why used? 6. Explain the derivation and meaning of "volition".

41. Charon's Ferry

Herculēs, postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacōniam ad Taenarum statim sē contulit; ibi enim spēlunca erat ingentī magnitūdine, per quam (ut trādēbātur) hominēs ad Orcum dēscendēbant. Eō ubi vēnit et ex incolīs situm spēluncae cognōvit, sine morā dēscendere cōnstituit. Nec tamen sōlus hoc iter faciēbat. Mercurius enim et Minerva sē sociōs eī adjūnxerant. Ubi ad rīpam Stygis vēnit, Herculēs scapham Charontis cōnscendit. Quod tamen Herculēs vir erat ingentī magnitūdine corporis, Charōn solvere nōlēbat; arbitrābātur enim tantum pondus scapham suam in mediō flūmine mersūrum esse. Tandem tamen, minīs Herculis territus, Charōn scapham solvit et eum incolumem ad ulteriōrem rīpam perdūxit.

42. The Twelve Labors Accomplished

Postquam flūmen Stygem tālī modō trānsiit, Herculēs in sēdem ipsīus Plūtōnis vēnit et, postquam causam veniendī docuit, ab eō facultātem Cerberum auferendī petīvit. Plūtō, quī dē Hercule fāmam accēperat, eum benignē excēpit et facultātem quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. Jussit tamen Herculem imperāta Eurystheī facere et posteā Cerberum in Orcum rūrsus redūcere. Herculēs haec pollicitus est, et Cerberum, quem nōn sine magnō perīculō manibus prehenderat, summō cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit. Eō ubi vēnit, Eurystheus ex ātriō statim refūgit;

---

491. ut trādēbātur: the clause has the same sense as *ita trādunt*, line 419.

492. Eō, *to that place.*

495. sociōs, *as companions.*

498. tantum pondus . . . mersūrum esse, *that such a weight would sink*, etc.

504. auferendī: the genitive of the gerund of a transitive verb may have a direct object, here *Cerberum.*

510. in lūcem, *into the light, i.e.*, to the upper world.

tantus pavor animum ejus occupāverat. Postquam autem paulum sē ex timōre recēpit, multīs cum lacrimīs clāmitāvit sē velle mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum redūcī. Sīc, contrā omnium opīniōnem, duodecim illī labōrēs quōs Eurystheus praecēperat intrā duodecim annōs cōnfectī sunt. Itaque Herculēs, servitūte tandem līberātus, magnō cum gaudiō Thēbās rediit.

43. Nessus, the Centaur

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscrībere longum est. Tandem, jam aetāte prōvectus, Dēianīram, Oeneī fīliam, in mātrimōnium dūxit; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occīdit. Mōre antīquō necesse erat Herculem ob eam rem in exilium īre; itaque cum uxōre suā ē fīnibus ejus cīvitātis exīre mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt, in quō nūllus pōns erat, et dum quaerunt modum trānseundī, accurrit Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō trānsiit. At Nessus, paulum in aquam prōgressus, ad rīpam subitō revertit et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod ubi animadvertit Herculēs, īrā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfīxit.

---

513. sē recēpit, *recovered.*

514. sē velle: again indirect discourse, *that he wished; velle* in turn governs an infinitive clause, *mōnstrum . . . redūcī.*

518. Thēbās, *to Thebes;* the name of a city without a preposition is used to express the place to which.

519. praeclāra, *famous exploits.*

quae: object of *perscrībere.*

520. longum est, *it would take too long.*

523. Mōre: an ablative expressing accordance, used as in line 391.

529. nandō, *by swimming,* ablative of the gerund expressing means and manner.

531. Quod ubi: the note on line 478 should be consulted.

44. The Poisoned Robe

Nessus igitur, sagittā Herculis trānsfīxus, moriēns humī jacēbat; at nōlēns occāsiōnem Herculem ulcīscendī dīmittere, ita locūtus est. "Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientis audī: sī vīs amōrem marītī tuī cōnservāre, aliquid sanguinis hujus quī ē pectore meō effunditur sūme ac repōne; tum, sī umquam suspīciō in mentem tuam vēnerit, vestem marītī hōc sanguine īnficiēs." Haec locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra autem, nihil malī suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem Oechaliae, suscēpit et, ubi rēgem ipsum cum fīliīs interfēcit, Iolēn, fīliam Eurytī, captīvam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturium appulit. Ibi in terram ēgressus, quod Jovī sacrificāre volēbat, āram cōnstituit. Dum tamen sacrificium parat, Licham, comitem suum, domum īre et vestem albam referre jussit; mōs enim erat apud antīquōs in sacrificandō vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra, arbitrāta Herculem amōrem ergā Iolēn habēre, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī īnfēcit.

45. The Death of Hercules

Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit statim induit. Post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia

---

535. Herculem ulcīscendī: the genitive of the gerund with a direct object, as in line 504.

536. morientis, *of one who is dying;* a present participle (from *morior*) used as a noun.

537. aliquid sanguinis hujus, *some of this blood.*

541. nihil malī, *no harm.*

suspicāta, *suspecting.*

544. domum, *home;* the accusative of this noun, like that of the names of cities, is used without a preposition to express the place to which.

549. sacrificandō: ablative of the gerund governed by a preposition.

arbitrāta, *thinking.*

550. Herculem . . . habēre, *that Hercules was in love with Iole.*

membra sēnsit; sed, quod causam ejus reī ignōrābat, magnopere mīrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus, vestem dētrahere cōnātus est. Illa tamen in corpore haesit, neque ūllō modō dīvellī potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extrūxit, sē imposuit. Hoc ubi fēcit, voluit eōs quī circumstābant rogum quam celerrimē accendere. Omnēs diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe vēlātus, ā Jove in Olympum abreptus est.

562. ignem subdidit, *set fire to* (*the pile*).

1. Decline *quisque*. 2. Give a synopsis of *cōgō* in the third person singular, active and passive. 3. Give the principal parts of *cōnferō*, *dēscendō*, *cognōscō*, *polliceor*, *perscrībō*. 4. Find the derivation and meaning of "conservation." 5. What was the last of the twelve labors of Hercules? 6. What was the result of drinking from the river Lethe? 7. How did Nessus take vengeance on Hercules? 8. What was the name of the dog that guarded the lower world? 9. Who were king and queen of the lower world? 10. What were the Elysian Fields?

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aetās	complūrēs	exeō	sciō
anima	perpetuus	fīō	suspicor
cīvitās	sōlus	hortor	ulcīscor
comes	ūllus	licet	videor
imperium	aliquis	loquor	certē
lūx	quisque	morior	dēnique
mēns		perficiō	sīc
nēmō	absum	polliceor	
pretium	arbitror	pōnō	priusquam
	cōnservō	recūsō	
aliēnus	errō	revertō	ante

VOCABULARY FOR ORAL EXERCISES

The following vocabulary of Latin expressions and grammatical terms is given for the convenience of teachers who may wish to use Latin in giving directions for the work of the classroom.

Good morning, *Salvē* (*pl. salvēte*).
Be seated, *Cōnsīde* (*pl. cōnsīdite*).
Rise (imperative), *Surge* (*pl. surgite*).
Write on the blackboard, *Scrībe* (*pl. scrībite*) *in tabulā*.
Lay aside your book, *Pōne librum* (*pl. pōnite librōs*).
Take paper and pencil, *Sūme chartam et stilum* (*pl. sūmite chartam et stilōs*).
Recite, *Recitā* (*pl. recitāte*).
Give me your paper, *Mihi chartam tuam dā* (*pl. chartās vestrās date*).
Place your papers on the table, *Chartās in mēnsā pōnite*.
Open the window, *Fenestram aperī*.
Close the door, *Jānuam claude*.
Give me the chalk, *Cretam mihi dā*.
Thank you, *Grātiās tibi* (*pl. vōbīs*) *agō*.
Good-by, *Valē* (*pl. valēte*).

noun, *nōmen*
adjective, *adjectīvum*
pronoun, *prōnōmen*
verb, *verbum*
adverb, *adverbium*
preposition, *praepositiō*
conjunction, *conjūnctiō*
interjection, *interjectiō*
case, *cāsus*
  nominative, *nōminātīvus*
  genitive, *genitīvus*
  dative, *datīvus*
  accusative, *accūsātīvus*
  ablative, *ablātīvus*
  vocative, *vocātīvus*
gender, *genus*
  masculine, *masculīnum*
  feminine, *fēminīnum*
  neuter, *neutrum*
person, *persōna*
  first, *prīma*
  second, *secunda*
  third, *tertia*
number, *numerus*
  singular, *singulāris*
  plural, *plūrālis*

tense, *tempus*
present, *praesēns*
imperfect, *imperfectum*
future, *futūrum*
perfect, *perfectum*
past perfect, *praeteritum perfectum*
future perfect, *futūrum perfectum*
voice, *vōx*
active, *actīva*
passive, *passīva*
mood, *modus*
indicative, *indicātīvus*
imperative, *imperātīvus*
infinitive, *īnfīnītīvus*
subjunctive, *subjūnctīvus*
deponent, *dēpōnēns*
transitive, *trānsitīvum*
intransitive, *intrānsitīvum*
impersonal, *impersōnāle*
conjugation, *conjugātiō*
declension, *dēclīnātiō*
blackboard, *tabula, -ae*
paper, *charta*
chalk, *crēta*
pencil, *stilus*
question, *interrogātiō*
answer, *respōnsum*

FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES

The following list of phrases includes quotations from Latin which are frequently found in English literature, and also a number of mottoes and phrases which are in common use:

Ad astra per aspera, To the stars through difficulties (motto of Kansas).

Ad utrumque parātus, Prepared for either event.

Alter ego est amīcus, A friend is one's second self.

Aurī sacra famēs, Accursed greed for gold.

Ē plūribus ūnum, One (formed) from many (motto of the United States).

Ex animō, Sincerely.

Esse quam vidērī, To be rather than to seem.

Fāta viam invenient, The fates will find a way.

Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, Men usually believe willingly that which they wish.

Fīat lūx, Let there be light.

Fīat jūstitia, Let justice be done.

Fortēs fortūna iuvat, Fortune favors the brave.

Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō, I am a man, and I regard nothing as foreign to me which has to do with humanity.

Horribile dictū, Horrible to relate.

In hōc signō vincēs, In this sign you shall conquer.

Labōrāre est ōrāre, To labor is to pray.

Labor omnia vincit, Toil conquers all things.

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō, A sound mind in a sound body.

Mēns sibi cōnscia rēctī, A mind conscious in itself (to itself) of right.

Mīrābile dictū, Wonderful to say.

Montānī semper līberī, Mountaineers are always freemen (motto of West Virginia).

Nōn prōgredī est regredī Not to go forward is to go backward.

Nōn sibi sed omnibus, Not for one's self but for all.

Pāce tuā, With your permission.

Possunt quia posse videntur, They can because they think they can.

Quod erat dēmōnstrandum (abbr. *Q. E. D.*), Which was to be proved.

Semper parātus, Always ready.

Sīc ītur ad astra, Thus one rises to fame (to the stars).

Sīc semper tyrannīs, Ever thus to tyrants (motto of Virginia).

Sīc trānsit glōria mundī, Thus passes away the glory of the world.

Sine diē, Without a day (said of an assembly which adjourns without a date fixed for meeting again).

Tempora mūtantur et nōs mūtāmur in illīs, The times change and we change with them (in them).

Vincit quī patitur, He conquers who endures.

Vincit quī sē vincit, He conquers who conquers himself.

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. FIRST DECLENSION, ā-stems

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	rosa	rosae
Gen.	rosae	rosārum
Dat.	rosae	rosīs
Acc.	rosam	rosās
Abl.	rosā	rosīs

2. SECOND DECLENSION, o-stems

Singular

N.	amīcus	puer	ager	vir	templum
G.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
D.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
Ac.	amīcum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
Ab.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

Plural

N.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
G.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Ac.	amīcōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

NOTE.—The vocative singular of **-us** nouns ends in **-e: amīce.**

THIRD DECLENSION

3. CONSONANT STEMS

Singular

N.	lēx	mīles	frāter	homō
G.	lēgis	mīlitis	frātris	hominis
D.	lēgī	mīlitī	frātrī	hominī
Ac.	lēgem	mīlitem	frātrem	hominem
Ab.	lēge	mīlite	frātre	homine

Plural

N.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
G.	lēgum	mīlitum	frātrum	hominum
D.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus
Ac.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
Ab.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus

NOTE. — Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s**. If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g**, the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x**: **dux**, nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lēx**, nominative from the stem **lēg-**. If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t** the final consonant is dropped before **-s**: **laus**, nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **prīnceps**, nominative from the stem **prīncip-**; **mīles**, nominative from the stem **mīlit-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**; **māter** from the stem **mātr-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**; **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-**. The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

		Singular		
N.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
G.	flūminis	capitis	corporis	itineris
D.	flūminī	capitī	corporī	itinerī
Ac.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
Ab.	flūmine	capite	corpore	itinere
		Plural		
N.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
G.	flūminum	capitum	corporum	itinerum
D.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus
Ac.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
Ab.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus

NOTE.—Nouns which have **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us: corpus** from the stem **corpor-**. The nominative **iter** has the stem **itiner-**.

4. I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

		Singular	
N.	collis	caedes	nox
G.	collis	caedis	noctis
D.	collī	caedī	noctī
Ac.	collem	caedem	noctem
Ab.	colle	caede	nocte
		Plural	
N.	collēs	caedēs	noctēs
G.	collium	caedium	noctium
D.	collibus	caedibus	noctibus
Ac.	collīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	noctīs (-ēs)
Ab.	collibus	caedibus	noctibus

		Singular	
N.	īnsigne	exemplar	animal
G.	īnsignis	exemplāris	animālis
D.	īnsignī	exemplārī	animālī
Ac.	īnsigne	exemplar	animal
Ab.	īnsignī	exemplārī	animālī
		Plural	
N.	īnsignia	exemplāria	animālia
G.	īnsignium	exemplārium	animālium
D.	īnsignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus
Ac.	īnsignia	exemplāria	animālia
Ab.	īnsignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus

5. IRREGULAR NOUNS

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs
G.	—	vīrium	bovis	boum
D.	—	vīribus	bovī	būbus *or* bōbus
Ac.	vim	vīrīs *or* -ēs	bovem	bovēs
Ab.	vī	vīribus	bove	būbus *or* bōbus

6. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī *or* -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

7. FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

8. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(1) **bonus,** *good*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

(2) **miser,** *unhappy*

	Singular		
N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō
	Plural		
N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(3) **pulcher,** *beautiful*

	Singular		
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

		Plural	
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

9. THIRD DECLENSION

THREE TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

ācer, *sharp*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs,-ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

10. TWO TERMINATIONS—(i-STEMS)

omnis, *all*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
G.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
D.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Ac.	omnem	omne	omnīs *or* -ēs	omnia
Ab.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

11. ONE TERMINATION

fēlīx, *fortunate* **potēns,** *powerful*

	Singular			
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	fēlīx	fēlīx	potēns	potēns
G.	fēlīcis	fēlīcis	potentis	potentis
D.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī	potentī
Ac.	fēlīcem	felīx	potentem	potēns
Ab.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī, -e	potentī -e

			Plural	
N.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentēs	potentia
G.	fēlīcium	fēlīcium	potentium	potentium
D.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	fēlīcīs, -ēs	fēlīcia	potentīs, -ēs	potentia
Ab.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus

12. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
G.	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
D.	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
Ac.	portantem	portāns	portantīs, -ēs	portantia
Ab.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portantibus	portantibus

13. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius	**ūnus**	**alter**
sōlus	**tōtus**	**neuter**
ūllus	**nūllus**	**uter**

N.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
G.	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
D.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(*The plurals are like those of* **bonus** *and* **miser.**)

14. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlīx	fēlīcior, fēlīcius	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

15. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

16. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, *broader*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
G.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
D.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Ac.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Ab.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

plūs, *more*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	———	plūs	plūrīs *or* -ēs	plūra
Ab.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus

17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	pejus	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

19. NUMERALS

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter
III.	trēs, tria	tertius
IV.	quattuor	quārtus
V.	quīnque	quīntus
VI.	sex	sextus
VII.	septem	septimus
VIII.	octō	octāvus
IX.	novem	nōnus
X.	decem	decimus
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus

XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
C.	centum	centēsimus
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

a. DECLENSION OF **DUO, TRĒS,** and **MĪLIA**

duo, *two*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	duo	duae	duo
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs, *three*

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	trēs	tria
G.	trium	trium
D.	tribus	tribus
Ac.	trēs, trīs	tria
Ab.	tribus	tribus

mīlia, N., *thousands*

Neut.
mīlia
mīlium
mīlibus
mīlia
mīlibus

PRONOUNS

20. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, **ego,** *I* Second person, **tū,** *you* (*thou*)

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
G.	meī	nostrum nostrī	tuī	vestrum vestrī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually **is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive pronouns.

21. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

	First person, **meī,** *of myself*		Second person, **tuī,** *of yourself*		Third person, **suī,** *of himself, etc.*	
	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
G.	meī	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

22. POSSESSIVES

Singular

1st pers. meus, -a, -um, *my*
2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)
3d pers. suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive)
ejus (gen. sing. of **is**) *his,* etc. (not reflexive)

Plural

1st pers. noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
2d pers. vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)
3d pers. suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive); eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of **is**) *their* (not reflexive)

23. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

(1) **hic**, *this*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(2) **ille**, *that*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

(3) **is**, *this, that, he, she, it*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
G.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

24. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

īdem, *the same*

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	īdem	eadem	idem
G.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	Plural		
N.	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
Ac.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

25. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

26. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

27. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quis	quae	quid *or* quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid *or* quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes **quī**. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always **quod**.

28. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

(1) **quisque,** *each*

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque
G.	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque
D.	cuique	cuique	cuique
Ac.	quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque
Ab.	quōque	quāque	quōque

(*The plural is rare*)

(2) **quisquam,** *anyone*

	Singular	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
G.	cujusquam	cujusquam
D.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Ac.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Ab.	quōquam	quōquam

(*Plural lacking*)

(3) quīdam, *a certain*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
G.	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(4) aliquis, *some*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
G.	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Plural

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

VERBS

29. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
portō, *I carry*	portāmus, *we carry*
portās, *you carry*	portātis, *you carry*
portat, *he carries*	portant, *they carry*

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portābam, *I was carrying*	portābāmus, *we were carrying*
portābās, *you were carrying*	portābātis, *you were carrying*
portābat, *he was carrying*	portābant, *they were carrying*

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
portābō, *I shall carry*	portābimus, *we shall carry*
portābis, *you will carry*	portābitis, *you will carry*
portābit, *he will carry*	portābunt, *they will carry*

PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*	portāvimus, *we have carried*, etc.
portāvistī, *you have carried*, etc.	portāvistis, *you have carried*, etc.
portāvit, *he has carried*, etc.	portāvērunt, -ēre, *they have carried*, etc.

PAST PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portāveram, *I had carried*	portāverāmus, *we had carried*
portāverās, *you had carried*	portāverātis, *you had carried*
portāverat, *he had carried*	portāverant, *they had carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
portāveris, *you will have carried*
portāverit, *he will have carried*

Plural

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
portāveritis, *you will have carried*
portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portā, *carry (thou)* *Plur.* portāte, *carry (ye)*

INFINITIVES

Pres. portāre, *to carry*
Perf. portāvisse, *to have carried*
Fut. portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. portāns, *carrying* *Fut.* portātūrus, *about to carry*

GERUND

G. portandī, *of carrying*
D. portandō, *to (for) carrying*
Ac. portandum, *carrying*
Ab. portandō *from, by carrying*

30. *PASSIVE VOICE*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
portor, *I am carried*	portāmur, *we are carried*
portāris, -re, *you are carried*	portāminī, *you are carried*
portātur, *he is carried*	portantur, *they are carried*

IMPERFECT

Singular

portābar, *I was (being) carried*
portābāris, -re, *you were (being) carried*
portābātur, *he was (being) carried*

Plural

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*
portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*
portābantur, *they were (being) carried*

FUTURE

Singular

portābor, *I shall be carried*
portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
portābitur, *he will be carried*

Plural

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*

PERFECT

Singular

portātus sum, *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he has been carried*

Plural

portātī sumus, *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they have been carried*

PAST PERFECT

Singular

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
portātus erās, *you had been carried*
portātus erat, *he had been carried*

Plural

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
portātī erant, *they had been carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

Plural

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

INFINITIVES

Pres. portārī, *to be carried*
Perf. portātus esse, *to have been carried*
Fut. portātum īrī, *to be about to be carried*

PARTICIPLE

Perf. portātus, *having been carried*

31. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
monet	dūcit	capit	audit
monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
monētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT

monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	dūcēbatis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

FUTURE

monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

PERFECT

monuī, etc.	dūxī, etc.	cēpī, etc.	audīvī, etc.

PAST PERFECT

monueram, etc.	dūxeram, etc.	cēperam, etc.	audīveram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

monuerō, etc.	dūxerō, etc.	cēperō, etc.	audīverō, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē	dūc[1]	cape	audī
monēte	dūcite	capite	audīte

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns

FUTURE

monitūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monēre	dūcere	capere	audīre

PERFECT

monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse

FUTURE

monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse

GERUND

monendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

[1]See section **550**, *a*, page 284.

PASSIVE VOICE

32. INDICATIVE

PRESENT

moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
monētur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur
monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
monēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī
monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
monēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT

monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	audītus sum

PAST PERFECT

monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	audītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	audītus erō

PARTICIPLE

PERFECT

monitus	ductus	captus	audītus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī

PERFECT

monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	audītus esse

FUTURE

monitum īrī	ductum īrī	captum īrī	audītum īrī

33. DEPONENT VERBS

I. **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
II. **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
III. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
IV. **partior, partīrī, partītus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I	II	III	IV
cōnor	polliceor	sequor	partior
cōnāris, -re	pollicēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
cōnātur	pollicētur	sequitur	partītur
cōnāmur	pollicēmur	sequimur	partīmur
cōnāminī	pollicēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
cōnāntur	pollicentur	sequuntur	partiuntur

IMPERFECT

cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar

FUTURE

cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	partiar

PERFECT

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	partīrī

PERFECT

cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse

FUTURE

cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

cōnāns	pollicēns	sequēns	partiēns

PERFECT

cōnātus	pollicitus	secūtus	partītus

FUTURE ACTIVE

cōnātūrus	pollicitūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	pollicendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

34. CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*
est, *he, she, it is*	sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*	erāmus, *we were*
erās, *you were*	erātis, *you were*
erat, *he, she, it was*	erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	erimus, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	eritis, *you will be*
erit, *he, she, it will be*	erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, I was*	fuimus, *we have been, we were*
fuistī, *you have been, you were*	fuistis, *you have been, you were*
fuit, *he, she, it has been, was*	fuērunt *or* -ēre, *they have been, etc.*

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerat, *he, she, it had been*	fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he, she, it will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
2d pers. es, *be (thou)*	este, *be (ye)*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

INFINITIVES

Pres. esse, *to be*
Perf. fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futūrus esse *or* fore, *to be about to be*

35. CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
possum	possumus	potuī	potuimus
potes	potestis	potuistī	potuistis
potest	possunt	potuit	potuērunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
poteram	poterāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
poterās	poterātis	potuerās	potuerātis
poterat	poterant	potuerat	potuerant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
poterō	poterimus	potuerō	potuerimus
poteris	poteritis	potueris	potueritis
poterit	poterunt	potuerit	potuerint

INFINITIVES

Pres. posse *Perf.* potuisse

36. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Active		*Passive*	
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

IMPERFECT

ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferēbar	ferēbāmur

FUTURE

feram	ferēmus	ferar	ferēmur

PERFECT

tulī	tulimus	lātus sum	lātī sumus

PAST PERFECT

tuleram	tulerāmus	lātus eram	lātī erāmus

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	tulerimus	lātus erō	lātī erimus

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d pers.	fer	ferte

INFINITIVES

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

	Active		*Passive*
Pres.	ferēns	*Perf.*	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus		

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

37. CONJUGATION OF EŌ

Principal parts: **eō, īre, iī** *or* **īvī, itum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
eō	īmus	iī	iimus
īs	ītis	īstī (iistī)	īstis (iistis)
it	eunt	iit	ierunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
ībam	ībāmus	ieram	ierāmus
ībās	ībātis	ierās	ierātis
ībat	ībant	ierat	ierant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
ībō	ībimus	ierō	ierimus
ībis	ībitis	ieris	ieritis
ībit	ībunt	ierit	ierint

a. Forms are sometimes found in the perfect system with the stem **īv-,** as **īvī, īveram,** etc.

IMPERATIVE

Pres., 2d pers. ī, **ite,**

INFINITIVES

Pres.	īre
Perf.	iisse *or* īsse
Fut.	itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	iēns (*gen.* euntis)
Fut.	itūrus

GERUND

eundī, etc.

38. CONJUGATION OF FĪŌ

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
fīō	—	factus sum	factī sumus
fīs	—	factus es	factī estis
fit	fīunt	factus est	factī sunt
IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
fīēbam	fīēbamus	factus eram	factī erāmus
fīēbās	fīēbātis	factus erās	factī erātis
fīēbat	fīēbant	factus erat	factī erant
FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
fīam	fīēmus	factus erō	factī erimus
fīēs	fīētis	factus eris	factī eritis
fīet	fīent	factus erit	factī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Pres., 2d pers.	fī,	fīte

INFINITIVES

Pres.	fierī
Perf.	factus esse
Fut.	factum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. factus

39. CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
volō	volumus
vīs	vultis
vult	volunt

PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
voluī	voluimus
voluistī	voluistis
voluit	voluērunt

IMPERFECT

volēbam	volēbāmus
volēbās	volēbātis
volēbat	volēbant

PAST PERFECT

volueram	voluerāmus
voluerās	voluerātis
voluerat	voluerant

FUTURE

volam	volēmus
volēs	volētis
volet	volent

FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	voluerimus
volueris	volueritis
voluerit	voluerint

INFINITIVES

Pres.	velle
Perf.	voluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

40. (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

(3) A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the word which it explains.

(4) A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

41. (1) The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate.

THE GENITIVE

42. (1) The genitive is the case of the possessor. (*Genitive of Possession.*)

(2) With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to denote the whole of that to which the part belongs. (*Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.*)

(3) The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Genitive of Description.*)

THE DATIVE

43. (1) The indirect object is put in the dative case. (*Dative of Indirect Object.*)

(2) The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful, near,* and some others. (*Dative with Adjectives.*)

(3) Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative. (*Dative with Special Verbs.*)

(4) Verbs compounded with **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub,** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative.

This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of **ad, circum, com-, in, inter, post, prō,** and **super.** (*Dative with Compounds.*)

THE ACCUSATIVE

44. (1) The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case. (*Accusative as Direct Object.*)

(2) A noun which is used to tell how long an act or a situation continues is put in the accusative. (*Accusative of Duration of Time.*)

(3) The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space. (*Accusative of Extent of Space.*)

(4) Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative. (*Accusative with Prepositions.*)

THE ABLATIVE

45. (1) Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent,* and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with **ab, dē,** or **ex.** (*Ablative of Separation.*)

(2) With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab.** (*Ablative of Agent.*)

(3) The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. (*Ablative of Place.*)

(4) The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition. (*Ablative of Time.*)

(5) The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act. (*Ablative of Accompaniment.*)

(6) The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum,** is used to express manner. (*Ablative of Manner.*)

(7) A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition. (*Ablative of Means.*)

(8) A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. (*Ablative Absolute.*)

(9) The measure or degree of difference is expressed by the ablative. (*Ablative of Degree of Difference.*)

(10) The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true. (*Ablative of Respect* or *Specification.*)

(11) The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Ablative of Description.*)

(12) The ablative is used to express cause. (*Ablative of Cause.*)

(13) **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative. (*Ablative with Certain Deponents.*)

THE VOCATIVE

46. The vocative denotes the person addressed.

MOODS

THE INDICATIVE

47. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply as answer a statement of fact.

THE IMPERATIVE

48. The imperative is used to express commands.

THE INFINITIVE

49. (1) The infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb, by denoting an action of the subject of the verb on which it depends. (*Complementary Infinitive.*)

(2) The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing,* and the like. (*Indirect Discourse.*)

THE GERUND

50. The gerund is a verbal noun, used only in four cases and in the singular number. The cases in which it is used are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

SELECTED WORD LIST

The following words from the vocabulary of this book appear in the list selected by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years of the high-school course. The total number comprising the list for the first two years is approximately nine hundred, of which more than half are here given.

For convenience in study, the words appearing in Lessons I-XCIII, Horatius, Perseus, and Circe are divided into four groups of about equal size. Group V includes words occurring in the Supplementary Lessons and the reading material following them.

I

ā, ab	cōpia	habeō	moneō
ad	cum (*prep.*)	hic	multus
adsum	cum (*conj.*)	hōra	nam
aedificium	cūr	ibi	-ne
aeger	dēbeō	ille	neque, nec
ager	dēfessus	in	noctū
amīcus	dēsīderō	īnsula	nōn
angustus	diū	ita	noster
ante	dō	juvō	nūllus
aqua	equus	labōrō	nunc
arma	ē, ex	lātus, -a, -um	occupō
aut	et	laudō	oppidum
auxilium	expectō	locus	parō
bellum	fāma	longus	parvus
bene	fīlius	magnus	pecūnia
bonus	frūmentum	maneō	per
castra	gladius	meus	perīculum
cōnsilium	grātus	miser	poena

portō
post
postulō
praemium
prō
probō
proelium
propinquus
propter
puer
quam
quis
quod
quoque
saepe
sagitta
satis
scūtum
sed
silva
sine
socius
sōlus
spectō
stō
sum
terra
tertius
timeō
trāns
trēs
tum
tūtus
tuus
ubi
vāstō
via
videō
vir
vīta

II

agmen
alius
altus
āmittō
annus
appellō, -āre
appropinquō
arbor
audeō
audiō
barbarus
calamitās
capiō
caput
centuriō
cēterī
cibus
circum
cīvis
clāmō
collis
corpus
cupiō
dē
dēfendō
dēleō
dūcō
duo
dux
etiam
excipiō
expugnō
ferus
fīnis
flūmen
fluō
frāter
gēns
gerō
homō
hostis
hūc
idōneus
imperō
inimīcus
inīquus
īnsigne
inter
interficiō
is
iter
jaciō
jubeō
lapis
lēgātus
legiō
lūx
māter
medius
mīles
mittō
mōns
mora
moveō
mūniō
mūrus
nāvis
necō
neglegō
nōmen
nox
nūntius
officium
oppugnō
ostendō
pāreō
pars
pater
paucī
pāx
pēs
pōnō
populus
porta
procul
respondeō
rēx
rīpa

rogō
saxum
sciō
scrībō
semper
servō
servus
sīc
signum
sōlum (*adv.*)
statim
sub
summus
superō
suus
tegō
tergum
terreō
tōtus
ulterior
undique
urbs
usque
vāllum
veniō
vester
vincō
vocō

III

accipiō
ācer
agō
alter
an
animus
antīquus
aperiō
apud
arcessō
at
brevis
cadō
caedō
captīvus
castellum
coepī
commūnis
cōnsul
contrā
contrōversia
currō
deinde
dēserō
deus
dīcō, -ere
dīvidō
dūrus
ego
enim
eō, īre
exercitus
explōrātor
facilis
faciō
ferē
fortis
frangō
fuga
fugiō
grātia
gravis
honor
īdem
imperium
impetus
incipiō
injūria
intrā
inveniō
ipse
jam
lēx
lītus
magis
mare
nisi
nōbilis
nōndum
numerus
numquam
occīdō
omnis
paene
pellō
petō
pōns
possum
posteā
potēns
prehendō
premō
prīmus
pugna
putō
quattuor
quī
redeō
regō
relinquō
restituō
silentium
similis
sōl
suī
sūmō
tamen
tempus
teneō
trahō
tū
umquam
ūnus
uter
uterque
uxor
ventus
vertō
vigilia
vōx

IV

afficiō
adulēscēns
adversus (*adj.*)
aes
aliquis
anteā
autem
beneficium
cāsus
causa
cēnseō
centum
certus
circumdō
cognōscō
committō
cōnsīdō
cōnspiciō
cōnstituō
cōnsulō
contendō
cornū
cotīdiē
crēdō
decem
diēs
domus
dum
efficiō
exanimō
expōnō
famēs
fōrma
frōns, -ntis
frūstrā
fundō, -ere
ignis
ignōrō
inde
ineō
intellegō
intereā
iste
jungō
jūrō
malus, -a, -um
manus
mēns
modus
mūtō
nātūra
nēmō
nihil
nōlō
novem
nūntiō
ob
octō
oculus
offerō
omnīnō
ōrdō
placeō
postquam
praebeō
praeda
praestō, -āre
praeter
praetereā
prior
quaerō
quārtus
quīdam
quidem
quiēs
quīnque
quō
rapiō
reddō
regiō
rēgnum
rēmus
reperiō
rēs
rumpō
rūrsus
salūs
secundus
senātus
sentiō
septem
sex
sī
simul
spatium
speciēs
subitō
suprā
tantus
tempestās
tollō
trādō
turpis
vacuus
vērus
vīgintī
virtūs
vītō
vix
vulnus

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS AND READINGS

V

accidō
aciēs
adeō (*adv.*)
aditus
aestās
aetās
aliēnus
animadvertō
atque, ac
attingō
auctōritās
caedēs
campus
cernō
cīvitās
claudō
cōgitō
cōgō
collocō
colloquium
complūrēs
cōnficiō
cōnfirmō
cōnor
cōnsequor
cōnsistō
cōnsuēscō
cōnsūmō
contineō
continuus
contumēlia
cruciātus
cupidus
cūra
cūrō
cursus
dēficiō
dēligō, -ere
dēmōnstrō
dēsistō
dēspērō
difficilis
doceō
doleō
efferō
eō (*adv.*)
eques
etsī
exerceō
exercitātiō
extruō
extrā
extrēmus
facultās
fallō
ferō
fīnitimus
fīō
fortūna
fossa
genus
-gredior
hortor
incidō
incolō
incolumis
initium
inquam
īnstruō
intervāllum
invītus
jūs
labor
levis
līberī
līberō
loquor
memoria
mercātor
merīdiēs
mīlle
mīror
mīrus
modo
moror
mors
mōs
mulier
mūnus
nancīscor
nāvigō
negō
negōtium
novus
objiciō
obtineō
occāsiō
occāsus
occurrō
opera
opīniō
opportūnus
opprimō
ops
opus
pābulum
palūs
passus
patior
paulum
pecus, -oris
pendō
pereō
perficiō
perpetuus
persuādeō
perturbō
polliceor
portus
pōscō
posterus
postrīdiē
praecipiō
praeficiō

praesum
prīnceps
prīstinus
priusquam
proficīscor
prohibeō
projiciō
prope
prūdēns
quantus
-que
quīntus
quisquam
quisque
quoniam
recūsō
reliquus
revertor
sequor
servitūs
simulō
singulī
sīve, seu
spēs
sponte
stīpendium
studeō
superior
supersum
supplicium
suscipiō
suspicor
sustineō
tam
tangō
tēlum
temptō
tot
ūllus
unde
ūsus
vagor
valeō
vallēs
vereor
vesper
vestis
vīs
vīvō
vīvus
volō, velle
voluntās

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, away from; by.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go away, go.

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, carry off, steal.

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut off.

absēns, *gen.* **absentis,** absent.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be absent, be distant.

absūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, destroy, kill.

ac, *see* **atque.**

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, kindle, set on fire.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, happen.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, accept.

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, recline.

accurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, run up, come up.

ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, eager.

acerbus, -a, -um, bitter.

Achaeī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Achaeans.

aciēs, -ēī, F., line of battle.

Ācrisius, -ī, M., Acrisius, *grandfather of Perseus.*

ācriter, *adv.*, vigorously, fiercely.

acuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, sharpen.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward; until; near; at.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring, influence.

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go to, come to, approach.

adeō, *adv.*, to such an extent, so.

adhūc, *adv.*, as yet, still.

aditus, -ūs, M., entrance.

adjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, join to, attach.

adjuvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, help.

Admēta, -ae, F., Admeta, *daughter of Eurystheus.*

admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, admire.

adstō, -stāre, -stitī, stand near, stand.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be present, be at hand, be here.

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, M., young man.

adūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, burn, scorch, sear.

advena, -ae, M., stranger.

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come to, approach, arrive at.

adventus, -ūs, M., approach, arrival.

adversus, -a, -um, opposite, in front, facing; unfavorable.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn toward, turn.

Aeacus, -ī, M., Aeacus, *a judge in the lower world.*

aedificium, -ī, N., a building.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build.

aeger, -gra, -grum, ill, sick.

aegra, *see* **aeger.**

aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be sick.

Aegyptius, -a, -um, Egyptian; M. *pl. as noun,* the Egyptians.

Aegyptius, -ī, M., Aegyptius, *the name of a sailor in "Circe."*

aēneus, -a, -um, of bronze.

āēr, āeris, M., the air.

aes, aeris, N., bronze.

aestās, -ātis, F., summer.

aestāte, in summer.

aetās, -ātis, F., age; lifetime.

Aethiopēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Ethiopians, *a people of Africa.*

afferō (adferō), afferre, attulī, allātum, bring to, bring.

afficiō (adficiō), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, affect, treat.

ager, agrī, M., field, farm, land.

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, drive, disturb, move; wave, shake.

agmen, agminis, N., column, line, army, band.

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize.

agnus, -ī, M., lamb.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive; do; spend, pass.

agricola, -ae, M., farmer.

albus, -a, -um, white.

Alcmēna, -ae, F., Alcmena, *mother of Hercules.*

Alexander, -drī, M., Alexander, *a man's name.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, of another, another's, strange, unfavorable.

aliēnus, -ī, M., stranger.

aliquis (aliquī), aliquid, someone, somebody, something, anyone, anything.

alius, alia, aliud, another, other; **alius . . . alius,** one . . . another; *pl.*, **aliī . . . aliī,** some . . . others.

allātus, *participle of* **afferō.**

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bind, tie.

Alpēs, -ium, F. *pl.*, the Alps.

alter, altera, alterum, one of two, the other of two, a second, another; **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other.

altitūdō, -dinis, F., height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep.

amāmus, we love.

amant, (they) love.

amās, you love.

amat, (he, she, it) loves.

amātor, -ōris, M., lover.

Amāzones, -um, F. *pl.*, the Amazons, *a fabulous race of women warriors.*

ambrosia, -ae, F., ambrosia, *the food of the gods.*

ambulant, (they) walk.

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, walk.

America, -ae, F., America.

amīcus, -a, -um, friendly.

amīcus, -ī, M., friend.

amita, -ae, F., aunt.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, lose.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, love.

amoena, *see* **amoenus.**

amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant.

amor, -ōris, M., love.

āmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove.

amphitheātrum, -ī, N., amphitheater.

amphora, -ae, F., jar.

amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum, embrace; **sē amplectuntur,** they embrace each other.

an, *conj.*, or.

ancilla, -ae, F., maid-servant, maid.

Andromeda, -ae, F., Andromeda, *the daughter of Cepheus.*

angusta, *see* **angustus.**

angustus, -a, -um, narrow.

anima, -ae, F., breath; life.

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, observe, notice.

animal, -ālis, N., animal.

animus, -ī, M., mind, spirit.

annōn, *conj.*, or not.

annuō, -ere, -uī, nod, nod assent.

annus, -ī, M., year.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of.

anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before.

antehāc, *adv.*, before this, heretofore.

antequam, *conj.*, before.

antīquitus, *adv.*, long ago, in former times.

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient; M. *pl. as noun*, the ancients.

antrum, -ī, N., cavern.

apage, *interjection*, off with you, begone!

aper, aprī, M., wild boar.

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, open.

aperta, *see* **apertus.**

apertus, -a, -um, open.

Apollō, Apollinis, M., Apollo, *god of archery, prophecy, music, poetry, and medicine.*

appāreō, -ēre, -uī, appear.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call, name.

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive to, bring to; *with or without* **nāvem,** bring to land, come to land, land.

appetō, -petere, -petīvī *or* **-petiī, -petītum,** approach.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, draw near, approach.

aptē, *adv.*, skillfully, cleverly.

aptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adjust, fit.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, among; at the house of.

aqua, -ae, F., water.

āra, -ae, F., altar.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think.

arbor, -oris, F., tree.

arca, -ae, F., chest, box.

Arcadia, -ae, F., Arcadia, *a district of Greece.*

arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītum, summon, bring.

arcus, -ūs, M., bow.

ārdēns, *gen.* **ārdentis,** burning.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, burn.

arēna, *see* **harēna.**

Argolicus, -a, -um, of Argolis (*a district of Greece*).

ariēs, -etis, M., ram.

arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, arms, weapons.

armātus, -a, -um, armed.

armilla, -ae, F., bracelet.

ars, artis, F., art.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, ascend, climb, mount.

at, *conj.*, but.

Atlās, -antis, M., Atlas, *a giant who held up the heavens on his shoulders.*

atque (*before consonants* **ac**), *conj.*, and, and also.

ātrium, -ī, N., atrium, *the principal room or hall of a house.*

attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, turn toward; **animum attendere,** give attention.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch, reach, arrive at.

auctōritās, -ātis, F., influence, authority.

audācia, -ae, F., boldness, insolence.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear, listen to, listen.

aufer, *imperative singular of* **auferō.**

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, carry off, take away, bring away.

Augēās, -ae, M., Augeas, *a king of Elis.*

aureus, -a, -um, of gold, gold (*as adjective*).

auris, -is, F., ear.

aurum, -ī, N., gold.

aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.

autem, *conj.* (*never stands first in a sentence*), but, however, on the other hand; furthermore.

auxilium, -ī, N., help, assistance

avidus, -a, -um, greedy.

avis, avis, F., bird.

āvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly away.
avunculus, -ī, M., uncle, a mother's brother.
avus, -ī, M., grandfather.

B

baculum, -ī, N., wand, staff.
bālātus, -ūs, M., bleating.
balteus, -ī, M., girdle, belt.
barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous; M. *as noun,* a barbarian; *pl.,* the barbarians.
beātus, -a, -um, happy.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike.
bellum, -ī, N., war.
bēlua, -ae, F., wild beast, beast.
bene, *adv.,* well; **bene facere,** treat kindly (*with dative*).
beneficium, -ī, N., kindness, favor.
benigna, *see* **benignus.**
benignē, *adv.,* kindly.
benignus, -a, -um, kind.
bēstia, -ae, F., beast, wild animal.
bibō, bibere, bibī, drink.
biceps, *gen.* **bicipitis,** two-headed.
bona, *see* **bonus.**
bonus, -a, -um, good.
bōs, bovis, M. *and* F., bull, ox, cow; *pl.,* cattle, oxen.
bracchium, -ī, N., forearm, arm.
brevī, *adv.,* in a short time.
brevis, -e, short, brief.
Britannia, -ae, F., Great Britain.
Būsīris, -idis, M., Busiris, *a king of Egypt.*

C

Cācus, -ī, M., Cacus, *a giant slain by Hercules.*
cadāver, -eris, N., a dead body.
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall.
caecus, -a, -um, blind.
caedēs, caedis, F., killing, slaughter.
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut
caelum, -ī, N., sky, heaven.
calamitās, -ātis, F., disaster.
calathus, -ī, M., basket.
calidus, -a, -um, hot, warm.
callidissimus, -a, -um, shrewdest, wisest.
callidus, -a, -um, skillful, shrewd, wise.
calor, -ōris, M., heat.
campus, -ī, M., plain.
cancer, -crī, M., crab.
canis, canis, M. *and* F., dog.
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sing; crow.
caper, caprī, M., goat.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, seize; capture, receive; **cōnsilium capere,** to form a plan.
captīvus, -ī, M., prisoner.
caput, capitis, N., head.
cāra, *see* **cārus.**
carō, carnis, F., meat; flesh; *pl.,* pieces of meat.
cārus, -a, -um, dear, precious.
casa, -ae, F., cottage, hut.
cāseus, -ī, M., cheese.
castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt.
castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.,* camp.
cāsus, -ūs, M., accident, chance.
catēna, -ae, F., chain.
cauda, -ae, F., tail.
causa, -ae, F., cause, reason; *abl.* **causā,** *preceded by genitive,* for the sake (of), for the purpose (of).
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, be careful, take care, beware of.
caverna, -ae, F., cavern, cave.
celeber, -bris, -bre, famous.
celeritās, -ātis, F., speed, swiftness.
celeriter, *adv.,* swiftly.
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal.
cēna, -ae, F., dinner.

Cēnaeum, -ī, N., Cenaeum, *a promontory of the island of Euboea.*

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dine.

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, think, believe.

centaurus, -ī, M., a Centaur, *a mythical creature with a horse's body and a man's head.*

centum, *numeral adj.*, one hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion.

Cēpheus, -ī, M., Cepheus, *a king of Ethiopia.*

Cerberus, -ī, M., Cerberus, *the watch-dog of the lower world.*

Cerēs, -eris, F., Ceres, *goddess of agriculture.*

cernō, -ere, crēvī, certum (crētum), discern, see.

certāmen, -inis, N., contest.

certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely.

certus, -a, -um, certain, definite; **prō certō,** as certain.

cervus, -ī, M., stag, deer.

cēterī, -ae, -a, the other, the rest of, the others.

Charōn, -ontis, M., Charon, *the ferryman over the River Styx.*

cibus, -ī, M., food.

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, encircle.

Circē, Circae, F., Circe, *an enchantress.*

circulus, -ī, M., circle; ring, hoop.

circum, *prep. with acc.*, around.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, put around, surround.

circumspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look around.

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, —, stand around.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround.

cithara, -ae, F., cithara.

cīvis, cīvis, M. *and* F., citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis, F., the state, state.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, shout, cry out.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, shout, cry out.

clāmor, -ōris, M., shout, cry.

clāra, *see* **clārus.**

clārus, -a, -um, bright, clear; famous.

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close; inclose.

clausus, -a, -um, closed.

clāva, -ae, F., club.

clēmentia, -ae, F., mercy, clemency.

coepī, coepisse, coeptum, began, has begun.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider, think.

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, find out, know, recognize.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect; compel.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, urge on.

colit, *see* **colō.**

colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tie together.

collis, collis, M., hill.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, place, put.

colloquium, -ī, N., interview, conversation.

collum, -ī, N., neck.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate, worship.

Colossēum, -ī, N., the Colosseum.

columna, -ae, F., column, pillar.

comedō, -edere, -ēdī, -ēsum, eat up.

comes, -itis, M. *and* F., companion.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust; **proelium committere,** begin battle, engage in battle.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, arouse, stir, alarm.

commūnis, -e, common.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., change.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare.

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, clasp, embrace.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill.

complūrēs, -plūra *or* **-plūria,** several, a number of.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize.

comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, squeeze.

cōnātus, -ūs, M., attempt, effort.

concidō, -ere, concidī, collapse, fall in ruins.

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, found, establish.

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, bring together; **sē cōnferre,** betake oneself, go.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, complete; weaken, overcome.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, strengthen, establish.

cōnfricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rub together.

conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw, hurl; **in fugam conjicere,** put to flight.

conjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, join.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, climb; go on board.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consecrate.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow, overtake.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, retain, preserve.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down.

cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan, design, advice.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, take a stand.

cōnsōbrīna, -ae, F., cousin (*a woman or girl*).

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight, view.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, observe, see.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, erect, set up; determine, decide upon.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, consist.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed; *perfect,* be accustomed.

cōnsul, -ulis, M., consul.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, consult.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, consume, spend.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, cover.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, hasten, contend.

continēns, -entis, F., continent, mainland.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum. shut in, confine.

continuus, -a, -um, successive.

contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, turn, twist.

contrā, *prep. with acc.,* against, contrary to.

contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy.

contumēlia, -ae, F., disrespect.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, assemble, come together.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn.

convīvium, -ī, N., banquet.

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, arise.

cōpia, -ae, F., plenty, supply; *pl.,* forces, troops.

coquus, -ī, M., cook.

Cornēlia, -ae, F., Cornelia (*name of a woman or girl*).

cornū, **-ūs**, N., horn; flank *or* wing (*of an army*).
corpus, **-oris**, N., body.
corripiō, **-ripere**, **-ripuī**, **-reptum**, seize.
cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.
crās, *adv.*, tomorrow.
Crassus, **-ī**, M., Crassus (*name of a ram in Polyphemus's flock*).
crātēra, **-ae**, F., bowl.
crēdibilis, **-e**, credible.
crēdō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, believe, trust.
creō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, elect, choose.
Creōn, **-ontis**, M., Creon, *a king of Thebes*.
crepitus, **-ūs**, M., noise.
crepundia, **-ōrum**, N. *pl.*, a child's rattle, a rattle.
Crēsius, **-ī**, M., Cresius, *name of a sailor in "Circe."*
Crēta, **-ae**, F., Crete, *an island in the Mediterranean Sea*.
cruciātus, **-ūs**, M., torture.
crūdēlis, **-e**, cruel.
crūs, **crūris**, N., leg.
cubiculum, **-ī**, N., bedroom.
cubō, **-āre**, **cubuī**, **cubitum**, lie down, lie.
cuiquam, *dative of* **quisquam**.
culpō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, blame, censure.
culter, **-trī**, M., knife.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.
cum, *conj.*, when.
cum prīmum, as soon as.
cumulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, pile up.
cūnae, **-ārum**, F. *pl.*, cradle.
cupiditās, **-ātis**, F., desire.
cupidus, **-a**, **-um**, desirous, fond.
cupiō, **-ere**, **cupīvī**, **cupītum**, wish, desire.
cupit, (he, she, it) wishes.
cūr, *adv.*, why.
cūra, **-ae**, F., care, anxiety.
cūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, care **for**, take care of.
currō, **-ere**, **cucurrī**, **cursum**, run.
cursus, **-ūs**, M., running, course.
custōdiō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, guard.
cyathus, **-ī**, M., cup.
Cyclōps, **Cyclōpis**, M., a Cyclops.

D

Danaē, *Greek gen. form* **Danaēs**, F., Danaë, *mother of Perseus*.
dant, (they) give.
dat, (he, she, it) gives.
dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, **from**; regarding, concerning, about.
dea, **-ae**, F., goddess.
dēbeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, owe, ought.
dēbilis, **-e**, weak.
dēcidō, **-cidere**, **-cidī**, fall down.
dēcipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, deceive.
decorō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, adorn, honor.
dēdecus, **-decoris**, N., disgrace.
dēdūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, lead, conduct; **nāvem dēdūcere**, to launch a ship.
dēfendō, **-ere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsum**, defend.
dēfessus, **-a**, **-um**, tired out, exhausted.
dēficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, fail, run out.
Dēianīra, **-ae**, F., Deianira, *wife of Hercules*.
deinde, *adv.*, next, then.
dējiciō, **-jicere**, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, throw down.
dēlectō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, delight.
dēleō, **-ēre**, **-ēvī**, **-ētum**, destroy, blot out.
dēlīberō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, deliberate, consider.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select.

Delphicus, -a, -um, of Delphi, at Delphi.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send down, let down, lower, drop.

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, take down.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out, show.

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length.

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, at last.

dēnsus, -a, -um, dense.

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deplore, lament.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, put down, deposit, lay aside, give up.

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum, deprecate.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, come down, descend.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, desert, abandon.

dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted.

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, desire, long for; miss.

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum, jump down.

dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -situm, cease.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, desist from, cease.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, despair, despair of.

dēsuper, *adv.*, from above.

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, detain.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw off, strip off.

deus, -ī, M., a god; *pl.* **dī,** the gods.

dēvertō, -vertere, -vertī, turn aside.

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, devour.

dextra, -ae, F., right hand, right (*as opposed to left*).

dī, *plural of* **deus.**

Diāna, -ae, F., Diana, *goddess of hunting.*

dīc, *imperative singular of* **dīcō.**

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say; appoint.

diēs, -ēī, M. *and* F., day.

difficilis, -e, difficult.

difficultās, -ātis, F., difficulty.

difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty; **haud difficulter,** with no difficulty.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, spread, diffuse.

dīligēns, *gen.* **dīligentis,** careful.

dīligenter, *adv.*, industriously, diligently.

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, send out; lose.

Diomēdēs, -is, M., Diomede, *a king of Thrace.*

dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, destroy.

dīrus, -a, -um, dreadful.

dīs, *dative and ablative plural of* **deus.**

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart, go away.

discimus, we learn.

discit, (he, she) learns.

discō, -ere, didicī, learn.

discus, -ī, M., discus, quoit.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, station, arrange.

dissimilis, -e, unlike.

dissimulātus, -a, -um, concealed, disguised, pretended.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal.

diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long.

dīvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear away.

dīves, *gen.* **dīvitis,** rich.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach· explain.

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, suffer; grieve.

dolor, -ōris, M., sorrow, grief, pain.

dolus, -ī, M., trick, treachery, deceit.

domī, at home.

domina, -ae, F., mistress, madam.

dominus, -ī, M., master.

domus, -ūs (-ī), F., home, house; **domum** (*as place to which*), homeward, home.

dōnec, *conj.*, until.

dōnum, -ī, N., gift.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep.

dracō, -ōnis, M., serpent, dragon.

dubium, -ī, N., doubt.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful; **haud dubius,** unmistakable.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead, bring; marry.

dūdum, *adv.*, before, formerly; **jam dūdum,** this long time, a long time ago.

dulcis, -e, sweet, delicious.

dulcissimus, -a, -um, sweetest, very delicious.

dum, *conj.*, while.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, *numeral adj.*, twelve.

duodēvīgintī, *numeral adj.*, eighteen.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hold out, endure.

dūrus, -a, -um, hard.

dux, ducis, M., leader.

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from within, out of, from.

ecce, *interjection*, behold, see!

edepol, *interjection*, by heavens, really!

ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, appoint.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give out, give forth.

edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, eat.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out.

edunt, (they) eat.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry out.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, render, make.

efflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe out; **animam efflāre,** die.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, flee, escape.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour out; **sanguinem effundere,** shed blood.

ego, *gen.* **meī,** *pers. pron.*, I.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go out, come out; disembark.

ēheu, *interjection*, alas, oh! oh dear!

eia, *interjection*, ah!

ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum, choose, select.

Ēlis, -idis, F., Elis, *a district in Greece.*

Ēlysius, -a, -um, Elysian.

ēn, *interjection*, ah! there!

enim, *conj.* (*never stands first in its clause*), for; **at enim,** but indeed.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, proclaim, reveal.

eō, īre, iī *or* **īvī, itum,** go.

eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.

epistula, -ae, F., letter.

eques, equitis, M., horseman; *pl.*, the cavalry.

equidem, *adv.*, indeed, for my part; *sometimes merely emphasizing the pronoun I.*

equus, -ī, M., horse.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward, for.

Ergīnus, -ī, M., Erginus, *a king of the Minyae.*

ergō, *adv.*, therefore.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, lift up, arouse, encourage.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander.

error, -ōris, M., wandering.

ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, instruct.

Erymanthius, -a, -um, Erymanthian.

Erythīa, -ae, F., Erythia, *an island.*

est, (he, she, it) is.

este (*imperative plural of* **sum**), be.

ēsuriō, -īre, be hungry, hunger.

et, *conj.*, and.

etiam, *adv.*, also, even.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Etruscans.

Etrūscus, -a, -um, Etruscan.

etsī, *conj.*, though, although, even if.

euge, *interjection,* good, hurrah!

Eunomus, -ī, M., Eunomus, *a youth slain by Hercules.*

Eurōpa, -ae, F., Europe.

Eurylochus, -ī, M., Eurylochus, *one of the companions of Ulysses.*

Eurystheus, -ī, M., Eurystheus, *a king of Tiryns.*

Eurytiōn, -ōnis, M., Eurytion, *a giant.*

Eurytus, -ī, M., Eurytus, *a king of Oechalia.*

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, escape.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, challenge.

ēvomō, -vomere, -vomuī, -vomitum, vomit forth.

ex, *see* **ē.**

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, overcome, exhaust, kill.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, entertain.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, stir up, rouse, arouse.

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cry out, call out.

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, torture.

exemplar, exemplāris, N., copy, specimen.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out.

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, train, exercise.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., exercise.

exercitus, -ūs, M., army.

exilium, -ī, N., exile.

exorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, come forth, arise.

expectat, (he, she, it) expects, awaits.

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, expect, await, wait for, wait.

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum, drive out.

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, atone for, expiate.

expīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe out.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain; set ashore.

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm, capture.

extemplō, *adv.*, immediately.

extinguō, -tinguere, -tīnxī, -tīnctum, put out, extinguish.

extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of; *as adv.*, outside.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw out; save, release.

extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, most distant.

extruō, -ere, extrūxī, extrūctum, heap up, build.

exul, exulis, M., an exile.

exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, take off, remove.

F

faber, -brī, M., workman, smith.

fabricor, -ārī, -ātus sum, make, fashion.

fābula, -ae, F., story, play.
fac, *imperative singular of* **faciō.**
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, -e, easy.
facinus, facinoris, N., crime, deed.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do.
facit, (he, she, it) makes *or* does.
facultās, -ātis, F., means, opportunity.
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, deceive.
falsus, -a, -um, deceptive, misleading.
falx, falcis, F., sickle.
fāma, -ae, F., report, reputation.
famēs, famis, F., hunger.
fār, farris, N., grain, meal.
fās, *indeclinable,* N., heaven's will; *translated as adjective,* right.
fātum, -ī, N., fate, destiny.
faucēs, -ium, F. *pl.*, throat.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum (*takes dative*), favor.
fax, facis, F., torch, firebrand.
fēlīx, *gen.* **fēlīcis,** happy, fortunate.
fēmina, -ae, F., woman.
fenestra, -ae, F., window.
fera, -ae, F., wild animal, animal.
ferē, *adv.*, almost, about.
feriō, -īre, strike.
ferō; ferre, tulī, lātum, carry, bring, endure.
ferōx, *gen.* **ferōcis,** fierce.
ferreus, -a, -um, of iron, iron (*as adjective*).
fert, *third person singular of* **ferō.**
ferula, -ae, F., ferule, ruler.
ferus, -a, -um, wild.
fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired.
festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry.
fictus, -a, -um, fictitious.
fidēlis, -e, faithful.
figūra, -ae, F., figure.
fīlia, -ae, F., daughter.
fīlius, -ī, M., son.
fīnis, fīnis, M., end, limit; *pl.*, country, territory.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring; **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** M. *pl. as noun,* neighbors.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done, become.
flamma, -ae, F., flame.
Flavius, -a, -um, Flavian.
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, turn, bend.
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow.
flōreō, -ēre, -uī, flourish, be prosperous.
flōs, flōris, M., flower.
flūmen, -inis, N., river.
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow.
foedō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dishonor, disgrace.
fōrma, -ae, F., form, beauty.
fōrmōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beautiful.
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps.
forte, *adv.*, perhaps, by chance.
fortis, -e, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortūna, -ae, F., fortune.
fossa, -ae, F., ditch.
frāctus, -a, -um, broken.
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, break down.
frāter, frātris, M., brother.
fremitus, -ūs, M., a roar, a loud noise.
fretum, -ī, N., strait, channel.
frīgidus, -a, -um, cold.
frōns, frontis, F., forehead, brow.
frūctus, -ūs, M., fruit, products.
frūmentum, -ī, N., grain.
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fuga, -ae, F., flight.
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee.
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, drive away, drive, put to flight.

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, shine.

Fulvia, -ae, F., Fulvia, *name of a woman or girl.*

fūmus, -ī, M., smoke, odor.

funda, -ae, F., sling.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour; **lacrimās fundere,** shed tears.

fūnis, fūnis, M., rope.

furibundus, -a, -um, frantic, mad; *sometimes translated as adverb,* madly.

furor, -ōris, M., madness, insanity.

fūrtum, -ī, N., theft.

G

galea, -ae, F., helmet.

Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul, *a country.*

gallus, -ī, M., rooster.

Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul, *an inhabitant of* Gallia; *pl.,* the Gauls.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, be glad, rejoice.

gaudium, -ī, N., joy, happiness.

geminī, -ōrum, M. *pl.,* twins.

generōsus, -a, -um, noble-minded.

gēns, gentis, F., nation.

genus, generis, N., kind, sort.

Germānus, -a, -um, German.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry, wear; carry on, wage, do.

Gēryōn, -onis, M., Geryon, *name of a Spanish giant.*

gigās, -antis, M., giant.

gladiātor, -ōris, M., gladiator.

gladius, -ī, M., sword.

glāns, glandis, F., acorn.

Gorgō, -onis, F., a Gorgon.

Graeae, -ārum, F. *pl.,* the Graeae.

Graecia, -ae, F., Greece.

Graecus, -ī, M., a Greek; *pl.,* the Greeks.

grāmen, grāminis, N., grass.

grandis, -e, large.

grāta, *see* **grātus.**

grātia, -ae, F., favor, gratitude; **grātiās agere,** thank; **grātiam referre,** requite, repay in appropriate manner.

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, welcome, grateful.

gravis, -e, heavy; difficult, severe.

graviter, *adv.,* heavily, severely; greatly, deeply.

grex, gregis, M., flock, herd.

gubernāculum, -ī, N., helm, rudder.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, taste.

H

habent, (they) have.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold; regard.

habet, (he, she, it) has.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, live, dwell.

habitus, -ūs, M., appearance.

Hādēs, -ae, M., Hades, *the abode of the dead.*

haedus, -ī, M., kid.

haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus, stick, cling; hesitate.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hesitate.

Hammōn, -ōnis, M., Hammon, *an Egyptian god.*

harēna (**arēna**), **-ae,** F., sand, shore, beach.

hasta, -ae, F., spear.

haud, *adv.,* not at all, not; **haud procul,** not far away.

haudquāquam, *adv.,* by no means, not at all.

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, draw, drain; drink.

hei, *interjection,* oh, woe! **hei mihi,** oh!

hem, *interjection,* ha, well!

hercle, *interjection,* by heavens, good heavens!

Herculēs, -is, M., Hercules, *a famous Greek hero.*

herī, *adv.*, yesterday.

Herminius, -ī (*vocative* **Herminī**), M., Herminius, *a Roman name.*

Hēsionē, *Greek gen. form* **Hēsionēs,** F., Hesione, *daughter of Laomedon.*

Hesperides, -um, F. *pl.*, the Hesperides.

heu, *interjection*, alas!

heus, *interjection*, here, hello!

Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland.

hic, haec, hoc, this; *as pronoun*, he, she, it; *pl.*, these, they.

hīc, *adv.*, here.

hieme, in the winter.

hinc, *adv.*, from here, hence.

Hippolytē, *Greek gen. form* **Hippolytēs,** F., Hippolyte, *queen of the Amazons.*

Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain.

hodiē, *adv.*, today.

homō, hominis, M., man, human being.

honestus, -a, -um, honorable.

honor, -ōris, M., honor, esteem.

hōra, -ae, F., hour.

Horātius, -ī, M., Horatius (*a Roman name*); **Horātius Cocles,** *name of a Roman hero.*

horribilis, -e, horrible, dreadful.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge.

hortus, -ī, M., garden.

hospes, hospitis, M., host, guest; friend.

hostis, hostis, M., enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, to this place, here.

humerus, *see* **umerus.**

humī, *adv.*, on the ground.

Hydra, -ae, F., the Hydra.

I

ibi, *adv.*, there.

ictus, -ūs, M., blow, stroke.

īdem, eadem, idem, same. the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, favorable.

igitur, *adv.*, therefore.

ignāvus, -a, -um, idle; cowardly; M. *as noun*, coward.

ignis, ignis, M., fire.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, not know.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum (*takes dative*), pardon.

ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown.

ille, illa, illud, that; *as pronoun*, he, she, it; *pl.*, those, they.

illūc, *adv.*, to that place, there.

illuviēs, *ablative* **illuviē,** *no genitive*, dirt, filth.

imāgō, -inis, F., image, likeness.

imbēcillus, -a, -um, weak, helpless.

imber, -bris, M., rain, storm.

imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, dip, wet.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send in, let in.

immō, *adv.*, on the other hand; **immō vērō,** rather, much more likely.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, immortal.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, impel, urge on.

imperātor, -ōris, M., general, commander.

imperātum, -ī, N., command, order; **imperāta facere,** to obey commands.

imperītus, -a, -um, inexperienced (in), unskilled (in).

imperium, -ī, N., authority; command; power, government.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command.

impetus, -ūs, M., attack.

impiger, -gra, -grum, industrious, energetic.

impigra, *see* **impiger.**

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place upon, impose.

impotēns, *gen.* **impotentis**, weak.

improbus, -a, -um, wicked, bad.

impudēns, *gen.* **impudentis**, shameless, impudent.

impūne, *adv.*, with impunity, without punishment.

in, *prep. with abl. and acc.*; *with abl.*, in, on; over; *with acc.*, into, on, against, at.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, fall in, fall into.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin.

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut up, inclose.

incola, -ae, M. *and* F., inhabitant.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, inhabit.

incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe.

incommodum, -ī, N., annoyance; harm.

incrēdibilis, -e, incredible.

inde, *adv.*, from there, thence.

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, induce, move.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, put on; clothe.

ineō, -īre, -iī (*or* **-īvī**), **-itum**, enter, enter upon; form.

īnfāns, -antis, M. *and* F., infant.

īnfēlīx, *gen.* **-fēlīcis**, unfortunate.

īnferī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the dead, the shades.

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bring upon; **bellum īnferre**, make war on.

īnfestus, -a, -um, unsafe, hostile, hateful.

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, stain, dye, dip.

īnfīdissimus, -a, -um, most faithless.

īnfirmus, -a, -um, weak.

ingēns, *gen.* **ingentis**, huge, very great.

ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful.

inimīcus, -ī, M., enemy, personal foe.

inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust.

initium, -ī, N., beginning.

injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (*takes dative*), throw upon; inspire in.

injūria, -ae, F., injury, injustice.

inquam, inquis, inquit, *employed with direct quotations*, say.

īnsigne, īnsignis, N., decoration, badge.

īnspergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, sprinkle.

īnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look into, look.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up.

īnsula, -ae, F., island.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand, know.

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, bend, aim.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.

interdum, *adv.*, sometimes.

intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask.

intervāllum, -ī, N., distance.

intimus, -a, -um, innermost, interior of.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter.

introitus, -ūs, M., entrance.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, unusual.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite.

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, unwillingly.

invocātus, -a, -um, uninvited.

iō, *interjection*, hurrah! **iō triumphe**, hurrah, triumph!

Iolāus, -ī, M., Iolaus, *a companion of Hercules.*

Iolē, *Greek genitive form* **Iolēs,** F., Iole, *daughter of Eurytus.*

Īphiclēs, -is, M., Iphicles, *brother of Hercules.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

īra, -ae, F., anger.

īrātus, -a, -um, angry.

irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at.

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, rush into.

is, ea, id, that; he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, that of yours, that.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus; yes.

Italia, -ae, F., Italy.

itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.

iter, itineris, N., road, journey, march, route, course.

iterō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, repeat.

iterum, *adv.*, again.

Ithaca, -ae, F., Ithaca, *an island, home of Ulysses.*

J

jaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie.

jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw.

jaculātor, -ōris, M., javelin-thrower.

jaculum, -ī, N., javelin.

jam, *adv.*, now, already; **nōn jam,** no longer; **jam jam,** even now, very soon.

Jāniculum, -ī, N., the Janiculum, *a hill across the Tiber from the Palatine.*

jānua, -ae, F., door.

jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, order, command.

jūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant, delightful.

jūdex, -icis, M., judge.

jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join, fasten together.

Jūnō, -ōnis, F., Juno, *queen of the gods.*

Juppiter, Jovis, M., Jupiter, *king of the gods.*

jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swear.

jūs, jūris, N., right, law, justice.

jussum, -ī, N., order, command.

juvenis, -is, M., young man.

juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, help, assist.

L

labor, -ōris, M., labor, task.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, slip, fall.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, work, labor.

labrum, -ī, N., lip.

lāc, lactis, N., milk.

lacertus, -ī, M., arm, upper arm.

Lacōnia, -ae, F., Laconia, *a district in Greece.*

lacrima, -ae, F., tear.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, weep, cry.

lacus, -ūs, M., lake.

laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum, harm, injure.

Lāertēs, -ae, M., Laërtes, *father of Ulysses.*

laeta, *see* **laetus.**

laetitia, -ae, F., joy, happiness.

laetus, -a, -um, happy, glad.

laeva, -ae, F., the left hand.

Lāomedōn, -ontis, M., Laomedon, *a king of Troy.*

lapis, lapidis, M., a stone.

laqueus, -ī, M., noose.

Lārissa, -ae, F., Larissa, *a city of Thessaly*

lātē, *adv.*, widely

lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, be concealed.

Latīna, *see* **Latīnus.**

Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin.

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.

laudāmus, we praise.

laudant, (they) praise.
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise.
lectulus, -ī, M., couch, bed.
lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant, ambassador, envoy.
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion.
legit, (he, she) reads.
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, read.
lentē, *adv.*, slowly.
leō, -ōnis, M., lion.
Lernaeus, -a, -um, of Lerna, *a marsh near Argos.*
Lēthē, *Greek genitive form* **Lēthēs,** F., Lethe, *the river of forgetfulness in the underworld.*
lētum, -ī, N., death.
levis, -e, light, slight.
leviter, *adv.*, slightly.
lēx, lēgis, F., law.
libenter, *adv.*, willingly, with pleasure.
liber, librī, M., book.
līberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, children.
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free, release.
lībertās, -ātis, F., freedom, liberty.
lībum, -ī, N., cake.
Libya, -ae, F., Libya, *a country of northern Africa.*
licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal verb,* it is permitted, it is allowed.
Lichās, -ae, M., Lichas, *a companion of Hercules.*
ligneus, -a, -um, wooden.
lignum, -ī, N., wood; *pl.*, firewood, wood.
ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tie.
Ligurēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Ligurians, *the people of Liguria.*
Liguria, -ae, F., Liguria, *a district of northern Italy.*
līlium, -ī, N., lily.
līmen, -inis, N., threshold, door.
līmus, -ī, M., mud, mire.
lingua, -ae, F., tongue, language.
linter, -tris, F., boat, skiff.
Linus, -ī, M., Linus, *a Centaur.*
lītus, lītoris, N., shore.
loculī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, book-satchel.
locus, -ī, M. (*pl., usually neuter,* **loca, -ōrum**), place.
longa, *see* **longus.**
longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance.
longinquus, -a, -um, distant.
longus, -a, -um, long.
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
lucerna, -ae, F., lamp.
Lūcius, -ī, M., Lucius (*name of a man or boy*).
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play.
lūdus, -ī, M., play, game, school.
lūmen, -inis, N., light, a light.
lūna, -ae, F., the moon.
lūx, lūcis, F., light; **prīma lūx,** daybreak.

M

macer, -cra, -crum, lean, thin.
maga, -ae, F., enchantress.
magicus, -a, -um, magical, magic.
magis, *adv.*, more, rather.
magister, -trī, M., master, teacher.
magna, *see* **magnus.**
magnanimus, -a, -um, generous-spirited, noble.
magnitūdō, -inis, F., size, magnitude.
magnopere, *adv.*, greatly, very, very much.
magnus, -a, -um, large, great.
male, *adv.*, badly.
malum, -ī, N., evil.
malus, -a, -um, bad.
mālus, -ī, M., mast.
Mamilius, -ī, M., Mamilius, *a king of Tusculum.*

māne, *adv.*, in the morning.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain, wait.

mānēs, -ium, M. *pl.*, a departed spirit, a shade.

manet, (he, she, it) remains.

manus, -ūs, F., hand; band (*of armed men*).

Mārcus, -ī, M., Marcus (*name of a man or boy*).

mare, maris, N., sea.

marītus, -ī, M., husband.

Mārs, Mārtis, M., Mars, *the Roman god of war.*

māter, -tris, F., mother.

mātrimōnium, -ī, N., marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry.

maximē, *adv.*, especially, very, very greatly.

maximus, -a, -um, greatest.

mē (*accusative or ablative case*), me.

mea, *see* **meus.**

mēcum, with me (*see* **ego**).

medicāmentum, -ī, N., medicine.

medicus, -ī, M., doctor.

medius, -a, -um, middle, middle of, in the middle; N. *sing. as noun*, the middle.

Medūsa, -ae, F., Medusa, *a Gorgon.*

melius, *neuter comparative of* **bonus.**

membrum, -ī, N., limb.

mementō, *pl.* **mementōte**, *imperative of* **meminī.**

meminī, meminisse, remember.

memor, *gen.* **memoris**, mindful.

memoria, -ae, F., memory.

memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, mention, relate.

mendīcus, -a, -um, beggarly, needy; M. *as noun*, beggar; **senex mendīcus**, old beggar.

Menelāus, -ī, M., Menelaus, *a Greek hero.*

Menexenus, -ī, M., Menexenus, *name of a sailor in "Circe."*

mēns, mentis, F., mind.

mēnsa, -ae, F., table.

mentiō, -ōnis, F., mention.

mercātor, -ōris, M., merchant, trader.

mercēs, -ēdis, F., pay, fee.

Mercurius, -ī, M., Mercury, *the messenger-god and the god of traders.*

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, dip, plunge, sink.

merīdiē, *adv.*, at noon.

meritus, -a, -um, deserved.

Messāna, -ae, F., Messina, *a city of Sicily.*

metuō, -ere, -uī, fear.

meus, mea, meum, my, mine.

mihi, to me, me (*as indirect object*).

mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier.

mīlitāris, -e, military; **rēs mīlitāris**, the art of war.

mīlle, *num. adj.* (*pl.* **mīlia, -ium**, *neuter noun*), thousand.

minae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, threats.

Minerva, -ae, F., Minerva, *the goddess of wisdom.*

minimē, *adv.*, least, not at all, no.

minister, -trī, M., attendant.

Mīnōs, Mīnōis, M., Minos, *a judge in the lower world.*

minus, *adv.*, less.

Minyae, -ārum, M. *pl.*, the Minyae, *neighbors of the Thebans.*

mīrificus, -a, -um, wonderful.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, be surprised, wonder.

mīrus, -a, -um, strange, remarkable.

misellus, -a, -um, poor (little), unfortunate.

miser, misera, miserum, unhappy, unfortunate.

misera, *see* **miser.**

miserē, *adv.* (*superlative* **miserrimē**), miserably, wretchedly.

misericordia, -ae, F., pity.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send, shoot.

modo, *adv.*, only; **modo . . . modo,** now . . . now.

modus, -ī, M., manner, way.

moenia, -ium, N. *pl.*, walls.

mola, -ae, F., meal, coarse flour.

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, warn, advise.

mōns, montis, M., mountain.

mōnstrat, (he, she) points out.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out, show, display.

mōnstrum, -ī, N., monster.

mora, -ae, F., delay.

morbus, -ī, M., illness, disease.

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum, bite.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, die.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay.

mors, mortis, F., death.

mortifer, -era, -erum, deadly.

mortuus, -a, -um, dead; M. *sing. as noun,* a dead person.

mōs, mōris, M., custom.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move.

mox, *adv.*, soon.

mūgiō, -īre, -īvī, bellow.

mūgītus, -ūs, M., bellowing.

mulgeō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsum, milk.

mulier, -eris, F., woman.

multa, *see* **multus.**

multī, many.

multitūdō, -inis, F., multitude, large number.

multō, *adv., used with comparatives,* much.

multum, *adv* much, greatly.

multus, -a, -um, much; *pl.*, many; N. *sing. as noun,* much.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify.

mūnus, mūneris, N., service, duty.

murmurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, murmur, complain.

mūrus, -ī, M., wall.

mūsica, -ae, F., music.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, change.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, find, obtain.

nārrat, (he, she, it) tells.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tell, relate, tell a story.

natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swim, float.

nātūra, -ae, F., nature.

nātus, -a, -um, born; **duodecim annōs nātus,** twelve years old.

Naupactōus, -ī, M., Naupactous, *a companion of Ulysses.*

nauta, -ae, M., sailor.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sail, navigate.

nāvis, nāvis, F., ship, boat.

-ne, *an enclitic denoting a question to be answered by "yes" or "no."*

nē . . . quidem, not even.

nec, *see* **neque.**

necesse, *indeclinable adj.*, necessary, inevitable.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, kill.

nectar, nectaris, N., nectar, *the drink of the gods.*

nefās, *indeclinable,* N., a sin, a crime.

neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum, neglect, disregard.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse.

negōtium, -ī, N., business, task.

Nemaeus, -a, -um, Nemean, of Nemea (*a city in Greece*).

nēmō, *dat.* **nēminī,** *acc.* **nēminem,** *no gen. or abl.*, M. *and* F., no one, nobody.

nepōs, -ōtis, M., grandson.
Neptūnus, -ī, M., Neptune, *god of the sea.*
nēquāquam, *adv.*, by no means.
neque *or* **nec,** *conj.*, nor, and . . . not; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
nervus, -ī, M., bow-string.
nesciō, -īre, -īvī, not know.
Nessus, -ī, M., Nessus, *a Centaur.*
neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.
niger, -gra, -grum, black.
nihil, *indeclinable,* N., nothing.
nīl, *same as* **nihil.**
nimis, *adv.*, too, too much.
nisi, *conj.*, unless, except, if not.
nix, nivis, F., snow.
nō, nāre, nāvī, swim.
nōbilis, -e, noble; M. *pl. as noun,* the nobles.
noctū, *adv.*, at night.
nocturnus, -a, -um, at night, night (*as adjective*).
nōlī, *pl.* **nōlīte,** be unwilling, do not; *imperative of* **nōlō.**
nōlīte, *see* **nōlī.**
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, not wish.
nōmen, -inis, N., name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.
nōnne, *a word used to introduce a question implying an affirmative answer.*
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some; *pl.*, several.
nōs (*nominative and accusative*), we, us.
noster, -tra, -trum, our.
nostra, *see* **noster.**
nōta, *see* **nōtus.**
nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar.
novem, *numeral adj.*, nine.
nōvī, nōvisse, know (*perfect of* **nōscō,** learn).
novissimus, -a, -um (*superlative of* **novus**), last, latest.
novus, -a, -um, new; **quid novī,** what news?
nox, noctis, F., night.
nūbēs, nūbis, F., cloud.
nūbilō, -āre, be cloudy, cloud up.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, marry (*takes dative*).
nūgae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, jests, nonsense; **aufer nūgās,** enough of this nonsense.
nūllus, -a, -um, no, none.
num, *a word used to introduce a question implying a negative answer.*
numerus, -ī, M., number.
nummus, -ī, M., a coin.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, announce, report.
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger.
nūper, *adv.*, recently, a little while ago.
nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere.
nympha, -ae, F., nymph.

O

Ō, *interjection,* O, oh!
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, offer.
obscūra, *see* **obscūrus.**
obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, darken.
obscūrus, -a, -um, dark, dim.
obserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, cover, fill.
obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, stop up, bar.
obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold, possess.
occāsiō, -ōnis, F., opportunity.
occāsus, -ūs, M., setting.
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, meet.

Ōceanus, -ī, M., the ocean.

Octāvia, -ae, F., Octavia (*name of a woman or girl*).

octō, *numeral adj.*, eight.

oculus, -ī, M., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus (*perfect tense with present meaning*), hate.

odiōsus, -a, -um, hateful.

odor, -ōris, M., smell, odor.

Oechalia, -ae, F., Oechalia, *a town of Euboea.*

Oeneus, -ī, M., Oeneus, *father of Deianira.*

Oeta, -ae, F., Oeta, *a mountain in Thessaly.*

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, offend.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, offer.

officium, -ī, N., service.

ohē, *interjection,* hello, hello there; oh, oho!

olfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, smell.

ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time.

Olympus, -ī, M., Olympus, *a mountain north of Greece.*

omnīnō, *adv.*, entirely.

omnis, -e, all.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, load.

opera, -ae, F., effort, labor.

opīniō, -ōnis, F., opinion, expectation.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, it is proper, one ought.

oppidum, -ī, N., town.

opportūnus, -a, -um, opportune.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, overcome, overpower.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack.

(ops), opis, F., power; *pl.*, resources.

optimē, *adv.*, best, in the best way.

optimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, best.

opus, operis, N., work, task.

ōra maritima, seacoast.

ōrāculum, -ī, N., oracle.

Orbilius, -ī, M., Orbilius (*a Roman name*).

orbis, orbis, M., circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world, the earth.

Orcus, -ī, M., Orcus, *the lower world.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, M., line, rank, order.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adorn.

ōs, ōris, N., mouth.

ostendit, (he, she, it) shows.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, show, display.

ōstium, -ī, N., door, mouth.

ovīle, ovīlis, N., sheep-pen.

ovis, ovis, F., sheep.

P

pābulum, -ī, N., pasture, feed (*for animals*).

paene, *adv.*, almost.

palaestra, -ae, F., wrestling-place, place of exercise.

Palātium, -ī, N., the Palatine Hill.

palma, -ae, F., palm, hand.

palūs, -ūdis, F., swamp, marsh.

pānis, pānis, M., bread.

pannōsus, -a, -um, ragged.

pannus, -ī, M., a cloth.

parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī (*takes dative*), obey.

pariter, *adv.*, equally.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare, obtain, get.

pars, partis, F., part, direction; side.

partior, -īrī, partītus sum, share, divide.

parum, *adv. and indeclinable noun*, too little, insufficiently, little.

parva, *see* **parvus**.

parvulus, -a, -um, little; M. *pl. as noun*, little boys.

parvus, -a, -um, small, little.

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstum, pasture; *in passive*, graze.

passus, -ūs, M., pace; **mīlle passūs** *or* **mīlle passuum**, a mile.

pāstor, -ōris, M., shepherd.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, open, lay open.

pater, patris, M., father.

patera, -ae, F., a flat dish *or* bowl, a platter.

patiēns, *gen.* **-entis**, long-enduring.

patior, patī, passus sum, endure.

patria, -ae, F., native country, country.

patrius, -a, -um, of one's father; of one's native country.

paucī, -ae, -a, few, a few.

paulō, *adv.*, a little, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat; a little way.

pavidus, -a, -um, trembling, alarmed, terrified.

pavor, -ōris, M., terror, alarm.

pāx, pācis, F., peace.

pectus, pectoris, N., breast.

pecūnia, -ae, F., money.

pecus, pecoris, N., cattle, flock, herd.

pecus, pecudis, F., a head of cattle, beast; *pl.*, flock, herd.

pellis, pellis, F., skin.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive, rout.

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, hang.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, pay.

pēnsum, -ī, N., task, lesson.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, all along.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, perceive, feel.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, strike.

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, destroy, ruin, lose.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead, bring.

peregrīnus, -ī, M., foreigner.

perennis, -e, lasting through the year, perpetual.

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, perish.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, complete.

perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous.

perīculōsa, *see* **perīculōsus**.

perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous.

perīculum, -ī, N., danger.

perītē, *adv.*, skillfully.

perpetuus, -a, -um, continuous.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through, break.

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, describe fully.

Perseus, -ī, M., Perseus, *a Greek hero.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, pay.

persōna, -ae, F., person, character (*in a play*).

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (*takes dative*), persuade

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, terrify.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, throw into disorder.

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive, come.

pēs, pedis, M., foot.

pessimus, -a, -um, worst.

petō, -ere, petiī *or* **petīvī, petītum**, seek, look for; ask, ask for; attack.

Phaeācēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Phaeacians.

Philippus, -ī, M., Philippus, *name of a sailor in "Circe."*

Pholus, -ī, M., Pholus, *a Centaur.*

pictūra, -ae, F., picture.

piger, -gra, -grum, lazy.

piscātor, -ōris, M., fisherman.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please.

plāga, -ae, F., blow.

plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausum, clap.

plēnus, -a, -um, full.

plūrēs, plūra, *gen.* **plūrium** (*pl. of* **plūs**), more, several, many.

plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very much; *pl.*, very many.

Plūtō, -ōnis, M., Pluto, *god of the lower world.*

pōculum, -ī, N., cup; dose.

poena, -ae, F., punishment; **poenās dare,** pay the penalty, be punished.

poēta, -ae, M., poet.

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

Polydectēs, -is, M., Polydectes, *king of Seriphus.*

Polyphēmus, -ī, M., Polyphemus, *a Cyclops.*

Pompeiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, Pompeii, *a city of ancient Italy.*

pōmum, -ī, N., apple.

pondus, ponderis, N., weight.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch.

pōns, pontis, M., bridge.

populus, -ī, M., a people.

porcus, -ī, M., pork.

Porsena, -ae, M., Porsena, *a king of the Etruscans.*

porta, -ae, F., gate, door.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.

portus, -ūs, M., harbor.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand, request, ask for.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, have.

possum, posse, potuī, be able, can.

post, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, after, behind; afterwards, later.

posteā, *adv.*, afterwards, thereafter.

posterus, -a, -um, following, next.

postquam, *conj.*, after.

postrēmus, -a, -um, last.

postrīdiē, *adv.*, on the next day.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand.

potēns, *gen.* **-entis,** powerful.

potentia, -ae, F., power.

praebeō, -ēre, praebuī, praebitum, exhibit, show.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, impose upon.

praecipuē, *adv.*, especially.

praeclārus, -a, -um, very famous.

praeda, -ae, F., booty, prey.

praeditus, -a, -um, endowed with, provided with.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*takes dative*), put in charge of, put in command of.

praemium, -ī, N., reward.

praestāns, *gen.* **-stantis,** extraordinary.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, exhibit, show, furnish.

praesum, praeesse, praefuī (*takes dative*), be in command of, be in charge of.

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, past; in addition to, except.

praetereā, *adv.*, in addition, besides.

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, pray, beg, beg for, implore.

prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, take hold of.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press, press hard.

pretiōsus, -a, -um, expensive, costly.

pretium, -ī, N., price.

prīdem, *adv.*, long ago.

prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, first.

prīnceps, -cipis, M., chief, prince.

prior, prius, first, in advance.

prīstinus, -a, -um, former.

priusquam, *conj.*, before.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, for, in return for, on behalf of; before, in front of.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approve, approve of.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, proceed, advance.

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, far.

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, come forward, come forth.

proelium, -ī, N., battle.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out, start.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, advance, proceed.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, forbid, prevent, hinder.

prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, hurl down; throw to.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, promise.

prōmunturium, -ī, N., promontory.

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near.

properant, (they) hasten.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hurry, hasten.

propinqua, *see* **propinquus.**

propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, relate; offer.

proprius, -a, -um, one's own, own.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

Prōserpina, -ae, F., Proserpina (Proserpine), *queen of the lower world.*

prōspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look forth, look, look toward.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, knock down.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, benefit, help.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, protect.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward; **aetāte prōvectus,** well on in years.

Proxenus, -ī, M., Proxenus, *a companion of Ulysses.*

proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.

prūdēns, *gen.* **-entis,** prudent, far-seeing.

Pūblius, -ī, M., Publius (*name of a man or boy*).

puella, -ae, F., girl.

puer, puerī, M., boy.

pugna, -ae, F., fight, battle.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight.

pugnus, -ī, M., fist.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful.

pulchra, *see* **pulcher.**

pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, knock, knock at *or* upon.

Pulvillus, -ī, M., Pulvillus, *a Roman consul.*

pūnctum, -ī, N., point, moment.

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, punish.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, clean, cleanse.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.

Pȳthia, -ae, F., Pythia, *the priestess of Apollo at Delphi.*

Q

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, inquire, ask; search for.

quālis, -e, what sort of, what kind of.

quam, *adv.*, how, as, than; **quam prīmum,** as soon as; *with superlatives,* as . . . as possible.

quamquam, *conj.*, although.

quandō, *adv.*, when?

quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great; **quantum** (*as noun*), how much; (*as adverb*), how greatly, how.

quārē, *adv.*, why.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quasi, *adv.*, as if.

quatiō, -ere, —, quassum, shake.

quattuor, *numeral adj.*, four.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

quendam, *see* **quīdam.**

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that; *interrog. adj.*, what?

quia, *conj.*, because.

quid, what?

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* **quiddam,** a certain, some one, some.

quidem, *adv.* (*never stands first in its clause*), indeed, certainly; **nē . . . quidem,** not even.

quiēs, -ētis, F., rest.

quīnquāgintā, *numeral adj.*, fifty.

quīnque, *numeral adj.*, five.

quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.

Quīntus, -ī, M., Quintus (*name of a man or boy*).

quis, quid, who, what?

quisquam, quicquam *or* **quidquam,** anyone, anything.

quisque, quidque, each, each one, each man.

quisquis, quicquid, whoever, whatever.

quō, *adv.*, to what place, whither, where.

quod, *adv.*, because.

quō modo (quōmodo), *adv.*, how?

quoniam, *conj.*, since, because.

quoque, *conj.* (*never stands first in its clause*), also.

quot, *indeclinable adj.*, how many.

quotannīs, *adv.*, every year, yearly.

quotiēns, *adv.*, as often as.

quotus, -a, -um, which in number? what? **quota hōra,** what hour?

quousque, *adv.*, how long?

R

rāmus, -ī, M., branch, bough.

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; **sē recipere,** to withdraw, to betake oneself, to recover.

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew, refresh.

rēctā, *adv.*, directly.

rēctē, *adv.*, rightly.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, give; render.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew.

reditus, -ūs, M., return.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back, bring; **grātiam referre,** to repay in appropriate manner, to make a return.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee.

rēgia, -ae, F., palace.

rēgīna, -ae, F., queen.

regiō, -ōnis, F., region, district.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, N., kingdom, royal power.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, direct, rule.

rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw away, throw back.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave.

reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.

relūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, struggle against, resist.

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, reward.

Remus, -ī, M., Remus, *the brother of Romulus.*

rēmus, -ī, M., oar.

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report.

repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repel.

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, find.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill.

repōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, put away, keep.

rēs, reī, F., thing, affair, fact, circumstance.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī (*takes dative*), resist.

respīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe.

respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsum, reply, answer.

respōnsum, -ī, N., reply, answer.

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, restore.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, retain, restrain.

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw back.

rettulī, *perfect of* **referō.**

revēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reveal.

reveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come back (to), return.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *or* **revertor, -vertī, -versus sum** (*active regularly in perfect, past perfect, and future perfect only*), return.

rēx, rēgis, M., king.

Rhadamanthus, -ī, M., Rhadamanthus, *a judge in the lower world.*

Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhodius, -ī, M., Rhodius, *a companion of Ulysses.*

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh.

rīdiculus, -a, -um, absurd, ridiculous.

rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*).

rīsus, -ūs, M., laughter, laugh.

rītē, *adv.*, in a proper manner.

rīvus, -ī, M., stream.

rōbustus, -a, -um, strong.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask.

rogus, -ī, M., funeral pile.

Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; M. *as noun,* a Roman; *pl.*, the Romans.

Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus, *the founder of Rome.*

rosa, -ae, F., rose.

rōstrum, -ī, N., beak, prow.

ruīna, -ae, F. (*often in the plural*), ruins.

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, break down, break.

ruō, -ere, ruī, rush.

rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff.

rūrsus, *adv.*, again.

S

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, M., F., a priest, a priestess.

sacrificium, -ī, N., sacrifice.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, offer sacrifice, sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage.

sagāx, *gen.* **sagācis,** shrewd, sagacious.

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow.

sagittārius, -ī, M., archer.

sāl, salis, M., salt.

salsus, -a, -um, salted.

saltem, *adv.*, at least.

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dance.

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, greet.

salvē, *pl.* **salvēte** (*imperative of* **salveō**), hail, welcome, how do you do?

salvus, -a, -um, safe.

sānē, *adv.*, of course.
sanguis, sanguinis, M., blood.
sānitās, -ātis, F., sanity.
sapiēns, *gen.* **-entis**, wise.
satis, *adv.*, enough
saxum, -ī, N., stone, a stone, rock.
scaena, -ae, F., scene.
scapha, -ae, F., skiff, boat.
scelerātus, -a, -um, wicked; M. *as noun*, wretch, scoundrel.
scelus, sceleris, N., crime.
schola, -ae, F., school.
scientia, -ae, F., knowledge, skill.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know, know how.
scrībit, (he, she) writes.
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write.
scūtum, -ī, N., shield.
sēcum, with himself, herself, itself, themselves.
secundus, -a, -um, second.
secūris, -is, F., ax.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sēdecim, *numeral adj.*, sixteen.
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit, be seated.
sēdēs, -is, F., residence, abode.
semper, *adv.*, always.
senātor, -ōris, M., senator.
senātus, -ūs, M., senate.
senectūs, -ūtis, F., old age.
senex, senis, M., old man.
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, notice, think, know.
sēparat, *see* **sēparō**.
sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, separate.
sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, bury.
septem, *numeral adj.*, seven.
sepultūra, -ae, F., burial.
sepultus, -a, -um (*participle of* **sepeliō**), overcome, buried.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow, pursue.
Serīphus, -ī, F., Seriphus, *an island in the Aegean Sea.*
sermō, -ōnis, M., conversation.
sērō, *adv.*, late, too late.
serpēns, -entis, F., serpent, snake.
servitūs, -ūtis, F., servitude, slavery.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save, preserve.
servus, -ī, M., slave, servant.
Sextus, -ī, M., Sextus (*name of a man or boy*); Sextus Tarquinius, *son of Tarquinius Superbus.*
sī, *conj.*, if; **sī quis**, if anyone.
sīc, *adv.*, thus, so.
siccus, -a, -um, dry.
Sicilia, -ae, F., Sicily.
signifer, -erī, M., standard-bearer.
signum, -ī, N., sign, mark, standard, signal.
silentium, -ī, N., silence.
sileō, -ēre, -uī, be silent.
silva, -ae, F., forest.
similis, -e, like, similar.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time.
simulātus, -a, -um, pretended, fictitious.
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pretend.
sīn, *conj.*, but if; **sīn minus**, if not.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singulī, -ae, -a, one by one, one at a time.
sinistra, -ae, F., left hand, left.
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, permit, allow.
sinus, -ūs, M., a fold, bosom.
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, thirst, be thirsty.
situs, -ūs, M., site, location.
sīve, *or* seu, *conj.*, whether, or if; **sīve . . . sīve**, whether . . . or, either . . . or.
socius, -ī, M., ally, comrade.
sōl, sōlis, M., the sun.
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.

solitus, -a, -um, customary, usual.
solium, -ī, N., throne.
sōlum, *adv.*, only, merely.
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only.
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loosen, unfasten, pay; *of ships, with or without* **nāvem,** weigh anchor, set sail.
somnus, -ī, M., sleep.
sonitus, -ūs, M., sound.
sonōrus, -a, -um, sonorous.
sonus, -ī, M., sound.
soror, -ōris, F., sister.
sors, sortis, F., lot.
Sparta, -ae, F., Sparta, *a city of Greece.*
spatium, -ī, N., space.
speciēs, -ēī, F., appearance, aspect.
spectātor, -ōris, M., spectator.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, watch, look at, look.
speculum, -ī, N., mirror.
spēlunca, -ae, F., cave, cavern.
spēs, speī, F., hope.
splendidus, -a, -um, splendid.
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plunder.
(spōns, spontis), F., *only abl.* **sponte,** *usually with* **meā, tuā, suā,** of one's own accord, voluntarily.
Spurius, -ī, M., Spurius, *a Roman name;* **Spurius Lartius,** *a Roman senator.*
squālidus, -a, -um, squalid, dirty.
squālor, -ōris, M., squalor, filth.
stabulum, -ī, N., stable, stall.
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
statua, -ae, F., statue.
stella, -ae, F., star.
stīpendium, -ī, N., tribute.
stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand.
stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, strip, draw, draw tight.
studeō, -ēre, studuī (*takes dative*), apply oneself, study.
studiōsus, -a, -um, studious.
stultus, -a, -um, foolish.
Stymphālis, *gen.* **-idis,** Stymphalian.
Stymphālus, -ī, M., Stymphalus, *a town of Greece.*
Styx, Stygis, F., the Styx, *a river of the lower world.*
suāvis, -e, sweet, agreeable.
sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under.
subdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, put under, set to.
subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, undergo.
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.
sublicius, -a, -um, resting on piles; **pōns sublicius,** a pile bridge.
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, succeed, take the place of.
succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down.
suī, *dat.* **sibi,** *acc. and abl.* **sē,** *third person, sing. and pl., reflexive pronoun,* of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
suibus, *dative and ablative plural of* **sūs.**
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be.
summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, remove.
summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest, utmost; highest part of, top of.
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, take up, assume.
sunt, (they) are.
superbia, -ae, F., pride, haughtiness.
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty.
superior, -ius, higher, preceding.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, defeat, overcome.
supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, remain, be left.
supplex, *gen.* **supplicis,** M. *and* F., suppliant.
supplicium, -ī, N., punishment.
supplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pray to.
suprā, *adv.*, above, before.
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, rise.

sūs, suis, M., hog; *pl.*, swine.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake.

suspīciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold up, withstand.

suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their, *in reflexive meaning;* his own, her own, its own, their own.

T

tabernāculum, -ī, N., tent.

taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, be silent

Taenarum, -ī, N., Taenarum, *a promontory on the coast of Greece.*

tālāria, -ium, N. *pl.*, winged sandals.

tālis, -e, such.

tam, *adv.*, so; **tam . . . quam,** as . . . as.

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, however.

tandem, *adv.*, at length.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch.

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large; **tantus . . . quantus,** as large . . . as.

Tarquinius, -ī, M., Tarquinius Superbus, *a king of Rome.*

Tartarus, -ī, M., Tartarus, *the place of punishment in the lower world.*

taurus, -ī, M., bull.

tē, *see* **tū.**

tēctum, -ī, N., house, roof.

tēcum, with you (*see* **tū**).

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect.

tēla, -ae, F., web (*a piece of cloth in a loom*).

tēlum, -ī, N., weapon.

temerārius, -a, -um, rash.

tempestās, -ātis, F., storm, weather.

templum, -ī, N., temple.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try

tempus, -oris, N., time.

tenebrae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, darkness.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, hold, hold to; keep back.

tergum, -ī, N., back, rear.

ternī, -ae, -a, three by three, by groups of three.

terra, -ae, F., land, the earth.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum, frighten.

terribilis, -e, terrible, dreadful.

terror, -ōris, M., terror, fright.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

texō, -ere, texuī, textum, weave.

Thēbae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, Thebes, *a city of Greece.*

Thēbānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Thebans.

Thermōdōn, -ontis, M., the Thermodon, *a river in Asia Minor.*

Thessalia, -ae, F., Thessaly.

Thrācia, -ae, F., Thrace.

Tiberis, -is, M., the Tiber, *a river of Italy.*

tibi, to you, you (*as indirect object*).

timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear.

timet, (he, she, it) fears.

timidus, -a, -um, timid, cowardly.

timor, -ōris, M., fear.

Tīryns, Tīrynthis, F., Tiryns, *a city in Greece.*

Titus, -ī, M., Titus (*name of a boy or man*); Titus Herminius, *a Roman senator.*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift.

torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostum, roast.

tostus, -a, -um, roasted.

tot, *indeclinable adj.*, so many.

tōtus, -a, -um, the whole, all.

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat; handle.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, surrender, give up; report.

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across, bring across.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, drag, draw, pull.
trājectus, -ūs, M., crossing, passage.
trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, pierce.
tranquillē, *adv.*, quietly.
tranquillitās, -ātis, F., a calm *at sea.*
tranquillus, -a, -um, calm, still.
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, cross.
trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, pierce.
trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry across, transport.
trānsvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, convey across.
tredecim, *numeral adj.*, thirteen.
tremō, -ere, -uī, tremble.
trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be in confusion, hurry about in alarm.
trēs, tria, three.
tribūtum, -ī, N., tribute; *pl.*, tribute, indemnity.
triumphus, -ī, M., triumph.
Trōja, -ae, F., Troy.
Trōjānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Trojans.
tū, *gen.* **tuī,** you (*of one person*).
tua, *see* **tuus.**
tum, *adv.*, then.
turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb.
turpis, -e, disgraceful.
Tusculum, -ī, N., Tusculum, *a town not far from Rome.*
tūtō, *adv.*, safely.
tūtus, -a, -um, safe.
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*of one person*).

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.
ubinam, *adv.*, where in the world, where?
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, punish, take vengeance on.
Ulixēs, Ulixis, M., Ulysses, *a Greek hero.*
ūllus, -a, -um, any.
ulterior, -ius, farther.
ultimus, -a, -um, last.
ululō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, howl, bark.
umerus, -ī, M., upper arm, shoulder.
umquam, *adv.*, ever.
unda, -ae, F., wave.
unde, *adv.*, from where, whence.
ūndecimus, -a, -um, eleventh.
undique, *adv.*, on all sides, from all sides.
ūnus, -a, -um, one; **ad ūnum,** to a man.
urbs, urbis, F., city.
urna, -ae, F., jar, pitcher.
usque, *adv.*, all the way, even; **usque ad,** as far as, until.
ūsus, -ūs, M., experience.
ut, *adv.*, as, when, how.
uter, -tra, -trum, which (*of two*)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each *of two*, both.
uxor, -ōris, F., wife.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, vacant, empty.
vae, *interjection*, woe, alas (for)!
vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander.
valdē, *adv.*, very, very much.
valē, farewell, good-by (*imperative of* valeō).
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be well, be strong.
Valerius, -ī, M., Valerius, *a Roman consul.*
validus, -a, -um, strong, well.
vallēs, vallis, F., valley.
vāllum, -ī, N., rampart, wall.
vāpulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*active forms translated as passive*), be beaten, be whipped.
varius, -a, -um, various, different.
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste, destroy.

vehementer, *adv.*, violently, strongly, earnestly, very much, very.
vel, *adv.*, even; *conj.*, or.
vellus, velleris, N., fleece.
vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, envelop, veil.
venēnum, -ī, N., poison, magic drug.
veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, worship, reverence.
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come.
venter, ventris, M., stomach, belly.
ventus, -ī, M., wind.
verbera, -um, N. *pl.*, blows.
verbum, -ī, N., word.
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, fear.
vērō, *adv.*, in truth, indeed. *See* **immō**.
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn.
vērus, -a, -um, true; **vērum** *or* **vēra** *as noun*, the truth.
vēscor, vēscī, feed upon.
Vespasiānus, -ī, M., Vespasian, *a Roman name;* **Flavius Vespasiānus**, *the Roman emperor* Vespasian.
vesper, -erī, M., evening.
vesperī, in the evening.
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*of more than one person*).
vēstīgium, -ī, N., footstep, track.
vestīmentum, -ī, N., garment, coverlet, blanket.
vestis, vestis, F., garment, clothing.
vestītus, -ūs, M., clothing.
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid.
via, -ae, F., street, road, way.
viātor, -ōris, M., traveler.
victī, -ōrum, M. *pl.* (*past participle of* **vincō** *as noun*), the conquered, the vanquished.
victima, -ae, F., victim (*for sacrifice*).
victōria, -ae, F., victory.
vidēmus, we see.
vident, (they) see.
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see.
videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, seem.
videt, (he, she, it) sees.
vigil, vigilis, M., sentinel.
vigilia, -ae, F., watch (*a division of time*).
vīgintī, *numeral adj.*, twenty.
villa, -ae, F., farmhouse, country house.
vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, bind.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat.
vinculum, -ī, N., chain, bond.
vīnum, -ī, N., wine.
vir, virī, M., man, husband.
vīrēs, *plural of* **vīs**.
virgō, virginis, F., young woman, maiden, virgin.
virtūs, -ūtis, F., manhood, manly spirit, courage.
vīs, F., violence, force; *pl.* **vīrēs, vīrium**, strength.
vīs, *second person of* **volō**, wish.
vīta, -ae, F., life.
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid.
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live, be alive.
vīvus, -a, -um, alive.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call.
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, fly.
volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing.
voluntās, -ātis, F., will, wish.
vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, devour.
vōs, you (*plural nominative and accusative*).
vōx, vōcis, F., voice; **magna vōx**, a loud voice; **parva vōx**, a low voice.
Vulcānus, -ī, M., Vulcan, *the god of fire.*
vulnerātus, -a, -um (*participle of* **vulnerō** *as adj.*), wounded.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound.
vulnus, vulneris, N., a wound.
vulpēs, vulpis, F., fox.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able, be able, possum, posse, potuī.
about, dē, *prep. with abl.*
absent, be absent, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
accept, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
account, on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*
admire, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
advance, prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
after (*preposition*), post, *prep. with acc.*
again, iterum, *adv.*
aid, auxilium, -ī, N.
alive, vīvus, -a, -um.
all, omnis, -e.
ally, socius, -ī, M.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
also, quoque; etiam, *advs.*
always, semper, *adv.*
America, America, -ae, F.
and, et, -que, *conjs.*
animal, bēstia, -ae, F.; animal, animālis, N.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
another, alius, -a, -ud.
answer, respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
appear, appāreō, -ēre, -uī.
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
archer, sagittārius, -ī, M.
armed, armātus, -a, -um.
arms, arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.
arouse, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
ask, interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
assemble, conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
at length, tandem, *adv.*
at once, statim, *adv.*
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.
attack (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
aunt, amita, -ae, F.
await, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
away, be away, be distant, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
ax, secūris, secūris, F.

B

bad, malus, -a, -um.
badge, īnsigne, -is, N.
bank, rīpa, -ae, F.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, M.
battle, proelium, -ī, N.
be, am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
beast, bēstia, -ae, F.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, *conj.*
before (*conjunction*), antequam.
before (*preposition*), ante, *prep. with acc.*
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum.
begin, incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
behind, post, *prep. with acc.*
believe, crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
bend, flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
bird, avis, avis, F.
blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
boat, nāvis, nāvis, F.
body, corpus, corporis, N.
boldness, audācia, -ae, F.
book, liber, librī, M.
bow, arcus, -ūs, M.
boy, puer, puerī, M.
branch, rāmus, -ī, M.
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
bread, pānis, pānis, M.
break, perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum.
break down, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bright, clārus, -a, -um.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
bring, bring into, addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
brother, frāter, frātris, M.
building, aedificium, -ī, N.
but, sed, *conj.*
by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*

C

call, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
can, be able, possum, posse, potuī.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
cavalry, equitēs, -um, M. *pl.*
cave, antrum, -ī, N.; caverna, -ae, F.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
certain, certus, -a, -um; **to be certain**, prō certō habēre; **a certain** (person *or* thing), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* quoddam.
chain, vinculum, -ī, N.
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
child, īnfāns, īnfantis, M. *and* F.
choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Circe, Circē, Circae, F.
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, M. *and* F.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum.
cloud, nūbēs, nūbis, F.
collect, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
command, be in command of, praesum, praeesse, praefuī.
companion, comes, comitis, M.
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.
controversy, contrōversia, -ae, F.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.
cottage, casa, -ae, F.
country, terra, -ae, F.; (**native**) **country**, patria, -ae, F.
courage, virtūs, virtūtis, F.
cousin (*a girl or woman*), cōnsōbrīna, -ae, F.
cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.
credible, crēdibilis, -e.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
cup, pōculum, -ī, N.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, N.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, diēī, M. *and* F.
daybreak, prīma lūx.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deer, cervus, -ī, M.
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum.
delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum.
desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
despair of, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum; dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum.
dim, obscūrus, -a, -um.
dinner, cēna, -ae, F.
divide, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum.
dog, canis, canis, M. *and* F.
door, jānua, -ae, F.
doubt, dubium, -ī, N.
drink, bibō, -ere, bibī.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
drive out, expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum.
duty, officium, -ī, N.

E

easily, facile, *adv.*
easy, facilis, -e.
eat, edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum.
eight, octō, *indeclinable numeral.*
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
enchantress, maga, -ae, F.
end, fīnis, fīnis, M.
enemy, inimīcus, -ī, M. (*a personal enemy*); hostis, hostis, M. (*a public enemy*).
energetic, impiger, -gra, -grum.
enter, intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
escape, effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus.
Etruscan, Etrūscus, -ī, M.
Eumaeus, Eumaeus, -ī, M.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, F.
evening, in the evening, vesperī.
everything, omnia (*neuter pl. of* omnis).
exile, exul, exulis, M.
expect, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
expensive, pretiōsus, -a, -um.
eye, oculus, -ī, M.

F

fact, *see* **thing.**
faithful, fidēlis, -e.
faithless, perfidus, -a, -um.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, longē, *adv.*
farewell, valē, *pl.* valēte.
farmer, agricola, -ae, M.
farmhouse, villa, -ae, F.
father, pater, patris, M.
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
few, a few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, M.
fierce, ferus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris, ācre.
fiercely, ācriter, *adv.*
fifty, quīnquāgintā, *indeclinable numeral.*
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
finally, dēnique, *adv.*
find, inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

fire, ignis, ignis, M.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque, *indeclinable numeral.*
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fleece, vellus, velleris, N.
flight, fuga, -ae, F.
flock, grex, gregis, M.
flow, fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum.
flower, flōs, flōris, M.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
food, cibus, -ī, M.
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
for, on behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
forehead, frōns, frontis, F.
forest, silva, -ae, F.
form (*noun*), fōrma, -ae, F.
form (*a plan*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
formerly, ōlim, *adv.*
fort, castellum, -ī, N.
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
found, condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
four, quattuor, *indeclinable numeral.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
from, ē, ex; dē; ā, ab, *preps. with abl.*
front, in front of, ante, *prep. with acc.;* prō, *prep. with abl.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um.
Fulvia, Fulvia, -ae, F.

G

garden, hortus, -ī, M.
gate, porta, -ae, F.
Gaul (*a country*), Gallia, -ae, F.
Gaul (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*), Gallus, -ī, M.
general, imperātor, -ōris, M.
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
girl, puella, -ae, F.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
go, eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum; **go out, go forth,** exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; **go away,** abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
god, a god, deus, deī (*pl.* dī), M.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um; **very good,** optimus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
grass, grāmen, grāminis, N.
Great Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
greatly, magnopere, *adv.*
Greek, a Greek, Graecus, -ī, M.
greet, salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
ground, on the ground, humī.
guard, custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
guest, hospes, hospitis, M.

H

hall, ātrium, -ī, N.
happy, laetus -a, -um; fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis.
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hate, ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
he, is, *gen.* ejus.
head, caput, capitis, N.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -dinis, F.
helmet, galea, -ae, F.
help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, N.
help (*verb*), juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.
her, *when reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, ejus.
here, hīc, *adv.*
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, collis, M.
himself, herself, itself, *reflexive, gen.* suī (*dat.* sibi, *acc. and abl.* sē *or* sēsē).
his, her, its, *when reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, ejus.
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
home, domus, -ūs, F.; **at home,** domī.

honor, honor, honōris, M.
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, M.
horn, cornū, -ūs, N.
horse, equus, -ī, M.
hour, hōra, -ae, F.
house, tēctum, -ī, N.
how, quam, *adv.*
hungry, be hungry, hunger, ēsuriō, -īre.
hurry, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
husband, vir, virī, M.; marītus, -ī, M.

I

I, ego, *gen.* meī.
if, sī, *conj.*
ill, aeger, -gra, -grum.
immortal, immortālis, -e.
impudent, impudēns, *gen.* impudentis.
in, in, *prep. with abl.*
in front of, ante, *prep. with acc.*; prō, *prep. with abl.*
in vain, frūstrā, *adv.*
industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, M. *and* F.
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, F.
is, est.
island, īnsula, -ae, F.
it, is, ea, id.
Italy, Italia, -ae, F.

J

jar, amphora, -ae, F.
javelin, jaculum, -ī, N.; pīlum, -ī, N.
jump, jump down, dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum.

K

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
kind, benignus, -a, -um.
kindle, accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, N.
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.
known, well known, nōtus, -a, -um.

L

lake, lacus, -ūs, M.
lamb, agnus, -ī, M.
lamp, lucerna, -ae, F.
land, terra, -ae, F.; **native land**, patria, -ae, F.
language, lingua, -ae, F.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
late, sērō, *adv.*
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
law, lēx, lēgis, F.
lay down, dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
leader, dux, ducis, M.
learn, discō, -ere, didicī.
leave, relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictum.
left, left hand, sinistra, -ae, F.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
less, minus, *adv.*
let down, dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
letter, epistula, -ae, F.
lie, jaceō, -ēre, -uī.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
life, vīta, -ae, F.
light, lūx, lūcis, F.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
long, longus, -a, -um.
long, for a long time, diū, *adv.*
look, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

look around, circumspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lose, āmitto, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum.
loud, magnus, -a, -um.
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

M

maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae, F.
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
make war on, bellum īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum.
man, vir, virī, M.; homō, hominis, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march (*noun*), iter, itineris, N.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.
master, dominus, -ī, M.
me, *as direct object,* mē; *as indirect object,* mihi.
Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, M.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
Messina, Messāna, -ae, F.
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um.
mine, *see* **my.**
money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
monster, mōnstrum, -ī, N.
moon, lūna, -ae, F.
morning, in the morning, māne, *adv.*
mother, māter, mātris, F.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
murmur, murmurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
my, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, N.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, F.
native country, patria, -ae, F.
near (*adjective*), propinquus, -a, -um.
near (*preposition*), prope, *prep. with acc.*
neglect, neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, M.
never, numquam, *adv.*
nevertheless, tamen, *adv.*
night, nox, noctis, F.; **at night,** noctū, *adv.*
no (*adjective*), nūllus, -a, -um; **no longer,** nōn jam.
noble, the nobles, nōbilēs, -ium, M. *pl.*
nobody, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem (*gen. and abl. from* nūllus).
nor, neque, *conj.*
not, nōn, *adv.*
not yet, nōndum, *adv.*
now, nunc, *adv.*
number, numerus, -ī, M.

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī.
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.
often, saepe, *adv.*
old man, senex, *gen.* senis, M.
on, in, *prep. with abl.*
on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
on all sides, undique, *adv.*
once, at once, statim, *adv.*
one by one, singulī, -ae, -a.
open (*adjective*), apertus, -a, -um.
open (*verb*), aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum.
order, jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum.
others, the others, reliquī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*; cēterī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
outside, extrā, *prep. with acc.*

P

Palatine (Hill), Palātium, -ī, N.
part, pars, partis, F.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, -ī, M.
perhaps, fortasse, *adv.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.

picture, pictūra, -ae, F.
pierce, trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum.
place (*noun*), locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, N.).
place (*verb*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
place in command of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
pleasant, amoenus, -a, -um.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
point out, mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis.
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prepared, parātus, -a, -um.
present, dōnum, -ī, N.
(**be**) **present,** adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, M.
protect, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.
Publius, Pūblius, -ī, M.
pull, trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum.
punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
punishment, poena, -ae, F.
put out, extinguō, -tinguere, -tīnxī, -tīnctum.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, F.
quickly, celeriter, *adv.*

R

ram, ariēs, arietis, M.
rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
rear, tergum, -ī, N.
receive, excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum; accipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
recognize, agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitum.
redoubt, castellum, -ī, N.
region, regiō, -ōnis, F.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
renew, renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reply, respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsum.
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
reputation, fāma, -ae, F.
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī.
restore, restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
return (*noun*), reditus, -ūs, M.
return (*verb*), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
right, right hand, dextra, -ae, F.
rise, surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum.
river, flūmen, flūminis, N.
road, iter, itineris, N.; via, -ae, F.
Roman (*noun*), Rōmānus, -ī, M.
Roman (*adjective*), Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.
rope, fūnis, fūnis, M.
rose, rosa, -ae, F.
rouse, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
route, iter, itineris, N.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō, *adv.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
school, schola, -ae, F.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M.

sea, mare, maris, N.
sea coast, ōra maritima.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
seek, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum; petō, -ere, petīvī *or* petiī, petītum.
seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus sum (*passive of* videō).
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
self, himself, herself, itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
senator, senātor, -ōris, M.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
sentinel, vigil, vigilis, M.
serpent, serpēns, -entis, M.
servant, servus, -ī, M.
set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum.
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, M.
share, partior, partīrī, partītus sum.
sharp, acūtus, -a, -um.
sheep, ovis, ovis, F.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
shore, lītus, lītoris, N.
short, brevis, -e.
shout, clāmor, clāmōris, M.
show, ostendō, -dere, -dī, -tum.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, F.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, M.
silence, silentium, -ī, N.
silent, be silent, sileō, -ēre, -uī.
sing, cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sister, soror, sorōris, F.
sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.
six, sex.
slave, servus, -ī, M.
sleep (*noun*), somnus, -ī, M.
sleep (*verb*), dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
slowly, lentē, *adv.*
small, parvus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, M.
sometimes, interdum, *adv.*
son, fīlius, -ī, M.
soon, mox, *adv.*; **as soon as possible**, quam prīmum.
sound, sonus, -ī, M.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
Sparta, Sparta, -ae, F.
speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
spear, hasta, -ae, F.
splendid, splendidus, -a, -um.
staff, baculum, -ī, N.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus.
stand about, circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, —.
star, stella, -ae, F.
stone, saxum, -ī, N.; lapis, lapidis, M.
story, fābula, -ae, F.
street, via, -ae, F.
strength, vīrēs, vīrium, F. *pl.*
strong, validus, -a, -um.
suddenly, subitō, *adv.*
sufficiently, satis, *adv.*
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, aestātis, F.; **in summer**, aestāte.
sun, sōl, sōlis, M.
sweet, dulcis, -e.
swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*
swim, natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sword, gladius, -ī, M.

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, F.
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.
talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
teacher, magister, -trī, M.; magistra, -ae, F.
tell, nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
temple, templum, -ī, N.
tent, tabernāculum, -ī, N.
thank, grātiās agō (agere, ēgī, āctum).
that (*pl.* **those**), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.

their, *when reflexive,* suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive,* eōrum, eārum.
themselves, *gen.* suī, *dat.* sibi, *acc. and abl.* sē *or* sēsē.
there, ibi, *adv.*
thing, rēs, reī, F.
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum; conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.
throw away, rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.
thus, ita, *adv.*
Tiber, Tiberis, Tiberis, M.
tie together, colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
time, tempus, temporis, N.
timid, timidus, -a, -um.
tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.
Titus, Titus, -ī, M.
to, ad, in, *preps. with acc.*
today, hodiē, *adv.*
tomorrow, crās, *adv.*
top, the top of, summus, -a, -um.
toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*
town, oppidum, -ī, N.
tree, arbor, arboris, F.
triumph, triumphus, -ī, M.
Troy, Trōja, -ae, F.
turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.
twist, contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

Ulysses, Ulīxēs, Ulīxis, M.
uncle, avunculus, -ī, M.
under, sub, *prep. with abl. or acc.*
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um.
unfortunate, miser, misera, miserum.
unhappy, miser, misera, miserum.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.

V

vain, in vain, frūstrā, *adv.*
victory, victōria, ae, F.
vigorously, ācriter, *adv.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

W

wage (war), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wall, mūrus, -ī, M.
wander, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vagor, -ārī, vagātus sum.
war, bellum, -ī, N.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
waste, lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
watch (*noun*), vigilia, -ae, F.
watch (*verb*), spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
water, aqua, -ae, F.
weapons, arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
well, bene, *adv.*
well known, nōtus, -a, -um.
what, *interrogative,* quid?
when, ubi; cum.
where, ubi, *adv.*
which, *relative pronoun,* quī, quae, quod.
who, *interrogative,* quis, quid; *relative,* quī, quae, quod.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.
why, cūr, *adv.*
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
widely, lātē, *adv.*
wild, ferus, -a, -um.
wild animal, fera, -ae, F.
window, fenestra, -ae, F.
wine, vīnum, -ī, N.
winter, hiems, hiemis, F.; **in winter,** hieme.
wise, sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis.
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī.

with, cum, *prep. with abl.*

withdraw, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum; mē recipiō, *etc.*, recipere, recēpī, receptum.

without, sine, *prep. with abl.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, F.

wonder at, mīror, -ārī, -atus sum.

word, verbum, -ī, N.

work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.

yesterday, herī, *adv.*

yet, not yet, nōndum, *adv.*

you, tū, *gen.* tuī; *pl.*, vōs, *gen.* vestrum.

young man, juvenis, -is, M.

your, *of one person*, tuus, -a, -um; *of more than one person*, vester, -tra, -trum.

INDEX

(Numbers refer to sections, unless page reference is specified.)

ā, ab, with ablative, 194 *a*, *b*.
as prefix, Word Study V, p. 202.
Ablative Case, absolute, 696-699.
of accompaniment, 424.
of agent, 194
of cause, Perseus, line 87, note.
of description, 759.
of manner, Perseus, line 43, note.
of means, 422-425.
of separation, App. 45 (1).
of time at which, 541.
with prepositions, 77.
Accent, p. 25.
Accusative Case, as direct object, 31.
of duration of time, 542.
with prepositions, 215.
ad, with accusative, *see* Accusative.
as prefix, Word Study IV, p. 168.
Adjectives, defined, (3) p. 27.
agreement of, 14, 22, 41 *a*, 50 *a*, 77 *a*, 136, 178.
comparison of, 623-626, 641, 642, 649.
declension of comparatives, 633.
numeral,cardinal,688,689,App.19.
ordinal, App. 19.
interrogative, 257.
position of, 4.
possessive, 171 *a*.
predicate, 7, 14 *a*.
substantive use of, 179.
first and second declension of, 170, 186.
third declension of, 499-501, 513.
Adverb, defined, 152.
comparison of, 664, 665.
formation of, 656, 657.
Agreement, of adjectives, 14, 22, 41 *a*, 50 *a*, 77 *a*, 136, 178.
of appositives, 87.
of participles, 369 *a*.
of relative pronouns, 483.
of verbs, 107.
Alphabet, p. 22.
Antecedent, defined, (5) p. 27.
Apposition, and appositive, defined, 86.
cases in apposition, 87.
Article.
lack of in Latin, 3.
Assimilation of Consonants, Word Study IV, p. 168.

Cardinal Numerals, 688, 689.
Case, defined, 36.
names of Latin cases, 31, 41, 50, 77.
Case Endings, first declension, 31, 39, 49, 76.
second declension, Fourth Review Lesson, p. 98.
third declension, 318.
fourth declension, 520.
fifth declension, 681.
castra, form and meaning, 199 *a*.
circum, as prefix, Word Study III, p. 143.
coepī, use of, 536 *a*.
Comparative Adjectives, declension of, 633.
Comparison, of adjectives, 623-626, 641, 642, 649.
of adverbs, 664, 665.
Compound Verbs, with dative, 727.
Conjugation, first, 108, 109, 192, 248, 268, 288, 355.
second, 225, 248, 268, 288, 355.
third, 403, 415, 447, 465.
fourth, 432, 447, 465.
see under eō, ferō, fīō, possum, sum, volō.
Conjunctions, defined, 223.
cum, preposition, with ablative, 76.
enclitic, 573.
as a prefix, Word Study V, p. 201.

DATIVE CASE, with adjectives, 68.
with compound verbs, 727.
with special verbs, 728.
as indirect object, 50.
position of, 69 (2).
DECLENSION.
how determined, 85 *a*.
first declension, 83, 85.
second, 127, 128, 144, 153, 154, 161-163.
third, 316, 317, 318, 331, 338, 339, 346, 347.
fourth, 520.
fifth, 681.
of comparative adjectives, 633.
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES, 204, 236, 275.
DEPONENT VERBS, 706-711, 717-721.
DESCRIPTION, ablative of, 759.
genitive of, 758.
"do" in negative sentences and questions, 16.
duo, declension of, 689.

ego, declension of, 572.
ENCLITICS, 118, 573.
eō, conjugation of, 527, 552.
compounds of, 528.
ē, *ex*, with ablative case, 76.
use of in distinction from *ā* and *ab*, 194 *b*.
as a prefix, Word Study III, p. 143.
EXPLETIVE "there" not translated into Latin, 78.

ferō, conjugation of, 764.
fīō, conjugation of, App. 38.
FUTURE TENSE, *see* TENSE.
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, *see* TENSE.

GENDER, of nouns and pronouns, 143.
in first declension, 134.
in second declension, 163 (2), (3), (4).
in third declension, 347.
in fourth declension, 520.
in fifth declension, 681 *a*.
GENITIVE CASE, defined, 41.
of description, 758.
of possession, 39.
of the whole, App. 42 (2).
position of, 69 (1).
GERUND, defined, 769.
declension of, 769.
uses of, 770.
GRAMMAR, elementary principles of, pp. 26-28.
review of, 61-64.

hic, declension of, 204.
as pronoun, 277.

īdem, declension of, 595.
ille, declension of, 236.
as pronoun, 277.
IMPERATIVE MOOD, defined, 549.
conjugation of, 550, 552.
IMPERFECT TENSE, see TENSE.
in, preposition with ablative, 76.
with accusative, 417 *a*.
as a prefix, Word Study V, p. 202.
in-, inseparable prefix, Word Study III, p. 144.
INDICATIVE MOOD, defined, 117.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 672-674.
INDIRECT OBJECT, defined, 49, 64.
dative of, in Latin, 50.
English phrase with "to" as equivalent, 49 *a*.
position of, 69 (3).
INFINITIVE MOOD.
future, 744.
present, of regular verbs, 473 *a*.
perfect, of regular verbs, 744, 745.
of deponent verbs, 745 *a*.
of *sum*, 100 *b*.
in indirect discourse, 673, 749-752.
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE, 256, 257.
INTRANSITIVE VERBS, defined, 126.
ipse, declension of, App. 25.
is, declension of, 275.
as adjective, 276.
as pronoun, 275 *a*.

LATIN, in ancient times, p. 18.
modern Latin (Romance languages), p. 16

LATIN ELEMENT IN ENGLISH, p. 19.
legal and medical terms from Latin, p. 20.
forms of English derivatives from Latin, p. 20.

meus, use of, 171 *a*.
MOOD, *see* IMPERATIVE, INDICATIVE, INFINITIVE.
"my," an adjective in Latin, 14 *b*, 171 *a*.

-ne, sign of a question, 118.
Negative commands, 551.
NOMINATIVE CASE, defined, 31.
as subject, (1) p. 65.
in predicate, (2) p. 65.
nōnne, sign of a question, 130, *a*, *b*.
NOUN, defined, (1) p. 26.
NUMBER, of nouns and pronouns, 27.
of verbs, 107.
NUMERALS, adjectives, cardinal, 688, 689. App. 19.
ordinal, App. 19.

ob, as a prefix, Word Study IV, p. 168.
OBJECT, direct, defined, 13, 63.
accusative of, 31.
OBJECT, indirect, defined, 49.
dative of, 50.
phrases in English equivalent to, 49 *a*.
ORDER OF WORDS in Latin, 4, 15.
position of genitive, 69 (1).
position of dative, 69 (2).
ORDINAL NUMERALS, App. 19.

PARTICIPLES, defined, 368.
agreement of, 369 *a*.
future active, 736.
perfect, 369.
present, 734.
declension of, 735.
use of, 735 *a*.
PAST PERFECT TENSE, *see* TENSE.
PERFECT SYSTEM OF VERBS, 609.
PERFECT TENSE, *see* TENSE.
PERSON OF VERBS, 107.
PERSON ENDINGS OF VERBS IN LATIN, active, 110.
passive, 193.
in perfect tense, 355 *b*.
PERSONAL PRONOUNS, 572, 574.
POSSESSION, indicated by case ending, 39.
two forms for its expression in English, 40.
POSSESSIVES of the first and second persons, 171 *a*, 571.
of the third person, reflexive, 307, 309.
of the third person, not reflexive, 308.
omission of, 309 *a*.
POSSESSIVE CASE, 46.
possum, conjugation of, 559.
PREDICATE, defined, 62.
adjective, 7.
noun, 6.
PREFIXES, inseparable, p. 144.
changes in spelling, p. 168.
prepositions as, p. 202.
PREPOSITIONS, with ablative, 76.
with accusative, 215.
as prefixes, Word Study III, p. 143.
PRESENT SYSTEM OF VERBS, 289.
PRESENT TENSE, *see* TENSE.
PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS, 382, 383, 385, 387, 389, 404.
PRONOUN, defined, (4) p. 27.
omitted in Latin as subject, 30.
antecedent of, (5) p. 27.
classes of, (6) p. 27.
interrogative, 256.
personal, declension of, 572.
use of, 570, 571, 574.
reflexive, 457, 458.
relative, 480-483.
PRONUNCIATION, pp. 22-25.

QUESTIONS, forms of with *-ne*, 118.
with *nōnne* 130 *a*.
answers to, 119.
quis, declension of, 256.
QUOTATIONS, *see* INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS, 457, 458.

Relative Pronouns, 480-483.
Romance Languages, p. 16.
  numerals, from Latin, p. 16.

Signs of Tenses, *see* Tense.
Special Verbs with the Dative, 728.
Stem of Verbs, present, 384.
  perfect, 384.
  participial, 384.
  use of, 386.
sub, with ablative and accusative, 449 *a*.
Subject, defined, 5, 61.
  omission of, 30.
Substantive Use of Adjectives, 179.
Suffixes, Latin, Word Study VI, p. 248.
sum, conjugation of, 100, 300, 356.
suus, use of, 307, 309.
Synopsis of Verbs, 616, 617.

Tense, defined, 255.
  present, 108, 192, 225, 403, 415, 432.
  imperfect, 247, 248, 268, 447.
  imperfect and perfect distinguished, 357.
  future, 288, 465, 466.
  perfect, 354, 355, 356, 396, 439, 440.
  person endings of, 355 *b*.
  past perfect, 587, 588.
  future perfect, 606-608.
  signs of tenses, imperfect, 248 *a*; future, 288 *a*, 466; past perfect, 587; future perfect, 607.

"there," as an expletive, 78.
Time, at which, ablative, 541.
  duration of, accusative, 542.
"to," in English phrases equivalent to indirect objects, 49 *a*.
  in English phrases denoting place to which, 216.
Transitive Verbs, defined, 126.
trēs, declension of, 689.
tū, declension of, 572.
tuus, use of, 571.

Verbs, defined, (2) p. 26.
  agreement of, 107.
  transitive and intransitive, defined, 126.
  compound verbs with dative, 727.
  deponent verbs, 706-711, 717-721.
  position of, 15.
vester, use of, 571.
vir, declension of, 161 *a*.
vīs, declension of, App. 5.
Vocative Case, defined, 162.
  form of, 162.
Voice, defined, 191.
volō, conjugation of, 763.

Word Order, 4, 15.

"yes," how expressed in Latin, 119.
"you," English uses and Latin equivalents, 100 *a*.
"your," an adjective in Latin, 14 *b*.

Esthers Kuepper